SCM Trust
Form 485BPOS
April 30, 2018

As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 30, 2018

1933 Act Registration Number – 333-176060

1940 Act Registration Number – 811-05617

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

Form N-1A

REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933 /X/

Post-Effective Amendment No. 22

and/or

REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 /X/

Amendment No. 23

SCM Trust

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in Charter)

1050 17th Street, Suite 1710

Denver, CO 80265

(Address of Principal Office)

Telephone Number: (415) 398-2727

Stephen C. Rogers

1050 17th Street, Suite 1710

Denver, CO 80265

(Name and Address of Agent for Service)

With copy to:

Peter H. Schwartz, Esq.

Davis Graham & Stubbs LLP

1550 17th Street, Suite 500

Denver, Co 80202

It is proposed that this filing will become effective:

[X] on May 1, 2018 pursuant to Rule 485(b)

[ ] 60 days after filing pursuant to Rule 485(a)(1)

[ ] 75 days after filing pursuant to Rule 485(a)(2)

[ ] on _____ pursuant to Rule 485(a)

PROSPECTUS

May 1, 2018

Shelton Greater China Fund: SGCFX

Shelton BDC Income Fund, Institutional Shares: LOAIX, Investor Shares: LOANX

Shelton Real Estate Income Fund, Institutional Shares: RENIX, Investor Shares: RENTX

Shelton Tactical Credit Fund, Institutional Shares: DEBIX, Investor Shares: DEBTX

Shelton International Select Equity Fund, Institutional Shares: SISEX, Investor Shares: SISLX

The Securities and Exchange Commission has not approved or disapproved these securities or passed on whether the information in this prospectus is adequate or accurate. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Funds are not bank deposits and are not guaranteed, endorsed or insured by any financial institution or government entity such as the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC). Some funds or classes in this Prospectus may not be available in your state. Please check with your advisor to determine those funds and share classes available for sale in your state. The information contained in this Prospectus relates to all classes of shares of the Funds unless otherwise noted.

Table of Contents

SHELTON GREATER CHINA FUND	3
SHELTON BDC INCOME FUND	7
SHELTON REAL ESTATE INCOME FUND	11
SHELTON TACTICAL CREDIT FUND	16
SHELTON INTERNATIONAL SELECT EQUITY FUND	20
Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares	23
Investment Objectives and Principal Strategies	23
Investment Risks	27
Additional Risks	31
Fund Organization and Management	32
How to Buy Shares	33
How to Sell Shares	35
Other Important Policies Related to Buying and Selling Shares	36
Other Policies	37
Dividends and Taxes	39
Notice of Privacy Policy	41
Financial Highlights	42

SHELTON GREATER CHINA FUND Ticker Symbol: SGCFX

***** IMPORTANT NOTICE REGARDING PROPOSED FUND REORGANIZATION *****

Based on a recommendation by Shelton Capital Management, the adviser to the Fund, the Board of Trustees of the SCM Trust (the "Trust") has approved a proposed reorganization (the "Reorganization") of the Fund into the International Select Equity Fund (the "Acquiring Fund"), subject to the approval of the shareholders of the Fund.

To accomplish the Reorganization, the Board approved an Agreement and Plan of Reorganization (the "Plan"). The Plan provides for the acquisition of substantially all the assets of the Fund by the Acquiring Fund in exchange solely for Institutional Class shares of the Acquiring Fund, which would be distributed pro rata by the Fund to the holders of Fund shares in complete liquidation of the Fund. Shareholders of the Fund will become shareholders the Institutional Class shares of the Acquiring Fund, receiving Institutional Class shares of the Acquiring Fund equal in value to the shares of the Fund held by the shareholders immediately prior to the Reorganization. The effect of the Reorganization will be that the Fund's shareholders will become Institutional Class shareholders of the Acquiring Fund. The Reorganizations intended to qualify as a tax-free transaction for federal income tax purposes.

The Trust will call a shareholder meeting at which shareholders of the Fund will be asked to consider and vote on the Plan. If shareholders of the Fund approve the Reorganization, the Reorganization is expected to take effect in the second quarter of 2018.

Shareholders of the Fund will receive a combined prospectus/proxy statement with additional information about the shareholder meeting, the proposed Reorganization, and the Acquiring Fund. Please read the proxy materials carefully, as they will contain a more detailed description of the proposed Reorganization.

You should read the combined prospectus/proxy statement when it is available because it contains important information. You will also be able to obtain free copies of the combined prospectus/proxy statement at the Securities and Exchange Commission website at www.sec.gov once the combined prospectus/proxy statements have been mailed. You can also obtain free copies of the Fund's Prospectus and Statement of Additional Information, as well as the Fund's Annual Report, by calling 1-800-955-9988, by writing the Trust at 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710, Denver, Colorado 80265, or by visiting www.sheltoncap.com.

The participants in the proxy solicitation include SCM Trust, Shelton Capital Management, and the Trustees of SCM Trust.

Information regarding the Fund shares owned by Shelton Capital Management, by certain Shelton Capital Management employees and principals, and by each Trustee of the SCM Trust can be found in the Fund's Statement of Additional Information, which can be obtained by calling 1-800-955-9988, by writing the Trust at 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710, Denver, Colorado 80265, or by visiting www.sheltoncap.com.

Investment Objective

The Fund's investment objective is long-term capital appreciation.

Fees and Expenses of the Fund

This table describes the fees and expenses that you may pay when you buy and hold shares of the Fund. The table and example do not reflect any transaction fees that may be charged by financial intermediaries or commissions that a shareholder may be required to pay directly to its financial intermediary when buying or selling shares.

Shareholder Fees (fee paid directly from your investment)	2.00%
Sales and redemption charges	**none**
Annual Operating Expenses (expenses that you pay each year as a percentage of the value of your investment)	
Management fees	1.25%
Distribution (12b-1) fees	none
Other expenses	1.37%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expense	2.62%
Fee Waiver and/or Expense Reimbursement[(1)]	(0.64)%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expenses After Fee Waiver and/ or Expense Reimbursement	1.98%

(1) The Fund's Advisor, Shelton Capital Management, has contractually agreed to reimburse expenses incurred by the Fund to the extent that total annual fund operating expenses (excluding extraordinary expenses such as litigation or merger and reorganization expenses, for example) exceed 1.98% until May 1, 2019. This agreement may only be terminated with the approval of the Board of Trustees of the Fund. Shelton may be reimbursed for any foregone advisory fees or unreimbursed expenses within three fiscal years following a particular reduction or expense, but only to the extent the reimbursement does not cause the Fund to exceed applicable expense limits, and the effect of the reimbursement is measured after all ordinary operating expenses are calculated. Any such reimbursement is subject to the review and approval of the Fund's Board of Trustees.

Example of Expenses

This example is intended to help you compare the cost of investing in the Fund with the cost of investing in other mutual funds.

The example assumes that you invest $10,000 in the Fund for the time periods indicated and then redeem all of your shares at the end of those periods. This example also assumes that your investment has a 5% return each year and that the Fund's operating expenses remain the same. Although your actual costs may be higher or lower, based on these

assumptions your costs would be:

1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years
$201	$754	$1,333	$2,907

Portfolio Turnover

The Fund pays transaction costs, such as commissions, when it buys and sells securities (or "turns over" its portfolio). A higher portfolio turnover rate may indicate higher transaction costs and may result in higher taxes when shares are held in a taxable account. These costs, which are not reflected in annual fund operating expenses or in the example, affect the Fund's performance. During the most recent fiscal year, the Fund's portfolio turnover rate was 25% of the average value of its portfolio.

Principal Investment Strategies

The Fund's seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing primarily in companies that (i) are domiciled in, or traded on exchanges located in, the Greater China region, specifically Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore and the People's Republic of China or (ii) have derived or are expected to derive in the company's current fiscal year (measured as of the time of original investment) a significant portion (at least 50%) of their revenues by exporting to or importing from, trading with, or operating in, mainland China. A company meeting the requirements of either items (i) or (ii) of the previous sentence is defined as a "Greater China company." Under normal circumstances, the Fund will invest at least 80% of the Fund's net assets in the common and preferred stocks of Greater China companies. Net assets would typically include borrowings for investment purposes; however, the Fund has no present intent to borrow.

A company is considered to be domiciled in, or traded on exchanges located in, a country if it (i) is organized under the laws of that country, or (ii) derives at least 50% of its revenues or profits from goods produced or sold, investments made, services performed, or has at least 50% of its assets located within that country, or (iii) has the primary trading markets for its securities in that country, or (iv) is controlled by a governmental entity or agency, instrumentality or a political subdivision of that country.

The Advisor implements its investment strategy by first using a proprietary "life-cycle" screen to narrow the Fund's investable universe. The Advisor then uses a fundamental, "bottom-up" research selection and disciplined portfolio construction process which is focused on identifying stocks that the Advisor believes have the ability to generate sustainable returns, regardless of sector or country. The Advisor's "life-cycle" screen classifies companies according to one of the following five categories:

- Innovation: Companies characterized as having high level of capital investment and below the cost of capital returns.
- Expansion: Companies characterized by aggressive investment to compound their high and rising returns, achieving a peak in both growth and cash flow returns.
- Deceleration: Companies characterized as having very high returns, combined with good, but slowing growth prospects.
- Maturity: Companies characterized as earning a small positive spread above the cost of capital.
- Distress: Companies characterized as having returns driven down below the cost of capital.

The Advisor's investment team actively invests across all five categories of the "life-cycle," building a diversified portfolio of high-growth, high-return, income-oriented and distressed investments. In managing the portfolio, the investment team seeks to balance the portfolio's risk and return by maximizing stock specific risk (risk from security selection) while at the same time minimizing systematic factor risks (which includes, but is not limited to, sector selection, country selection, currency management). The Fund may engage in frequent and active trading of securities as a part of its principal investment strategy. The Advisor will sell or reallocate a Fund's securities if the Advisor believes the issuer of such securities no longer meets certain growth criteria, if certain political and economic events occur, or if it believes that more attractive opportunities are available. The team strives to preserve capital as part of its investment process. The Advisor may elect to purchase futures contracts and/or options to attempt to remain fully invested in the markets. The percentage of futures held in the portfolio will typically not exceed the cash (or cash equivalents) balance of the Fund.

Principal Risks

An investment in the Fund is subject to various risks, including the risk that you may receive little or no return on your investment or you may lose all or part of it. There can be no assurance that the Fund will achieve its investment objective. The Fund may change its investment objective without shareholder approval, although it has no current intention to do so. Shareholders will be provided 60 days' prior written notice of any change to the Fund's investment objective. By itself, the Fund does not constitute a balanced investment program. Before investing in the Fund, you should consider carefully the following risks:

Currency Risk. There is the risk that the value of one or more of the foreign currencies in which the Fund's investments are denominated (these are anticipated to be: the US dollar, the Renminbi, the Hong Kong dollar, the New Taiwan dollar and the Singapore dollar) will increase or decrease against the value of the U.S. dollar, which will affect the value of the Fund's share price. The value of a foreign investment may decline in U.S. dollar terms because of the changing value of a currency. This is referred to as that currency weakening against the U.S. dollar. While the Fund may hedge currency risks, the Advisor does not anticipate doing so at this time. Therefore, you should carefully consider the risk of currency devaluations and fluctuations and the effect these may have on the Fund in determining whether to invest in the Fund. Additionally, countries in the Greater China region may utilize formal or informal currency-exchange controls or "capital controls." Capital controls could impose restrictions on the Fund's ability to repatriate investments or income. Such controls may also affect the value of the Fund's holdings.

Currency Hedging Risk. While hedging can reduce or eliminate losses, it can also reduce or eliminate gains. Hedges are sometimes subject to imperfect matching between the derivative used to hedge currency risk and its reference

asset, and there can be no assurance that a Fund's hedging transactions will be effective.

Foreign currency forward contracts do not eliminate movements in the value of non-U.S. currencies and securities but rather allow a Fund to establish a fixed rate of exchange for a future point in time. Exchange rates may be volatile and may change quickly and unpredictably. In addition, a Fund's currency exposure may not be fully-hedged at all times. A Fund may not be able to structure its hedging transactions as anticipated or its hedging transactions may not successfully reduce the currency risk included in the Fund's portfolio.

Emerging Markets. Certain countries of the Greater China region are considered emerging markets. Securities of companies located or invested in emerging markets may be more volatile than the securities of domestic issuers or the securities of foreign issuers located or invested in developed markets. The countries in which emerging markets are located often have less mature economies and government institutions. The economies of emerging markets are often heavily dependent on international trade, which may cause them to be adversely affected by trade barriers, foreign exchange controls and other protectionist measures implemented by foreign governments. Investments in emerging markets may be adversely affected by economic, political and social unrest, and are exposed to special risks, including expropriation, nationalization, confiscation, repatriation of invested capital, the imposition of investment restrictions and the lack of hedging positions. The securities and real estate markets of some emerging market countries have experienced substantial market disruptions and may do so in the future.

Equity Risk. The Fund's shares will be sensitive to the fluctuation of the stock prices for companies in which it invests. The value of equity investments tends to rise and fall more rapidly than other investments such as fixed income and money market instruments and the net result would be more volatility. Additionally, because the Fund's strategy is to invest a significant portion of its net assets in the common stocks of Greater China companies, there is a risk that an issuer that is treated as an eligible portfolio company because it is expected to derive a significant portion of its revenues from exports to or operations in mainland China may not actually derive a significant portion of its revenues from Chinese exports or operations. As a result, the Fund's portfolio may not be as closely linked to the Chinese economy.

Greater China Market Risk. The securities markets of the Greater China region are not as large as the U.S. securities markets and have substantially less trading volume, which may result in a lack of liquidity and high price volatility relative to the U.S. securities markets.

Manager Risk. Shelton Capital Management's opinion about the intrinsic worth or creditworthiness of a company or security may be incorrect or the market may continue to undervalue the company or security. Shelton Capital Management may not make timely purchases or sales of securities for the Fund.

Political, Social and Economic Risk. Investments in the Greater China region involve certain risks and special considerations not typically associated with investments in the United States, such as greater government control over the economy, political and legal uncertainty and the risk that the Chinese government may decide not to continue to support economic reform programs and the risk of nationalization or expropriation of assets. The value of the Fund's assets may be adversely affected by these political, economic, social and religious instabilities, as well as inadequate investor protection, changes in laws or regulations of countries within the Asian region (including countries in which the Fund invests, as well as the broader region), international relations with other nations, natural disasters, medical emergencies, corruption and military activity. The Greater China region, and particularly China, may be adversely affected by political, military, economic and other factors related to North Korea. In addition, China's border disputes with many of its neighbors and historically strained relations with Japan could adversely impact economies in the region. The economies of many countries in the Greater China region differ from the economies of more developed countries in many respects, such as rate of growth, inflation, capital reinvestment, resource self-sufficiency, financial system stability, the national balance of payments position and sensitivity to changes in global trade. Certain countries in the Greater China region are highly dependent upon and may be affected by developments in the United States, Europe and other economies in the Greater China region.

Reporting Standards Risk. Accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards and requirements in the securities markets of the Greater China region differ, in some cases significantly, from those applicable to U.S. issuers. In particular, the assets and profits appearing on the financial statements of a foreign issuer may not reflect its financial position or results of operations in the way they would be reflected had the financial statement been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. Inflation accounting may indirectly generate losses or profits. Consequently, financial data may be materially affected by restatements for inflation and may not accurately reflect the real condition of those issuers and securities markets. Substantially less information is publicly available about certain non-U.S. issuers than is available about U.S. issuers.

Bar Chart and Performance Table

The following bar chart and table are intended to help you understand the risks of investing in the Fund. The bar chart shows calendar year returns and the average annual total return table indicates risk by illustrating how much returns can differ from one year to the next and how fund performance compares with that of a comparable market index. These figures assume that all distributions are reinvested. *The Fund's performance will fluctuate, and past performance (before and after taxes) is no guarantee of future results.* Updated performance information may be obtained on our website www.sheltoncap.com or by calling 1-(800) 955-9988.

Best Quarter: 26.02% (Q3, 2009)

Worst Quarter: -27.15% (Q4, 2008)

Year to date performance as of 12/31/17: 34.85%

Date of inception: 5/12/1989

After-tax returns are calculated using the historical highest individual federal marginal income tax rates and do not reflect the impact of state and local taxes. Actual after-tax returns depend on the investor’s tax situation and may differ from those shown, and the after-tax returns shown are not relevant to investors who hold their Fund shares through tax-deferred arrangements such as 401(k) plans or individual retirement accounts.

Average Annual Return (for the period ended 12/31/17)

Shelton Greater China Fund	1 year	5 years	10 years
Return Before Taxes	34.85%	7.20%	2.31%
Return After Taxes on Distributions	33.58%	6.21%	1.84%
Return After Taxes on Distributions and Sale of Fund Shares	19.69%	5.11%	1.55%
MSCI Golden Dragon Index (net of foreign withholding taxes)	30.15%	10.84%	6.17%

It is not possible for individuals to invest directly in an index. Performance figures for an index do not reflect deductions for sales charges, commissions, expenses or taxes.

Fund Management

Shelton Capital Management serves as the investment advisor to the Fund. Mr. Andrew Manton is portfolio manager of the Shelton Greater China Fund.

Other Important Information about Fund Shares

For important information about purchase and sale of Fund shares, tax information, and payments to financial intermediaries please turn to the “Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares” section on page 23 of this prospectus.

SHELTON BDC INCOME FUND Ticker Symbols: LOAIX and LOANX

Investment Objective

The Fund’s investment objective is to provide a high level of income with the potential for capital appreciation.

Fees and Expenses of the Fund

This table describes the fees and expenses that you may pay when you buy and hold shares of the Fund. The table and example do not reflect any transaction fees that may be charged by financial intermediaries or commissions that a shareholder may be required to pay directly to its financial intermediary when buying or selling shares.

Shareholder Fees (fee paid directly from your investment)	LOAIX	LOANX
Annual Operating Expenses (expenses that you pay each year as a percentage of the value of your investment)		
Management fees	0.90%	0.90%
Distribution (12b-1) fees	none	0.25%
Other expenses	0.88%	0.89%
Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses[1]	9.14%	9.14%
(fees and expenses incurred directly by the Fund as a result of investment in shares of one or more Acquired Funds)		
Total annual operating expenses	10.92%	11.18%
Expense Reimbursement[2]	(0.53)%	(0.54)%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expenses After Expense Reimbursement	10.39%	10.64%

(1) ‘‘Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses’’ are the indirect costs of investing in other investment companies. The operating expenses in this fee table will not correlate to the expense ratio in the Fund’s financial highlights because the financial statements include only the direct operating expenses incurred by the Fund.

(2) The Fund’s Advisor, Shelton Capital Management, has contractually agreed to reimburse expenses incurred by the Fund to the extent that total annual fund operating expenses (excluding acquired fund fees and expenses, and extraordinary expenses such as litigation or merger and reorganization expenses, for example) exceed 1.25% and 1.50% until May 1, 2019. This agreement may only be terminated with the approval of the Board of Trustees of the Fund. Shelton may be reimbursed for any foregone advisory fees or unreimbursed expenses within three fiscal years following a particular reduction or expense, but only to the extent the reimbursement does not cause the Fund to exceed applicable expense limits, and the effect of the reimbursement is measured after all ordinary operating expenses are calculated. Any such reimbursement is subject to the review and approval of the Fund’s Board of Trustees.

Example of Expenses

This example is intended to help you compare the cost of investing in the Fund with the cost of investing in other mutual funds.

The example assumes that you invest $10,000 in the Fund for the time periods indicated and then redeem all of your shares at the end of those periods. This example also assumes that your investment has a 5% return each year and that the Fund’s operating expenses remain the same. Although your actual costs may be higher or lower, based on these assumptions your costs would be:

1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years

LOAIX	$130	$512	$918	$2,053
LOANX	$153	$587	$1,048	$2,326

7

Portfolio Turnover

The Fund pays transaction costs, such as commissions, when it buys and sells securities (or "turns over" its portfolio). A higher portfolio turnover rate may indicate higher transaction costs and may result in higher taxes when shares are held in a taxable account. These costs, which are not reflected in Annual Fund Operating Expenses or in the Example of Expenses, affect the Fund's performance. During the most recent fiscal year, the Fund's portfolio turnover rate was 118% of the average value of its portfolio.

Principal Investment Strategies

The Fund invests substantially all (and under normal market conditions, at least 80%) of its net assets (plus any borrowings for investment purposes) in common stocks and other equity securities of business development companies (''BDCs'') that are traded on one or more nationally recognized securities exchanges.

The equity securities in which the Fund may invest consist of:

- common stocks;
- securities convertible into common stocks; and
- preferred stocks.

In addition, although the Fund typically invests in equity securities, the Fund may invest up to 20% of its net assets in debt securities of BDCs and other issuers of any maturity, duration or credit rating.

BDCs are publicly-held, closed-end investment funds that are regulated by the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the ''1940 Act''). BDCs primarily lend to or invest in private or thinly-traded companies. They also offer managerial assistance to the companies in which they invest. BDCs must adhere to various substantive regulatory requirements under the 1940 Act. For example, the 1940 Act restricts the types of assets in which a BDC may invest (*i.e.*, at least 70% of the BDC's total assets must be ''qualifying assets,'' as defined in the 1940 Act). The 1940 Act also regulates how BDCs employ ''leverage'' (*i.e.*, how BDCs use borrowed funds to make investments). Because the 1940 Act applies unique ''coverage ratio'' tests to BDCs, BDCs may incur more debt than other regulated closed-end investment companies. Specifically, on one hand, the total assets of a closed-end investment company (other than a BDC) must exceed the fund's outstanding debt by at least 300%. On the other hand, the total assets of a BDC must exceed the BDC's outstanding debt by only 200%, thereby allowing a BDC to employ more leverage than other regulated closed-end investment companies. Leverage magnifies the potential for gain and loss on amounts invested and, as a result, increases the risks associated with the securities of leveraged companies.

The Advisor evaluates equity securities primarily on the BDC's or other issuer's ability to sustain its current dividend and secondarily considers the potential for capital appreciation. The Advisor intends to allocate the Fund's assets

among BDCs that, in its view, are paying attractive rates of distribution and appear capable of sustaining that distribution level over time. The Advisor incorporates into its assessment, among other factors, dividend yield, price to book, financial operations, portfolio of investments and management quality. The Advisor will also consider the amount of leverage employed by a BDC or other issuer before deciding to invest in its securities. In selecting securities for investment, the Advisor generally seeks to invest in securities with relatively high distribution rates, and that it believes will continue to pay distributions at those rates for the foreseeable future. Distributions from such securities may consist of income, capital gains and/or return of capital and cannot be guaranteed to continue.

When selecting securities for the Fund, the Advisor may utilize fundamental, technical and other related methodologies to determine the intrinsic value of a security. Examples of fundamental methodologies include consideration of a stock's financials, economic factors that might impact the stock, and the qualitative and quantitative factors. Technical methodologies generally refer to the consideration of past market data, primarily using price and volume data. The Advisor expects that it will sell a security if, in the judgment of the portfolio manager, the security's income potential has been compromised, an issuer's fundamentals have deteriorated or may deteriorate or a more attractive investment opportunity is identified.

Principal Risks of Investing

You could lose money by investing in the Fund, and the Fund could underperform other investments. You should expect the Fund's share price and total return to fluctuate within a wide range. The Fund's performance could be hurt by:

BDC Risk. The Fund primarily invests in securities issued by publicly-traded BDCs. As a result, the Fund's portfolio will be significantly affected by the performance of the BDCs in which the Fund invests and the performance of such BDCs' portfolio companies, as well as the overall economic environment. The Fund may be exposed to greater risk and experience higher volatility than would a portfolio that was not focused on investing in BDCs.

BDCs primarily invest in privately-held and thinly-traded companies. These types of portfolio companies are generally considered to be below investment grade, and the debt securities of those companies, in turn, are often referred to as ''high-yield'' or ''junk.'' The revenues, income (or losses) and valuations of these companies can, and often do, fluctuate suddenly and dramatically, and they face considerable risk of loss. In addition, the fair value of a BDC's investments in privately-held or thinly-traded companies often is not readily determinable. Although each BDC's board of directors is responsible for determining the fair value of these securities, the uncertainty regarding fair value may adversely affect the determination of the BDC's net asset value (''NAV''). This could cause the Fund's investments in a BDC to be inaccurately valued.

BDCs often borrow funds to make investments and, as a result, are exposed to the risks of leverage. Leverage magnifies the potential loss on amounts invested and therefore increases the risks associated with an investment in a leveraged BDC's securities. Leverage is generally considered a speculative investment technique. Moreover, BDCs' management fees, which are generally higher than the management fees charged to other funds, are normally payable on gross assets, including those assets acquired through the use of leverage. This may give a BDC's investment advisor a financial incentive to incur leverage.

Convertible Securities Risk. Investments in convertible securities generally entail less risk than investments in an issuer's common stock because convertible securities rank senior to common stock in an issuer's capital structure. The extent to which such risk is reduced depends in large part upon the degree to which the convertible security sells above its value as a fixed-income security. Convertible securities are subordinate in rank to any senior debt obligations of an issuer, and, therefore, entail more risk than the issuer's debt obligations. Convertible securities generally offer lower interest than non-convertible debt securities of similar credit quality due to the potential for capital appreciation and are often lower-rated securities.

Credit Risk. An issuer or guarantor of a debt security may be unable or unwilling to make scheduled payments of interest and principal. Actual or perceived deterioration in an issuer's or guarantor's financial condition may affect a security's value.

Credit Risk of Underlying Investments. The Fund is indirectly exposed to the credit risk associated with the debt investments of the BDCs in which the Fund invests. BDCs invest in small companies in the initial stages of development. The types of portfolio companies in which BDCs invest are generally considered to be below investment grade, and the debt securities of those companies, in turn, are often referred to as ''high-yield'' or ''junk.'' There is an increased risk that such a portfolio company will fail to make payments on its debts as compared to more developed companies. If a portfolio company fails to make payments to a BDC, the BDC's performance could be negatively affected and, to the extent that the Fund invests in the BDC, the value of the Fund's investment in the BDC may be negatively affected as well.

Economic and Political Risks. These effects may be short-term by causing a change in the market that is corrected in a year or less, or they may have long-term impacts which may cause changes in the market that may last for many years. Some factors may affect changes in one sector of the economy or one stock, but don't have an impact on the overall market. The particular sector of the economy or the individual stock may be affected for a short or long-term.

Equity Risk. Equity securities can be volatile and may decline in value because of changes in the actual or perceived financial condition of their issuers or other events affecting their issuers. The Fund's target index may, at times, become focused in stocks of a particular sector, category or group of companies, which could cause Fund to underperform the overall stock market.

High-Yield (‘‘Junk’’) Bond Risk. Compared to higher quality debt securities, high-yield bonds (commonly referred to as ‘‘junk’’ bonds) involve a greater risk of default or price changes due to changes in the credit quality of the issuer because they are generally unsecured and may be subordinated to other creditors’ claims. The values of junk bonds often fluctuate more in response to company, political, regulatory or economic developments than higher quality bonds. Their values can decline significantly over short periods of time or during periods of economic difficulty when the bonds could be difficult to value or sell at a fair price. Credit ratings on junk bonds do not necessarily reflect their actual market value. Through its investments in BDCs, Fund is indirectly exposed to the credit risks associated with in BDCs’ debt investments. The portfolio companies in which BDCs invest are generally considered to be below investment grade, and the debt securities of those companies, in turn, are often referred to as high-yield or junk. In addition, debt securities issued by a BDC may also be considered to be non-investment grade or junk.

Investment in Other Investment Companies Risk. The Fund’s investment in other investment companies, including BDCs, may subject the Fund indirectly to the underlying risks of those investment companies. The Fund also will bear its share of each underlying investment company’s fees and expenses, which are in addition to the Fund’s own fees and expenses. Shares of an investment company may trade at prices that reflect a premium above or a discount below NAV, and such premium or discount may be substantial. If an investment company’s shares are purchased at a premium to NAV, the premium may not exist when those shares are sold, and the Fund could incur a loss.

BDCs, like other investment companies, are often parties to contractual agreements under which a BDC’s investment advisor or another third-party agrees to waive fees or pay a portion of the BDC’s expenses. Once the contract terminates or ends, the BDC’s expenses may increase and, as a result, the acquired fund fees and expenses paid by the Fund’s shareholders may increase as well. Further, the acquired fund fees and expenses paid by the Fund’s shareholders may increase further if the BDC’s investment advisor or another third-party seeks to recoup any previously waived fees or paid expenses.

Large Shareholder Risk. To the extent that shares of the Fund are held by large shareholders, the Fund is subject to the risk that these shareholders will redeem Fund shares in large amounts. These transactions could adversely affect the Fund if it is forced to sell portfolio securities to raise the cash that is necessary to satisfy shareholder redemption requests. This risk is particularly pronounced when one shareholder owns a substantial portion of the Fund.

Liquidity Risk. The Fund may not be able to purchase or sell a security in a timely manner or at desired prices or achieve its desired weighting in a security. Liquidity risk may result from the lack of an active market or a reduced number and capacity of traditional market participants to make a market in fixed income securities, and may be magnified under circumstances that cause increased supply in the market due to unusually high selling activity.

Manager Risk. Shelton Capital Management's opinion about the intrinsic worth or creditworthiness of a company or security may be incorrect or the market may continue to undervalue the company or security. Shelton Capital Management may not make timely purchases or sales of securities for the Fund.

Market Exposure Risk. Investment prices may increase or decrease, sometimes suddenly and unpredictably, due to general market conditions. The Fund is primarily invested in the U.S. stock markets. As with any investment whose performance is linked to these markets, the value of an investment in the Fund will change. During a declining stock market, investment in this Fund would lose money.

MidCap Stock Risk. The risk that stocks of relatively smaller capitalization within the midcap range of companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Relatively smaller capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Non-Diversification Risk. The Fund is classified as a non-diversified management investment company under the 1940 Act. This means that the Fund may invest a greater portion of its assets in a limited number of issuers than would be the case if the Fund were classified as a diversified management investment company. The value of a specific security can perform differently from the market as a whole for reasons related to the issuer, such as operational performance, financial leverage and investment-level performance. The value of the Fund may decrease in response to the activities and financial prospects of an individual security in the Fund's portfolio. Additionally, the Fund may be subject to greater risk, because the Fund's performance may be more sensitive to any single economic, business, political or regulatory occurrence than the value of shares of a diversified investment company.

Preferred Stock Risk. There are various risks associated with investing in preferred stock, including credit risk, liquidity risk, interest rate risk, deferral and omission of distributions, subordination to bonds and other debt securities in a company's capital structure, limited liquidity, limited voting rights and special redemption rights.

SmallCap Stock Risk. The risk that stocks of smaller capitalization companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Small capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management

group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Bar Chart and Performance Table

The following bar chart and table are intended to help you understand the risks of investing in the Fund. The bar chart shows calendar year returns and the average annual total return table indicates risk by illustrating how much returns can differ from one year to the next and how fund performance compares with that of a comparable market index. These figures assume that all distributions are reinvested. *The Fund's performance will fluctuate, and past performance (before and after taxes) is no guarantee of future results.* Updated performance information may be obtained on our website www.sheltoncap.com or by calling (800) 955-9988.

Best Quarter: 8.28% (Q3, 2016)

Worst Quarter: -7.20% (Q3, 2015)

Year to date performance as of 12/31/17: 3.73%

Date of inception: 04/22/2014

After-tax returns are calculated using the historical highest individual federal marginal income tax rates and do not reflect the impact of state and local taxes. Actual after-tax returns depend on the investor's tax situation and may differ from those shown, and the after-tax returns shown are not relevant to investors who hold their Fund shares through tax-deferred arrangements such as 401(k) plans or individual retirement accounts.

Average Annual Return (for the period ended 12/31/17)

BDC Income Fund (Institutional Class - LOAIX)	1 year	Period From Inception
Return Before Taxes	3.73%	3.65%
Return After Taxes on Distributions	1.14%	0.81%
Return After Taxes on Distributions and Sale of Fund Shares	2.14%	1.46%
Wells Fargo BDC Index	-9.09%	2.67%

It is not possible for individuals to invest directly in an index. Performance figures for an index do not reflect deductions for sales charges, commissions, expenses or taxes.

Fund Management

Shelton Capital Management serves as the investment advisor to the Fund. Mr. John Harnisch has served as a member of the portfolio management team since the Fund's inception. Mr. William Mock has served as a member of the BDC Income Fund portfolio management team since March 2017.

Other Important Information about Fund Shares

For important information about purchase and sale of Fund shares, tax information, and payments to financial intermediaries please turn to the "Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares" section on page 23 of

this prospectus.

SHELTON REAL ESTATE INCOME FUND Ticker Symbols: RENIX and RENTX

Investment Objective

The Fund's investment objective is to provide current income with the potential for capital appreciation.

Fees and Expenses of the Fund

This table describes the fees and expenses that you may pay when you buy and hold shares of the Fund. The table and example do not reflect any transaction fees that may be charged by financial intermediaries or commissions that a shareholder may be required to pay directly to its financial intermediary when buying or selling shares.

Shareholder Fees (fee paid directly from your investment)	RENIX	RENTX
Sales and redemption charges	none	none
Annual Operating Expenses (expenses that you pay each year as a percentage of the value of your investment)		
Management fees	0.80%	0.80%
Distribution (12b-1) fees	none	0.25%
Other expenses	1.30%	1.30%
Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses[1] (fees and expenses incurred directly by the Fund as a result of investment in shares of one or more Acquired Funds)	0.02%	0.02%
Total annual operating expenses	2.12%	2.37%
Expense Reimbursement[2]	(0.93)%	(0.93)%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expenses After Expense Reimbursement	1.19%	1.44%

(1) ''Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses'' are the indirect costs of investing in other investment companies. The operating expenses in this fee table will not correlate to the expense ratio in the Fund's financial highlights because the financial statements include only the direct operating expenses incurred by the Fund.

(2) The Fund's Advisor, Shelton Capital Management, has contractually agreed to reimburse expenses incurred by the Fund to the extent that total annual fund operating expenses (excluding acquired fund fees and expenses, and extraordinary expenses such as litigation or merger and reorganization expenses, for example) exceed 1.17% and

1.42% until May 1, 2019. This agreement may only be terminated with the approval of the Board of Trustees of the Fund. Shelton may be reimbursed for any foregone advisory fees or unreimbursed expenses within three fiscal years following a particular reduction or expense, but only to the extent the reimbursement does not cause the Fund to exceed applicable expense limits, and the effect of the reimbursement is measured after all ordinary operating expenses are calculated. Any such reimbursement is subject to the review and approval of the Fund's Board of Trustees.

11

Example of Expenses

This example is intended to help you compare the cost of investing in the Fund with the cost of investing in other mutual funds.

The example assumes that you invest $10,000 in the Fund for the time periods indicated and then redeem all of your shares at the end of those periods. This example also assumes that your investment has a 5% return each year and that the Fund's operating expenses remain the same. Although your actual costs may be higher or lower, based on these assumptions your costs would be:

	1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years
RENIX	$119	$568	$1,043	$2,357
RENTX	$145	$644	$1,171	$2,615

Portfolio Turnover

The Fund pays transaction costs, such as commissions, when it buys and sells securities (or "turns over" its portfolio). A higher portfolio turnover rate may indicate higher transaction costs and may result in higher taxes when shares are held in a taxable account. These costs, which are not reflected in Annual Fund Operating Expenses or in the Example of Expenses, affect the Fund's performance. During the most recent fiscal year, the Fund's portfolio turnover rate was 41% of the average value of its portfolio.

Principal Investment Strategies

The Fund's principal investment strategies described in this Prospectus are the strategies that the Advisor believes are most likely to be important in achieving the Fund's investment objective.

The Advisor intends to allocate the Fund's assets among real estate securities that, in the view of the Advisor, represent attractive investment opportunities. The Advisor evaluates securities based primarily on the relative attractiveness of income and secondarily considers the potential for capital appreciation. The Advisor seeks to allocate the Fund's assets such that the Fund may benefit from the performance of various sectors of the real estate market. In selecting securities for investment, the Advisor assesses the likely risks and returns of the different alternative investment opportunities and evaluates the potential correlation among the investments under consideration. The Advisor generally seeks to invest in securities for which the expected risk-adjusted yields are determined to be attractive and are likely to have low correlations among each other and with the broader securities markets. When determining an asset allocation, the Advisor may utilize fundamental, technical and other related methodologies to determine the intrinsic value of an underlying security. The Advisor may strategically rebalance its investment strategies according to the current market conditions, but will remain true to its fundamental analysis with respect to real estate asset class diversification across sector risk over time. The Advisor manages investments with a long-term view while being

mindful of the historical context of the markets. The Advisor plans to sell a security if, in the judgment of the portfolio managers, the security's income potential has been compromised, an issuer's fundamentals have deteriorated or may deteriorate or a more attractive investment opportunity is identified.

Real Estate Securities. The Fund concentrates its investments in real estate securities. For purposes of the Fund's investment policies, a ''real estate security'' is a security issued by a real estate company, which the Fund considers to be a company that either:

- derives at least 50% of its revenues from the ownership, construction, financing, management or sale of commercial, industrial or residential real estate and land; or
- has at least 50% of its assets invested in such real estate.

The Fund invests substantially all (and under normal market conditions, at least 80%) of its net assets (plus any borrowings for investment purposes) in income producing real estate securities, including securities issued by real estate investment trusts (REITs).

The securities in which the Fund invests consist of:

- REITs
- common stocks
- rights or warrants to purchase common stocks
- foreign securities
- depositary receipts
- securities convertible into common stocks where the conversion feature represents, in the Advisor's view, a significant element of the securities' value
- preferred stocks
- corporate debt obligations, including high-yield debt securities (commonly referred to as ''junk'' bonds)
- Commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS)

The Fund may invest in securities across all market capitalization ranges. Although the Advisor anticipates that the Fund will invest a substantial portion of its assets in equity securities, the Fund may invest up to 100% of its net assets in debt securities of any maturity, duration or credit rating.

The Fund may invest up to 15% of its net assets in illiquid securities.

Principal Investment Risks

You could lose money by investing in the Fund, and the Fund could underperform other investments. You should expect the Fund's share price and total return to fluctuate within a wide range. The Fund's performance could be hurt by:

Convertible Securities Risk. Investments in convertible securities generally entail less risk than investments in an issuer's common stock because convertible securities rank senior to common stock in an issuer's capital structure. The

extent to which such risk is reduced depends in large part upon the degree to which the convertible security sells above its value as a fixed-income security. Convertible securities are subordinate in rank to any senior debt obligations of an issuer, and, therefore, entail more risk than the issuer's debt obligations. Convertible securities generally offer lower interest than non-convertible debt securities of similar credit quality due to the potential for capital appreciation and are often lower-rated securities.

Credit Risk. An issuer or guarantor of a debt security may be unable or unwilling to make scheduled payments of interest and principal. Actual or perceived deterioration in an issuer's or guarantor's financial condition may affect a security's value.

Debt Securities Risk. When the Fund invests in debt securities, the value of the Fund's investment will fluctuate with changes in interest rates. Typically, a rise in interest rates causes a decline in the value of debt securities. In general, the market price of debt securities with longer maturities will increase or decrease more in response to changes in interest rates than shorter-term securities. Other risk factors include credit risk (the debtor may default) and prepayment risk (the debtor may pay its obligation early, reducing the amount of interest payments). These risks could affect the value of a particular investment, possibly causing the Fund's share price and total return to be reduced and fluctuate more than other types of investments.

Economic and Political Risks. These effects may be short-term by causing a change in the market that is corrected in a year or less, or they may have long-term impacts which may cause changes in the market that may last for many years. Some factors may affect changes in one sector of the economy or one stock, but don't have an impact on the overall market. The particular sector of the economy or the individual stock may be affected for a short or long-term.

Equity Risk. Equity securities can be volatile and may decline in value because of changes in the actual or perceived financial condition of their issuers or other events affecting their issuers. The Fund's target index may, at times, become focused in stocks of a particular sector, category or group of companies, which could cause Fund to underperform the overall stock market.

High-Yield (''Junk'') Bond Risk. Compared to higher quality debt securities, high-yield bonds (commonly referred to as ''junk'' bonds) involve a greater risk of default or price changes due to changes in the credit quality of the issuer because they are generally unsecured and may be subordinated to other creditors' claims. The values of junk bonds often fluctuate more in response to company, political, regulatory or economic developments than higher quality bonds. Their values can decline significantly over short periods of time or during periods of economic difficulty when the bonds could be difficult to value or sell at a fair price. Credit ratings on junk bonds do not necessarily reflect their actual market value.

Large Shareholder Risk. To the extent that shares of the Fund are held by large shareholders, the Fund is subject to the risk that these shareholders will redeem Fund shares in large amounts. These transactions could adversely affect the Fund if it is forced to sell portfolio securities to raise the cash that is necessary to satisfy shareholder redemption requests. This risk is particularly pronounced when one shareholder owns a substantial portion of the Fund.

Liquidity Risk. The Fund may not be able to purchase or sell a security in a timely manner or at desired prices or achieve its desired weighting in a security. Liquidity risk may result from the lack of an active market or a reduced number and capacity of traditional market participants to make a market in fixed income securities, and may be magnified under circumstances that cause increased supply in the market due to unusually high selling activity.

Manager Risk. Shelton Capital Management's opinion about the intrinsic worth or creditworthiness of a company or security may be incorrect or the market may continue to undervalue the company or security. Shelton Capital Management may not make timely purchases or sales of securities for the Fund.

Market Exposure Risk. Investment prices may increase or decrease, sometimes suddenly and unpredictably, due to general market conditions. The Fund is primarily invested in the U.S. stock markets. As with any investment whose performance is linked to these markets, the value of an investment in the Fund will change. During a declining stock market, investment in this Fund would lose money.

Mortgage-Backed Securities Risk. Mortgage-backed securities are subject to prepayment or call risk (i.e., the risks that the borrower's payments may be received earlier or later than expected due to changes in prepayment rates on underlying loans. Faster prepayments often happen when interest rates are falling. As a result, a Fund may reinvest these early payments at lower interest rates, thereby reducing the Fund's income. Conversely, when interest rates rise, prepayments may happen more slowly, causing the security to lengthen in duration. Longer duration securities tend to be more volatile. Securities may be prepaid at a price less than the original purchase value. An unexpectedly high rate of defaults on the mortgages held by a mortgage pool may adversely affect the value of mortgage-backed securities and could result in losses to a Fund. The risk of such defaults is generally higher in the case of mortgage pools that include subprime mortgages. Subprime mortgages refer to loans made to borrowers with weakened credit histories or with lower capacity to make timely payments on their mortgages. Many of the risks of investing in CMBS reflect the risks of investing in the real estate securing the underlying mortgage loans. These risks reflect the effects of local and other economic conditions on real estate markets, the ability of tenants to make loan payments and the ability of a property to attract and retain tenants. CMBS may be less liquid and exhibit greater price volatility than other types of mortgage- or asset-backed securities.

Non-Diversification Risk. The Fund is classified as a non-diversified management investment company under the 1940 Act. This means that the Fund may invest a greater portion of its assets in a limited number of issuers than would be the case if the Fund were classified as a diversified management investment company. The value of a specific security can perform differently from the market as a whole for reasons related to the issuer, such as operational performance, financial leverage and investment-level performance. The value of the Fund may decrease in response to

the activities and financial prospects of an individual security in the Fund's portfolio. Additionally, the Fund may be subject to greater risk, because the Fund's performance may be more sensitive to any single economic, business, political or regulatory occurrence than the value of shares of a diversified investment company.

Non-U.S. currency risk. Non-U.S. currencies may decline relative to the U.S. dollar, which reduces the unhedged value of securities denominated in or otherwise exposed to those currencies. Shelton Capital Management may not be able to determine accurately the extent to which a security or its issuer is exposed to currency risk.

Non-U.S. investment risk. Securities of non-U.S. issuers (including ADRs and other securities that represent interests in a non-U.S. issuer's securities) may be less liquid, more volatile, and harder to value than U.S. securities. Non-U.S. issuers may be subject to political, economic, or market instability, or unfavorable government action in their local jurisdictions or economic sanctions or other restrictions imposed by U.S. or foreign regulators. There may be less information publicly available about non-U.S. issuers and their securities and those issuers may be subject to lower levels of government regulation and oversight. These risks may be higher when investing in emerging market issuers. Certain of these elevated risks may also apply to securities of U.S. issuers with significant non-U.S. operations.

Preferred Stock Risk. There are various risks associated with investing in preferred stock, including credit risk, liquidity risk, interest rate risk, deferral and omission of distributions, subordination to bonds and other debt securities in a company's capital structure, limited liquidity, limited voting rights and special redemption rights.

Real Estate Industry Concentration Risk. To the extent a Fund concentrates its investments in real estate securities, the Fund's portfolio is significantly impacted by the performance of the real estate market generally, and the Fund may be exposed to greater risk and experience higher volatility than would a more diversified portfolio. The value of investments in the real estate industry may go through cycles of relative under-performance and over-performance in comparison to the broader securities markets. The value of the Fund's shares will be affected by factors generally affecting the real estate industry, including, among others: changes in general economic and market conditions; falling property values; declining rents; risks related to local economic conditions, overbuilding, development and increased competition; increases in property taxes and operating expenses; changes in local laws or regulations; casualty and condemnation losses; variations in rental income, neighborhood values and the appeal of property to tenants; the availability of financing; and changes in interest rates. The value of real estate companies also may drop because of poor management or the failure of borrowers to pay their loans, and residential developers, in particular, could be negatively impacted by falling home prices, slower mortgage origination and rising construction costs.

Rights and Warrants Risk. Investments in warrants involve certain risks, including the possible lack of a liquid market for the resale of the warrants, and potential price fluctuations due to adverse market conditions or other factors. In addition, changes in a warrant's value do not necessarily correspond to changes in the value of its underlying security and the price of the warrant may be more volatile that the price of its underlying security. If a right or warrant is not exercised within a specified time period, it becomes worthless.

Bar Chart and Performance Table

The following bar chart and table are intended to help you understand the risks of investing in the Fund. The bar chart shows calendar year returns and the average annual total return table indicates risk by illustrating how much returns can differ from one year to the next and how fund performance compares with that of a comparable market index. These figures assume that all distributions are reinvested. *The Fund's performance will fluctuate, and past performance (before and after taxes) is no guarantee of future results.* Updated performance information may be obtained on our website www.sheltoncap.com or by calling (800) 955-9988.

Best Quarter: 9.78% (Q1, 2014)

Worst Quarter: -5.61% (Q2, 2015)

Year to date performance as of 12/31/17: 3.72%

Date of inception: 06/07/2013

After-tax returns are calculated using the historical highest individual federal marginal income tax rates and do not reflect the impact of state and local taxes. Actual after-tax returns depend on the investor's tax situation and may differ from those shown, and the after-tax returns shown are not relevant to investors who hold their Fund shares through tax-deferred arrangements such as 401(k) plans or individual retirement accounts.

Average Annual Return (for the period ended 12/31/17)	1 year	Period from Inception
Real Estate Income Fund (Institutional Class- RENIX)		
Return Before Taxes	3.72%	7.03%
Return After Taxes on Distributions	2.24%	3.60%
Return After Taxes on Distributions and Sale of Fund Shares	2.09%	4.21%
S&P U.S. REIT Index	-4.72%	5.59%

It is not possible for individuals to invest directly in an index. Performance figures for an index do not reflect deductions for sales charges, commissions, expenses or taxes.

Fund Management

Shelton Capital Management serves as the investment advisor to the Fund. Mr. John Harnisch has served as the Fund's lead portfolio manager since April 2018. Mr. William Mock has served as a member of the portfolio management team since April 2018.

Other Important Information about Fund Shares

For important information about purchase and sale of Fund shares, tax information, and payments to financial intermediaries please turn to the "Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares" section on page 23 of this prospectus.

SHELTON TACTICAL CREDIT FUND Ticker Symbols: DEBIX and DEBTX

Investment Objective

The Fund investment objective is to seek current income and capital appreciation.

Fees and Expenses of the Fund

This table describes the fees and expenses that you may pay when you buy and hold shares of the Fund. The table and example do not reflect any transaction fees that may be charged by financial intermediaries or commissions that a shareholder may be required to pay directly to its financial intermediary when buying or selling shares.

Shareholder Fees (fee paid directly from your investment)	DEBIX	DEBTX
Sales and redemption charges	none	none
Annual Operating Expenses (expenses that you pay each year as a percentage of the value of your investment)		
Management fees	1.17%	1.17%
Distribution (12b-1) fees	none	0.25%
Other expenses	0.50%	0.49%
Total annual operating expenses	1.67%	1.91%
Expense Reimbursement[2]	(0.25)%	(0.24)%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expenses After Expense Reimbursement	1.42%	1.67%

(1) ''Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses'' are the indirect costs of investing in other investment companies. The operating expenses in this fee table will not correlate to the expense ratio in the Fund's financial highlights because the financial statements include only the direct operating expenses incurred by the Fund.

(2) The Fund's Advisor, Shelton Capital Management, has contractually agreed to reimburse expenses incurred by the Fund to the extent that total annual fund operating expenses (excluding acquired fund fees and expenses, and extraordinary expenses such as litigation or merger and reorganization expenses, for example) exceed 1.42% and

1.67% until May 1, 2019. This agreement may only be terminated with the approval of the Board of Trustees of the Fund. Shelton may be reimbursed for any foregone advisory fees or unreimbursed expenses within three fiscal years following a particular reduction or expense, but only to the extent the reimbursement does not cause the Fund to exceed applicable expense limits, and the effect of the reimbursement is measured after all ordinary operating expenses are calculated. Any such reimbursement is subject to the review and approval of the Fund's Board of Trustees.

Example of Expenses

This example is intended to help you compare the cost of investing in the Fund with the cost of investing in other mutual funds.

The example assumes that you invest $10,000 in the Fund for the time periods indicated and then redeem all of your shares at the end of those periods. This example also assumes that your investment has a 5% return each year and that the Fund's operating expenses remain the same. Although your actual costs may be higher or lower, based on these assumptions your costs would be:

	1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years
DEBIX	$170	$577	$1,009	$2,213
DEBTX	$145	$553	$986	$2,193

Portfolio Turnover

The Fund pays transaction costs, such as commissions, when it buys and sells securities (or "turns over" its portfolio). A higher portfolio turnover rate may indicate higher transaction costs and may result in higher taxes when shares are held in a taxable account. These costs, which are not reflected in Annual Fund Operating Expenses or in the Example of Expenses, affect the Fund's performance. During the most recent fiscal year, the Fund's portfolio turnover rate was 239% of the average value of its portfolio.

Principal Investment Strategies

The Advisor uses an unconstrained, opportunistic, tactical approach to credit investing, which focuses on corporate fixed income- sensitive securities that generally includes securities like bonds, junk bonds (commonly referred to as high yield), convertible bonds and bank debt. "Tactical" means that the Advisor will make purchases and sales based on its expectations of short-term market opportunities. This can be contrasted with a "buy and hold" strategy where funds tend to have lower turnover and hold positions for longer periods of time. This actively-managed strategy seeks to take advantage of short-term investment opportunities and reduce the correlation to the overall market by trading in and out of positions. The Advisor combines a macro-economic view with company-specific analysis (including a consideration of liquidity) in the construction of the portfolio positions. Macro-economic views are built by evaluating trends in global economies, central bank activities, fund flows and assessing market risk levels. From this analysis, the Advisor then formulates appropriate purchasing and hedging strategies. Hedging is an integral part of portfolio construction and the Advisor uses various investment tools to seek to reduce overall market risk and correlation. Risk

limits and portfolio stress tests are performed regularly to evaluate the Fund's exposure to various risks. The Advisor seeks to preserve capital in challenging markets and will quickly reposition the portfolio if it is necessary in its judgement. The Advisor seeks to add value by using a tactical credit strategy and at times of elevated risk, the Fund may invest 100% of the portfolio in cash or cash equivalents in an effort to protect the portfolio against these perceived risks.

The Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing primarily, under normal market conditions, in corporate fixed income and/or equity securities that it believes are undervalued. It employs relative value, event-driven, and hedging investment styles in allocating Fund assets across asset classes and capital structures including both long and/or short positions in seeking to achieve its investment objective and reduce risk.

Relative value strategies are designed to profit by the change in values between two securities instead of the movements of the overall market. They typically include long and short positions that seek to exploit disparities in pricing relationships between two instruments, thereby seeking profit from the correction in the "relative value" of the prices of the two securities. Acting on the assumption that prices will revert to true value, as defined by the Advisor using a valuation measure such as dividend yield or price to earnings ratio, over time, the Advisor will sell short the overpriced security and buy the underpriced security. If prices revert to this true value, the trade can be liquidated at a profit.

Event-driven strategies seek to profit from pricing differences or inefficiencies among securities that may occur before or after a unique event, such as bankruptcy, merger, acquisition, spinoff or special dividend. Credit analysis-based strategies seek to profit from pricing differences or inefficiencies among debt securities of issuers that are in some sort of financial distress. Convertible arbitrage debt strategies seek returns from price improvement or recovery proceeds on debt securities of troubled issuers by anticipating improved fundamentals; acquisition by a stronger issuer; or liquidation proceeds in a re-organization, bankruptcy or foreclosure. Each type of strategy typically employs risk-reducing hedging techniques using short selling, futures contracts, options or credit-default swaps and total return swaps.

The Fund may also invest in long and short positions of exchange traded securities. By taking long and short positions in different securities, the Fund attempts to limit the effect of market movements on portfolio performance. The Fund will generally take long positions in securities that the Advisor believes to be undervalued and short positions in securities that they believe to be overvalued, based on the Advisor's analysis of the issuer's financial reports and market valuation.

The Fund intends to engage in short selling regularly in conjunction with convertible arbitrage positions, capital structure "event driven" positions, and overall portfolio hedges, as deemed appropriate. The Fund's short positions may equal up to 75% of the Fund's net asset value.

The Fund defines fixed income securities as bills, notes, debentures, bonds, loans or loan participations, levered loans or asset-backed securities. The Fund defines equity securities as common stock, preferred stock, or debt that is convertible into common stock. The Fund invests without restriction as to issuer capitalization, country, or credit quality and without restriction as to the maturity of fixed income securities. The Fund plans to invest in high-yield (below investment grade) fixed income securities. High yield or "below-investment grade" securities are securities that are un-rated or rated BB+ or below by S&P or Ba1 or below by Moody's. These securities involve more risk, and will generally be more volatile than securities rated BBB- or Baa3 or above.

Principal Risks of Investing

You could lose money by investing in the Fund, and the Fund could underperform other investments. You should expect the Fund's share price and total return to fluctuate within a wide range. The Fund's performance could be hurt by:

Convertible Securities Risk: The value of the Fund's convertible securities may decline in response to such factors as rising interest rates and fluctuations in the market price of the common stock underlying the convertible securities.

Credit (or Default) Risk: The risk that the inability or unwillingness of an issuer or guarantor of a fixed income security, or a counterparty to a repurchase or other transaction, to meet its payment or other financial obligations will adversely affect the value of the Fund's investments and its returns. Changes in the credit rating of a debt security held by the Fund could have a similar effect.

Debt Extension Risk: This refers to the risk to the Fund that when interest rates rise, certain obligations will be paid off by the obligor more slowly than anticipated, causing the value of these securities to fall.

Defaulted Securities Risk: Repayment of defaulted securities and obligations of distressed issuers (including insolvent issuers or issuers in payment or covenant default, in workout or restructuring or in bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings) is subject to significant uncertainties. Investments in defaulted securities and obligations of distressed issuers are considered speculative as are junk bonds in general (See High-Yield Securities risk" below).

Derivatives Risk: Investing with derivatives, such as options, and equity index futures, or other futures contracts involves risks additional to and possibly greater than those associated with investing directly in securities. The value of a derivative may not correlate to the value of the underlying instrument to the extent expected. Derivative transactions may be volatile, and can create leverage, which could cause the Fund to lose more than the amount of assets initially contributed to the transaction, if any. The Fund may not be able to close a derivatives position at an advantageous time or price. For over-the-counter derivatives transactions, the counterparty may be unable or unwilling to make required payments and deliveries, especially during times of financial market distress. Changes in regulation relating to a mutual fund's use of derivatives and related instruments may make derivatives more costly, limit the availability of derivatives, or otherwise adversely affect the value or performance of derivatives and the Fund.

Distressed Securities Risk: Distressed securities are speculative and involve substantial risks in addition to the risks of investing in junk bonds. The Fund will generally not receive interest payments on the distressed securities and may incur costs to protect its investment. In addition, distressed securities involve the substantial risk that principal will not be repaid. These securities may present a substantial risk of default or may be in default at the time of investment. The Fund may incur additional expenses to the extent it is required to seek recovery upon a default in the payment of principal of or interest on its portfolio holdings. In any reorganization or liquidation proceeding relating to an investment company, the Fund may lose its entire investment or may be required to accept cash or securities with a value less than its original investment.

Economic and Political Risks. Many factors will affect the performance of the stock market. Two major factors are economic and political events. The impact of positive or negative events could be short-term (by causing a change in the market that is corrected in a year or less) or long-term (by causing a change in the market that may last for many years). Events may affect one sector of the economy or a single stock, but may not have a significant impact on the overall market**.**

Equity Securities Risk: Stock markets are volatile. The price of equity securities held by the Fund may fluctuate based on changes in the issuing company's financial condition, as well as overall market and economic conditions.

Event-Driven Trading Risk: The Fund invests in certain securities which it believes may benefit from certain outcomes including special situations. This is known as "Event-Driven Trading." Event-Driven Trading involves the risk that the special situation may not occur as anticipated, in which case the Fund may realize losses.

Fixed Income Risk: The risk that the value of the Fund's investments in fixed income securities will fluctuate with changes in interest rates. Typically, a rise in interest rates causes a decline in the value of fixed income securities.

High-Yield ("Junk Bond") Securities Risk: Compared to higher quality debt securities, high-yield bonds (commonly referred to as ''junk'' bonds) involve a greater risk of default or price changes due to changes in the credit quality of the issuer because they are generally unsecured and may be subordinated to other creditors' claims. The values of junk bonds often fluctuate more in response to company, political, regulatory or economic developments than higher quality bonds. Their values can decline significantly over short periods of time or during periods of economic difficulty when the bonds could be difficult to value or sell at a fair price. Credit ratings on junk bonds do not necessarily reflect their actual market value.

Interest Rate/Maturity Risk: The risk that the value of the Fund's assets will decline because of rising interest rates. The magnitude of this decline will often be greater for longer term fixed income securities than shorter-term securities.

Issuer-Specific Risk: The value of a specific security can be more volatile than the market as a whole and can perform differently from the value of the market as a whole. The value of securities of smaller issuers can be more volatile than those of larger issuers. The value of certain types of securities can be more volatile due to increased sensitivity to adverse issuer, political, regulatory, market, or economic developments.

Liquidity Risk: Liquidity risk exists when particular investments of the Fund would be difficult to purchase or sell, possibly preventing the Fund from selling such illiquid securities at an advantageous time or price, or possibly requiring the Fund to dispose of other investments at unfavorable times or prices in order to satisfy its obligations. The Fund will not invest more than 15% in illiquid securities.

Manager Risk. Shelton Capital Management's opinion about the intrinsic worth or creditworthiness of a company or security may be incorrect or the market may continue to undervalue the company or security. Shelton Capital Management may not make timely purchases or sales of securities for the Fund.

Market Risk: The risk that the market value of a security may fluctuate, sometimes rapidly and unpredictably. The prices of securities change in response to many factors including the historical and prospective earnings of the issuer, the value of its assets, general economic conditions, interest rates, investor perceptions and market liquidity.

Portfolio Turnover Risk: The risk that high portfolio turnover is likely to lead to increased Fund expenses that may result in lower investment returns. High portfolio turnover also is likely to result in higher short-term capital gains taxable to shareholders.

Short Sale Risk: Short selling a security involves selling a borrowed security with the expectation that the value of that security will decline so that the security may be purchased at a lower price when returning the borrowed security. The risk of loss on short selling is greater than the original value of the securities sold short because the price of the

borrowed security may rise, thereby increasing the price at which the security must be purchased. The Fund's potential loss is limited only by the maximum attainable price of the security, less the price at which the security was sold and may, theoretically, be unlimited. Government actions also may affect the Fund's ability to engage in short selling. In addition, the Fund may be subject to expenses related to short sales that are not typically associated with investing in securities directly, such as costs of borrowing and margin account maintenance costs associated with the Fund's open short positions.

Bar Chart and Performance Table

The following bar chart and table are intended to help you understand the risks of investing in the Fund. The bar chart shows calendar year returns and the average annual total return table indicates risk by illustrating how much returns can differ from one year to the next and how fund performance compares with that of a comparable market index. These figures assume that all distributions are reinvested. *The Fund's performance will fluctuate, and past performance (before and after taxes) is no guarantee of future results.* Updated performance information may be obtained on our website www.sheltoncap.com or by calling (800) 955-9988.

Best Quarter: 4.41% (Q3, 2016)

Worst Quarter: -1.50% (Q3, 2015)

Year to date performance as of 12/31/17: 3.34%

Date of inception: 12/15/2014

After-tax returns are calculated using the historical highest individual federal marginal income tax rates and do not reflect the impact of state and local taxes. Actual after-tax returns depend on the investor's tax situation and may differ from those shown, and the after-tax returns shown are not relevant to investors who hold their Fund shares through tax-deferred arrangements such as 401(k) plans or individual retirement accounts.

Average Annual Return (for the period ended 12/31/17)		
Shelton Tactical Credit Fund (Institutional Class – DEBIX)	1 year	Period From Inception
Return Before Taxes	3.34%	6.46%
Return After Taxes on Distributions	0.83%	4.07%
Return After Taxes on Distributions and Sale of Fund Shares	1.87%	3.87%
Barclays Capital U.S. Aggregate Bond Index1	1.20%	1.64%

It is not possible for individuals to invest directly in an index. Performance figures for an index do not reflect deductions for sales charges, commissions, expenses or taxes.

Fund Management

Shelton Capital Management serves as the investment advisor to the Fund. Mr. John Harnisch has served as the Fund's lead portfolio manager since the Fund's inception. Mr. William Mock has served as a member of the portfolio management team since March 2017.

Other Important Information about Fund Shares

For important information about purchase and sale of Fund shares, tax information, and payments to financial intermediaries please turn to the "Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares" section on page 23 of this prospectus.

SHELTON INTERNATIONAL SELECT EQUITY FUND Ticker Symbols: SISLX and SISEX

Investment Objective

The Fund seeks to achieve long-term capital appreciation.

Fees and Expenses of the Fund

This table describes the fees and expenses that you may pay when you buy and hold shares of the Fund. The table and example do not reflect any transaction fees that may be charged by financial intermediaries or commissions that a shareholder may be required to pay directly to its financial intermediary when buying or selling shares.

Shareholder Fees (fee paid directly from your investment)	SISLX	SISEX
Sales and redemption charges	none	none
Annual Operating Expenses (expenses that you pay each year as a percentage of the value of your investment)		
Management fees	0.74%	0.74%
Distribution (12b-1) fees	none	0.25%
Other expenses	0.58%	0.60%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expense	1.32%	1.59%
Expense Reimbursement[(1)]	(0.33)%	(0.35)%
Total Annual Fund Operating Expenses After Expense Reimbursement	0.99%	1.24%

[1] The Fund's Advisor, Shelton Capital Management, has contractually agreed to reimburse expenses incurred by the Fund to the extent that total annual fund operating expenses (excluding acquired fund fees and expenses, and extraordinary expenses such as litigation or merger and reorganization expenses, for example) exceed 0.99% and 1.24% until May 1, 2019. This agreement may only be terminated with the approval of the Board of Trustees of the Fund. Shelton may be reimbursed for any foregone advisory fees or unreimbursed expenses within three fiscal years following a particular reduction or expense, but only to the extent the reimbursement does not cause the Fund to exceed applicable expense limits, and the effect of the reimbursement is measured after all ordinary operating expenses are calculated. Any such reimbursement is subject to the review and approval of the Fund's Board of Trustees.

Example of Expenses

This example is intended to help you compare the cost of investing in the Fund with the cost of investing in other mutual funds.

The example assumes that you invest $10,000 in the Fund for the time periods indicated and then redeem all of your shares at the end of those periods. This example also assumes that your investment has a 5% return each year and that the Fund's operating expenses remain the same. Although your actual costs may be higher or lower, based on these assumptions your costs would be:

	1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years
SISLX	$126	$468	$833	$1,860
SISEX	$101	$386	$692	$1,561

Portfolio Turnover

The Fund pays transaction costs, such as commissions, when it buys and sells securities (or "turns over" its portfolio). A higher portfolio turnover rate may indicate higher transaction costs and may result in higher taxes when Fund shares are held in a taxable account. These costs, which are not reflected in annual fund operating expenses or in the Example, affect the Fund's performance. During the most recent fiscal year, the Fund’s portfolio turnover rate was 24% of the average value of its portfolio.

Principal Investment Strategies

The Fund primarily invests, under normal market conditions, at least 80% of the Fund’s net assets (plus borrowings for investment purposes) in a combination of equity securities of foreign (i.e., non-U.S.) companies with a suitable potential for earnings growth. The Fund invests its assets in equity securities of non-U.S. companies located in countries with developed markets, but may also invest in companies domiciled in emerging markets.

Under normal market conditions, the Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing in a universe of stocks listed within the MSCI ACWI ex USA index, as well as those in other developed, emerging, and frontier markets with a market capitalization of $2.5 billion or higher. The Advisor anticipates that the percentage of the Fund’s investable universe not included in the MSCI ACWI ex USA index will be approximately 20%. The Fund ordinarily invests in no fewer than three different countries outside the U.S. Under normal market conditions, the Fund will invest at least 40% of its net assets, plus any borrowings for investment purposes, in securities of non-U.S. companies. However, the Fund may invest a lesser amount of its assets in securities of non-U.S. companies when market conditions are not deemed favorable, in which case the Fund would invest at least 30% of its net assets, plus any borrowings for investment purposes, in securities of non-U.S. companies. The Fund will normally invest in the securities of approximately 30 to 50 issuers.

The Fund’s investments in equity securities may include common and preferred stock, convertible preferred stock, warrants and rights. The Advisor implements its investment strategy by first using a proprietary global “life-cycle” screen to narrow the Fund’s investable universe. The Advisor then uses a fundamental, “bottom-up” research selection and disciplined portfolio construction process which is focused on identifying stocks that the Advisor believes have the ability to generate sustainable returns, regardless of sector or country.

The Advisor’s “life-cycle” screen classifies companies according to one of the following five categories:

- Innovation: Companies characterized as having high level of capital investment and below the cost of capital returns.
- Expansion: Companies characterized by aggressive investment to compound their high and rising returns, achieving a peak in both growth and cash flow returns.
- Deceleration: Companies characterized as having very high returns, combined with good, but slowing growth prospects.
- Maturity: Companies characterized as earning a small positive spread above the cost of capital.
- Distress: Companies characterized as having returns driven down below the cost of capital.

The Advisor's investment team actively invests across all five categories of the "life-cycle," building a diversified portfolio of high-growth, high-return, income-oriented and distressed investments. In managing the portfolio, the investment team seeks to balance the portfolio's risk and return by maximizing stock specific risk (risk from security selection) while at the same time minimizing systematic factor risks (which includes, but is not limited to, sector selection, country selection, currency management).

The Fund may engage in frequent and active trading of securities as a part of its principal investment strategy. The Advisor will sell or reallocate a Fund's securities if the Advisor believes the issuer of such securities no longer meets certain growth criteria, if certain political and economic events occur, or if it believes that more attractive opportunities are available. The team strives to preserve capital as part of its investment process.

Principal Risks of Investing

You could lose money by investing in the Fund, and the Fund could underperform other investments. You should expect the Fund's share price and total return to fluctuate within a wide range. The Fund's performance could be hurt by:

Economic and Political Risks. These effects may be short-term by causing a change in the global markets that is corrected in a year or less, or they may have long-term impacts which may cause changes in the markets that may last for many years. In any given country, some factors may affect changes in one sector of the economy or one stock, but don't have an impact on the overall market. The particular sector of the economy or the individual stock may be affected for a short or long-term.

Emerging markets risk. Emerging market securities may present issuer, market, currency, liquidity, volatility, valuation, legal, political, and other risks different from, and potentially greater than, the risks of investing in securities of issuers in more developed market.

Equity Risk. Equity securities can be volatile and may decline in value because of changes in the actual or perceived financial condition of their issuers or other events affecting their issuers. The Fund's target index may, at times, become focused in stocks of a particular sector, category or group of companies, which could cause Fund to

underperform the overall stock market.

Manager Risk. Shelton Capital Management's opinion about the intrinsic worth or creditworthiness of a company or security may be incorrect or the market may continue to undervalue the company or security. Shelton Capital Management may not make timely purchases or sales of securities for the Fund.

Market Exposure Risk. Investment prices may increase or decrease, sometimes suddenly and unpredictably, due to general market conditions. The Fund invests in stock markets primarily outside the U.S. As with any investment whose performance is linked to these markets, the value of an investment in the Fund will change. During a declining stock market, investment in this Fund would lose money.

MidCap Stock Risk. The risk that stocks of relatively smaller capitalization within the midcap range of companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Relatively smaller capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Non-U.S. currency risk. Non-U.S. currencies may decline relative to the U.S. dollar, which reduces the unhedged value of securities denominated in or otherwise exposed to those currencies. Shelton Capital Management may not be able to determine accurately the extent to which a security or its issuer is exposed to currency risk.

Non-U.S. investment risk. Securities of non-U.S. issuers (including ADRs and other securities that represent interests in a non-U.S. issuer's securities) may be less liquid, more volatile, and harder to value than U.S. securities. Non-U.S. issuers may be subject to political, economic, or market instability, or unfavorable government action in their local jurisdictions or economic sanctions or other restrictions imposed by U.S. or foreign regulators. There may be less information publicly available about non-U.S. issuers and their securities and those issuers may be subject to lower levels of government regulation and oversight. These risks may be higher when investing in emerging market issuers. Certain of these elevated risks may also apply to securities of U.S. issuers with significant non-U.S. operations.

Portfolio Turnover Risk: The risk that high portfolio turnover is likely to lead to increased Fund expenses that may result in lower investment returns. High portfolio turnover also is likely to result in higher short-term capital gains taxable to shareholders.

SmallCap Stock Risk. The risk that stocks of smaller capitalization companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Small capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Valuation Risk: The risk that the Fund has valued certain of its securities at a higher price than it can sell them.

Bar Chart and Performance Table

The following bar chart and table are intended to help you understand the risks of investing in the Fund. The bar chart shows calendar year returns and the average annual total return table indicates risk by illustrating how much returns can differ from one year to the next and how fund performance compares with that of a comparable market index. These figures assume that all distributions are reinvested. *The Fund's performance will fluctuate, and past performance (before and after taxes) is no guarantee of future results.* Updated performance information may be obtained on our website www.sheltoncap.com or by calling (800) 955-9988.

Best Quarter: 9.88% (Q1, 2017)

Worst Quarter: -1.52% (Q4, 2016)

Year to date performance as of 12/31/17: 34.94%

Date of inception: 07/18/2016[1]

[1] Shelton Capital Management became the investment advisor to the predecessor fund of the Fund on July 18, 2016. The predecessor fund was reorganized into the Fund on July 28, 2017. The investment objective, strategy, risks and policies of the predecessor fund during the period July 18, 2016 to July 28, 2017 were identical to those of the Fund.

After-tax returns are calculated using the historical highest individual federal marginal income tax rates and do not reflect the impact of state and local taxes. Actual after-tax returns depend on the investor's tax situation and may differ from those shown, and the after-tax returns shown are not relevant to investors who hold their Fund shares through tax-deferred arrangements such as 401(k) plans or individual retirement accounts.

Average Annual Return (for the period ended 12/31/17) Shelton International Select Equity Fund (Institutional Class- SISEX)	1 year	Period From Inception
Return Before Taxes	34.94%	23.04%
Return After Taxes on Distributions	33.79%	21.98%
Return After Taxes on Distributions and Sale of Fund Shares	19.73%	17.45%
S&P/Citigroup Value Index	16.53%	15.91%
MSCI ACWI Ex USA (NET) Index[1]	34.94%	23.04%

It is not possible for individuals to invest directly in an index. Performance figures for an index do not reflect deductions for sales charges, commissions, expenses or taxes.

1 The MSCI ACWI Ex USA Index is a free float-adjusted market capitalization index that is designed to measure developed market equity performance, excluding the U.S. & Canada. MSCI, Inc. publishes two versions of this Index reflecting the reinvestment of dividends using two different methodologies: gross dividends and net dividends. While both versions reflect reinvested dividends, they differ with respect to the manner in which taxes associated with dividend payments are treated. In calculating the gross dividends version, MSCI reinvests as much as possible of a company's dividend distributions. The reinvested amount is equal to the total dividend amount distributed to persons residing in the country of the dividend-paying company. Gross total return indexes do not, however, include any tax credits. In calculating the net dividends version, MSCI incorporates reinvested dividends applying the withholding tax rate applicable to foreign non-resident institutional investors that do not benefit from double taxation treaties.

22

Fund Management

Shelton Capital Management serves as the investment advisor to the Fund. Mr. Andrew Manton has served as member of the portfolio management team since the Fund's inception, and as the lead portfolio manager since May 2018.

Other Important Information about Fund Shares

For important information about purchase and sale of Fund shares, tax information, and payments to financial intermediaries please turn to the "Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares" section on page 23 of this prospectus.

Summary of Other Important Information About Fund Shares

Purchase and Sale of Fund Shares

Each Fund's initial and subsequent investment minimums are as follows:

	Minimum Initial Investment	Minimum Subsequent Investment
Accounts with Automatic Investment Plan ("AIP")	$500	$100
All other accounts	$1,000	$100

You may redeem all or a portion of your shares on any business day that a Fund is open for business by mail, telephone or our website (www.sheltoncap.com).You may receive the redemption by wire, electronic funds transfer or check. The sale price of your shares will be the Fund's next determined net asset value after the Fund's transfer agent, or an authorized agent or sub-agent receives all required documents in good order as further described below. If you have questions or need assistance, you may call client services for SCM Trust at (800) 955-9988 during normal business hours (generally 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Mountain Time).

Tax Information. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, the Fund's distributions of earnings are taxable and will be taxed as ordinary income, capital gains or qualified dividend income taxable to noncorporate shareholders at federal rates applicable to long-term capital gains. If you invest through a tax-deferred arrangement, such as a 401(k) plan or an individual retirement account, special tax rules will apply.

Payments to Broker-Dealers and other Financial Intermediaries If you purchase a Fund through an employee benefit plan, the Fund, Shelton Capital Management or related entities may make payments to the recordkeeper, broker/ dealer, bank, or other financial institution or organization (each a "financial intermediary") that provides shareholder recordkeeping or other administrative services to the plan as compensation for those services. These payments may

create a conflict of interest by influencing your Financial Intermediary to make available a Fund over other mutual funds or investments. You should ask your financial intermediary about differing and divergent interests and how it is compensated for administering your Fund investment.

Investment Objectives and Principal Strategies

Shelton Greater China Fund – The Fund's seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing primarily in companies that (i) are domiciled in, or traded on exchanges located in, the Greater China region, specifically Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore and the People's Republic of China or (ii) have derived or are expected to derive in the company's current fiscal year (measured as of the time of original investment) a significant portion (at least 50%) of their revenues by exporting to or importing from, trading with, or operating in, mainland China. A company meeting the requirements of either items (i) or (ii) of the previous sentence is defined as a "Greater China company." Under normal circumstances, the Fund will invest at least 80% of the Fund's net assets in the common and preferred stocks of Greater China companies. Net assets would typically include borrowings for investment purposes; however, the Fund has no present intent to borrow.

A company is considered to be domiciled in, or traded on exchanges located in, a country if it (i) is organized under the laws of that country, or (ii) derives at least 50% of its revenues or profits from goods produced or sold, investments made, services performed, or has at least 50% of its assets located within that country, or (iii) has the primary trading markets for its securities in that country, or (iv) is controlled by a governmental entity or agency, instrumentality or a political subdivision of that country.

The Advisor implements its investment strategy by first using a proprietary "life-cycle" screen to narrow the Fund's investable universe. The Advisor then uses a fundamental, "bottom-up" research selection and disciplined portfolio construction process which is focused on identifying stocks that the Advisor believes have the ability to generate sustainable returns, regardless of sector or country. The Advisor's "life-cycle" screen classifies companies according to one of the following five categories:

- Innovation: Companies characterized as having high level of capital investment and below the cost of capital returns.
- Expansion: Companies characterized by aggressive investment to compound their high and rising returns, achieving a peak in both growth and cash flow returns.
- Deceleration: Companies characterized as having very high returns, combined with good, but slowing growth prospects.

- Maturity: Companies characterized as earning a small positive spread above the cost of capital.
- Distress: Companies characterized as having returns driven down below the cost of capital.

The Advisor's investment team actively invests across all five categories of the "life-cycle," building a diversified portfolio of high-growth, high-return, income-oriented and distressed investments. In managing the portfolio, the investment team seeks to balance the portfolio's risk and return by maximizing stock specific risk (risk from security selection) while at the same time minimizing systematic factor risks (which includes, but is not limited to, sector selection, country selection, currency management). The Fund may engage in frequent and active trading of securities as a part of its principal investment strategy. The Advisor will sell or reallocate a Fund's securities if the Advisor believes the issuer of such securities no longer meets certain growth criteria, if certain political and economic events occur, or if it believes that more attractive opportunities are available. The team strives to preserve capital as part of its investment process. The Advisor may elect to purchase futures contracts and/or options to attempt to remain fully invested in the markets. The percentage of futures held in the portfolio will typically not exceed the cash (or cash equivalents) balance of the Fund

Shelton BDC Income Fund – The Fund invests substantially all (and under normal market conditions, at least 80%) of its net assets (plus any borrowings for investment purposes) in common stocks and other equity securities of business development companies (''BDCs'') that are traded on one or more nationally recognized securities exchanges.

The equity securities in which the Fund may invest consist of:

- common stocks
- securities convertible into common stocks
- preferred stocks

In addition, although the Fund typically invests in equity securities, the Fund may invest up to 20% of its net assets in debt securities of BDCs and other issuers of any maturity, duration or credit rating.

BDCs are publicly-held, closed-end investment funds that are regulated by the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the ''1940 Act''). BDCs primarily lend to or invest in private or thinly-traded companies. They also offer managerial assistance to the companies in which they invest. BDCs must adhere to various substantive regulatory requirements under the 1940 Act. For example, the 1940 Act restricts the types of assets in which a BDC may invest (*i.e.*, at least 70% of the BDC's total assets must be ''qualifying assets,'' as defined in the 1940 Act). The 1940 Act also regulates how BDCs employ ''leverage'' (*i.e.*, how BDCs use borrowed funds to make investments). Because the 1940 Act applies unique ''coverage ratio'' tests to BDCs, BDCs may incur more debt than other regulated closed-end investment companies. Specifically, on one hand, the total assets of a closed-end investment company (other than a BDC) must exceed the fund's outstanding debt by at least 300%. On the other hand, the total assets of a BDC must exceed the BDC's outstanding debt by only 200%, thereby allowing a BDC to employ more leverage than other regulated closed-end investment companies. Leverage magnifies the potential for gain and loss on amounts invested

and, as a result, increases the risks associated with the securities of leveraged companies.

The Advisor evaluates equity securities primarily on the BDC's or other issuer's ability to sustain its current dividend and secondarily considers the potential for capital appreciation. The Advisor intends to allocate the Fund's assets among BDCs that, in its view, are paying attractive rates of distribution and appear capable of sustaining that distribution level over time. The Advisor incorporates into its assessment, among other factors, dividend yield, price to book, financial operations, portfolio of investments and management quality. The Advisor will also consider the amount of leverage employed by a BDC or other issuer before deciding to invest in its securities. In selecting securities for investment, the Advisor generally seeks to invest in securities with relatively high distribution rates, and that it believes will continue to pay distributions at those rates for the foreseeable future. Distributions from such securities may consist of income, capital gains and/or return of capital and cannot be guaranteed to continue.

When selecting securities for the Fund, the Advisor may utilize fundamental, technical and other related methodologies to determine the intrinsic value of a security. Examples of fundamental methodologies include consideration of a stock's financials, economic factors that might impact the stock, and the qualitative and quantitative factors. Technical methodologies generally refer to the consideration of past market data, primarily using price and volume data. The Advisor expects that it will sell a security if, in the judgment of the portfolio manager, the security's income potential has been compromised, an issuer's fundamentals have deteriorated or may deteriorate or a more attractive investment opportunity is identified.

The Fund may invest up to 15% of its net assets in illiquid securities.

Shelton Real Estate Income Fund – The Fund's principal investment strategies described in this Prospectus are the strategies that the Advisor believes are most likely to be important in achieving the Fund's investment objective.

The Advisor intends to allocate the Fund's assets among real estate securities that, in the view of the Advisor, represent attractive investment opportunities. The Advisor evaluates securities based primarily on the relative attractiveness of income and secondarily considers the potential for capital appreciation. The Advisor seeks to allocate the Fund's assets such that the Fund may benefit from the performance of various sectors of the real estate market. In selecting securities for investment, the Advisor assesses the likely risks and returns of the different alternative investment opportunities and evaluates the potential correlation among the investments under consideration. The Advisor generally seeks to invest in securities for which the expected risk-adjusted yields are determined to be attractive and are likely to have low correlations among each other and with the broader securities markets. When determining an asset allocation, the Advisor may utilize fundamental, technical and other related methodologies to determine the intrinsic value of an underlying security. The Advisor may strategically rebalance its investment strategies according to the current market conditions, but will remain true to its fundamental analysis with respect to real estate asset class diversification across sector risk over time. The Advisor manages investments with a long-term view while being mindful of the historical context of the markets. The Advisor plans to sell a security if, in the judgment of the portfolio managers, the security's income potential has been compromised, an issuer's fundamentals have deteriorated or may deteriorate or a more attractive investment opportunity is identified.

24

Real Estate Securities. The Fund concentrates its investments in real estate securities. For purposes of the Fund's investment policies, a ''real estate security'' is a security issued by a real estate company, which the Fund considers to be a company that either:

- derives at least 50% of its revenues from the ownership, construction, financing, management or sale of commercial, industrial or residential real estate and land; or
- has at least 50% of its assets invested in such real estate.

The Fund invests substantially all (and under normal market conditions, at least 80%) of its net assets (plus any borrowings for investment purposes) in income producing real estate securities, including securities issued by REITs.

The securities in which the Fund invests consist of:

- REITs
- common stocks
- rights or warrants to purchase common stocks
- foreign securities
- depositary receipts
- securities convertible into common stocks where the conversion feature represents, in the Advisor's view, a significant element of the securities' value
- preferred stocks
- corporate debt obligations, including high-yield debt securities (commonly referred to as ''junk'' bonds)
- CMBS

The Fund may invest in securities across all market capitalization ranges. Although the Advisor anticipates that the Fund will invest a substantial portion of its assets in equity securities, the Fund may invest up to 100% of its net assets in debt securities of any maturity, duration or credit rating.

The Fund may invest up to 15% of its net assets in illiquid securities.

REITs. The Fund invests in both equity and debt securities, and invests to a substantial degree in securities issued by REITs. REITs are pooled investment vehicles that own interests in real estate, real-estate related loans or similar interests, and their revenue primarily consists of rent derived from owned, income-producing real estate properties and capital gains from the sale of such properties. REITs can be classified as equity REITs, mortgage REITs and hybrid REITs. Equity REITs invest primarily in real property and earn rental income from leasing those properties. They may also realize gains or losses from the sale of such properties. Mortgage REITs invest primarily in mortgages and similar real estate interests and receive interest payments from the owners of the mortgaged properties. Hybrid REITs invest

both in real property and in mortgages. A majority of the REITs in which the Fund invests are generally considered by the Advisor to be medium- or small-capitalization companies.

Distributions received by the Fund from REITs may consist of dividends, capital gains and/or return of capital. A REIT organized in the U.S. is generally not taxed on income distributed to shareholders so long as it meets certain tax-related requirements, including the requirement that it distribute substantially all of its taxable income to its shareholders (other than net capital gains for each taxable year). Foreign REITs and REIT-like entities are organized outside of the U.S., but similarly operate and receive similar tax treatment. As REITs generally pay a higher rate of dividends than most operating companies, to the extent application of the Fund's investment strategy results in the Fund investing in REIT shares, the percentage of the Fund's dividend income received from REIT shares will likely exceed the percentage of the Fund's portfolio that is comprised of REIT shares.

Preferred Stocks. The Fund may invest in preferred stocks. Preferred stock is a security that pays dividends at a specified rate and generally has a preference over common stock in the payment of dividends and the liquidation of assets. This means that an issuer must generally pay dividends on its preferred stock prior to paying dividends on its common stock. In addition, in the event a company is liquidated, preferred shareholders generally must be fully repaid on their investments before common shareholders can receive any money from the company. Preferred shareholders, however, usually have no right to vote for a company's directors or on other corporate matters. Preferred stock pays a fixed stream of income to investors, and this income stream is a primary source of the long-term investment return on preferred stocks. Preferred stock shares many investment characteristics with debt securities.

Convertible Securities. A convertible security shares features of both equity and debt securities. A convertible security is generally a debt security or preferred stock that may be converted within a specified period of time into common stock of the same or a different issuer. By investing in convertible securities, the Fund seeks the opportunity to participate in the capital appreciation of the underlying security, while at the same time relying on the fixed income aspect of the convertible securities to provide current income and reduced price volatility, which can limit the risk of loss in a down equity market.

Rights and Warrants. Warrants give the Fund the right to buy stock. The warrant specifies the amount of underlying stock, the purchase (or exercise) price and the date the warrant expires. Rights are similar to warrants, but normally have a shorter duration and are distributed directly by the issuer to its shareholders. Rights and warrants have no voting rights, receive no dividends and have no rights with respect to the assets of the issuer.

Non-U.S. securities. The Fund may invest in real estate securities of companies that are organized or located outside of the U.S. and that invest in non-U.S. markets. The Fund considers a company that derives at least 50% of its revenue from investments outside the U.S. or that has at least 50% of its assets invested outside of the U.S. as principally invested in non-U.S. markets. The Fund considers a company to be located outside of the U.S. if it is operated, headquartered or otherwise substantially present in a country other than the U.S.

Depositary Receipts. A depositary receipt is a negotiable certificate that evidences an ownership interest in depositary shares, which, in turn, represent an interest in the shares of a non-U.S. company that has been deposited with a depositary bank. The Fund may invest in ‘‘sponsored’’ and ‘‘unsponsored’’ depositary receipts. Sponsored depositary receipts are those in which the non-U.S. company enters into an agreement directly with the depositary bank to arrange for recordkeeping, forwarding of shareholder communications, payment of dividends and other services. An unsponsored depositary receipt is set up without the cooperation of the non-U.S. company and may be initiated by a broker-dealer wishing to establish a trading market.

Debt Securities. The Fund may invest in debt securities issued by U.S. and non-U.S. companies, including U.S. dollar-denominated debt obligations issued or guaranteed by U.S. companies and CMBS. Such debt obligations include, among others, bonds, notes, debentures and variable rate demand notes, with the primary difference being their maturities and secured or unsecured status. Such debt securities are issued by businesses to finance their operations. The issuer pays the investor a fixed or variable rate of interest and normally must repay the amount borrowed on or before maturity.

CMBS. The Fund may invest in convertible mortgage bonds and CMBS. CMBS are bonds that evidence interests in, or are secured by, a single commercial mortgage loan or a pool of commercial mortgage loans.

Shelton Tactical Credit Fund – The Advisor uses an unconstrained, opportunistic, tactical approach to credit investing, which focuses on corporate fixed income- sensitive securities that generally includes securities like bonds, junk bonds (commonly referred to as high yield), convertible bonds and bank debt. “Tactical” means that the Advisor will make purchases and sales based on its expectations of short-term market opportunities. This can be contrasted with a “buy and hold” strategy where funds tend to have lower turnover and hold positions for longer periods of time. This actively-managed strategy seeks to take advantage of short-term investment opportunities and reduce the correlation to the overall market by trading in and out of positions. The Advisor combines a macro-economic view with company-specific analysis (including a consideration of liquidity) in the construction of the portfolio positions. Macro-economic views are built by evaluating trends in global economies, central bank activities, fund flows and assessing market risk levels. From this analysis, the Advisor then formulates appropriate purchasing and hedging

strategies. Hedging is an integral part of portfolio construction and the Advisor uses various investment tools to seek to reduce overall market risk and correlation. Risk limits and portfolio stress tests are performed regularly to evaluate the Fund's exposure to various risks. The Advisor seeks to preserve capital in challenging markets and will quickly reposition the portfolio if it is necessary in its judgement. The Advisor seeks to add value by using a tactical credit strategy and at times of elevated risk, the Fund may invest 100% of the portfolio in cash or cash equivalents in an effort to protect the portfolio against these perceived risks.

The Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing primarily, under normal market conditions, in corporate fixed income and/or equity securities that it believes are undervalued. It employs relative value, event-driven, and hedging investment styles in allocating Fund assets across asset classes and capital structures including both long and/or short positions in seeking to achieve its investment objective and reduce risk.

Relative value strategies are designed to profit by the change in values between two securities instead of the movements of the overall market. They typically include long and short positions that seek to exploit disparities in pricing relationships between two instruments, thereby seeking profit from the correction in the "relative value" of the prices of the two securities. Acting on the assumption that prices will revert to true value, as defined by the Advisor using a valuation measure such as dividend yield or price to earnings ratio, over time, the Advisor will sell short the overpriced security and buy the underpriced security. If prices revert to this true value, the trade can be liquidated at a profit.

Event-driven strategies seek to profit from pricing differences or inefficiencies among securities that may occur before or after a unique event, such as bankruptcy, merger, acquisition, spinoff or special dividend. Credit analysis-based strategies seek to profit from pricing differences or inefficiencies among debt securities of issuers that are in some sort of financial distress. Convertible arbitrage debt strategies seek returns from price improvement or recovery proceeds on debt securities of troubled issuers by anticipating improved fundamentals; acquisition by a stronger issuer; or liquidation proceeds in a re-organization, bankruptcy or foreclosure. Each type of strategy typically employs risk-reducing hedging techniques using short selling, futures contracts, options or credit-default swaps and total return swaps.

The Fund may also invest in long and short positions of exchange traded securities. By taking long and short positions in different securities, the Fund attempts to limit the effect of market movements on portfolio performance. The Fund will generally take long positions in securities that the Advisor believes to be undervalued and short positions in securities that they believe to be overvalued, based on the Advisor's analysis of the issuer's financial reports and market valuation.

The Fund intends to engage in short selling regularly in conjunction with convertible arbitrage positions, capital structure “event driven” positions, and overall portfolio hedges, as deemed appropriate. The Fund’s short positions may equal up to 75% of the Fund’s net asset value.

The Fund defines fixed income securities as bills, notes, debentures, bonds, loans or loan participations, levered loans or asset-backed securities. The Fund defines equity securities as common stock, preferred stock, or debt that is convertible into common stock. The Fund invests without restriction as to issuer capitalization, country, or credit quality and without restriction as to the maturity of fixed income securities. The Fund plans to invest in high-yield (below investment grade) fixed income securities. High yield or “below-investment grade” securities are securities that are un-rated or rated BB+ or below by S&P or Ba1 or below by Moody’s. These securities involve more risk, and will generally be more volatile than securities rated BBB- or Baa3 or above.

Shelton International Select Equity Fund – The Fund primarily invests, under normal market conditions, at least 80% of the Fund’s net assets (plus borrowings for investment purposes) in a combination of equity securities of foreign (i.e., non-U.S.) companies with a suitable potential for earnings growth. The Fund invests its assets in equity securities of non-U.S. companies located in countries with developed markets, but may also invest in companies domiciled in emerging markets.

Under normal market conditions, the Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing in a universe of stocks listed within the MSCI ACWI ex USA index, as well as those in other developed, emerging, and frontier markets with a market capitalization of $2.5 billion or higher. The Advisor anticipates that the percentage of the Fund’s investable universe not included in the MSCI ACWI ex USA index will be approximately 20%. The Fund ordinarily invests in no fewer than three different countries outside the U.S. Under normal market conditions, the Fund will invest at least 40% of its net assets, plus any borrowings for investment purposes, in securities of non-U.S. companies. However, the Fund may invest a lesser amount of its assets in securities of non-U.S. companies when market conditions are not deemed favorable, in which case the Fund would invest at least 30% of its net assets, plus any borrowings for investment purposes, in securities of non-U.S. companies. The Fund will normally invest in the securities of approximately 30 to 50 issuers.

The Fund’s investments in equity securities may include common and preferred stock, convertible preferred stock, warrants and rights. The Advisor implements its investment strategy by first using a proprietary global “life-cycle” screen to narrow the Fund’s investable universe. The Advisor then uses a fundamental, “bottom-up” research selection and disciplined portfolio construction process which is focused on identifying stocks that the Advisor believes have the ability to generate sustainable returns, regardless of sector or country.

The Advisor’s “life-cycle” screen classifies companies according to one of the following five categories:

Innovation: Companies characterized as having high level of capital investment and below the cost of capital returns.
Expansion: Companies characterized by aggressive investment to compound their high and rising returns, achieving a peak in both growth and cash flow returns.
Deceleration: Companies characterized as having very high returns, combined with good, but slowing growth prospects.
Maturity: Companies characterized as earning a small positive spread above the cost of capital.
Distress: Companies characterized as having returns driven down below the cost of capital.

The Advisor's investment team actively invests across all five categories of the "life-cycle," building a diversified portfolio of high-growth, high-return, income-oriented and distressed investments. In managing the portfolio, the investment team seeks to balance the portfolio's risk and return by maximizing stock specific risk (risk from security selection) while at the same time minimizing systematic factor risks (which includes, but is not limited to, sector selection, country selection, currency management).

The Fund may engage in frequent and active trading of securities as a part of its principal investment strategy. The Advisor will sell or reallocate a Fund's securities if the Advisor believes the issuer of such securities no longer meets certain growth criteria, if certain political and economic events occur, or if it believes that more attractive opportunities are available. The team strives to preserve capital as part of its investment process.

Investment Risks

Investors should recognize that investing in securities presents certain risks that cannot be avoided. There is no assurance that the investment objectives of any Fund will be achieved. The following table summarizes some of the risks involved in investing in each of the Funds and highlights certain differences and similarities among the Funds in their exposure to various types of risks. The table below is not a complete list of every risk involved in investing in the Funds and a Fund may have exposure to a risk factor even if it is not marked below. Investing in securities creates indirect exposure to the various business risks to which their issuers are subject, which may include sector, industry, or region-specific risks. Investments in equity securities may create indirect exposure to interest rate, credit, and currency risk. Securities of non-U.S. issuers are exposed to currency risk, even if they are denominated in U.S. dollars. Debt and equity investments in commodity-related issuers create exposure to commodity risks, which may include unpredictable changes in value, supply and demand, and government regulation. There is more information about these and other risks in the Statement of Additional Information (SAI).

Note that the Shelton Greater China Fund, Shelton BDC Income Fund and Shelton Real Estate Income Fund are subject to certain particular additional risks related to their investment strategies that are discussed in each Fund's summary and not repeated below.

Risk	SGCFX	LOAIX	RENIX	DEBIX	SISEX
Bankruptcy Risk	x	x	x	x	x
Concentration Risk		x	x		
Convertible Securities Risk		x		x	
Credit Risk		x		x	
Derivatives Risk	x	x	x	x	x
Economic and Political Risks	x	x	x	x	x
Emerging Markets Risk	x				x
Equity Investing Risk	x	x	x	x	x
High-Yield (''Junk'') Bond Risk		x	x	x	
Income Risk		x		x	
Interest Rate Risk		x		x	
Liquidity Risk	x	x	x	x	x
Manager Risk	x	x	x	x	x
Market Exposure Risk	x	x	x	x	x
MidCap Stock Risk	x	x	x		x
Non-U.S. Currency Risk	x		x		x
Non-U.S. Investment Risk	x		x		x
Prepayment and Extension Risk		x		x	
Regulatory Risk	x	x	x	x	x
SmallCap Stock Risk	x	x		x	x

Bankruptcy Risk. The risk that an issuer seeks protection under bankruptcy laws. In such a circumstance, the principal value of the bond would be expected to decline. If a bond held by the Fund is issued by a municipality that experiences significant financial difficulty that can potentially lead to bankruptcy or default, the Fund would be expected to lose value.

Concentration Risk. If holdings of a fund are concentrated into a few companies or economic sectors, the fund may be more volatile than a more diversified fund and in the event that the holdings perform poorly, the fund may under-perform other investments that are more diversified.

Convertible Securities Risk. Investments in convertible securities generally entail less risk than investments in an issuer's common stock because convertible securities rank senior to common stock in an issuer's capital structure. The extent to which such risk is reduced depends in large part upon the degree to which the convertible security sells above its value as a fixed-income security. Convertible securities are subordinate in rank to any senior debt obligations of an issuer, and, therefore, entail more risk than the issuer's debt obligations. Convertible securities generally offer lower interest than non-convertible debt securities of similar credit quality due to the potential for capital appreciation and are often lower-rated securities.

Credit Risk. The value of a debt security may decline if the market believes it is less likely that the issuer will make all payments of interest and principal as required. This could occur because of actual or perceived deterioration in the issuer's or a guarantor's financial condition, or in the case of asset-backed securities, the likelihood that the loans backing a security will be repaid in full. A Fund could lose money if the issuer or guarantor of a debt security becomes bankrupt or subject to a special resolution regime, or is otherwise unable or unwilling to make timely interest and/or principal payments, or honor its obligations. Securities are subject to varying degrees of credit risk, which may be reflected by their ratings; however, such ratings may overestimate or underestimate the likelihood of default and may not accurately reflect the true credit risk of a security. The credit risk associated with corporate debt securities may change as the result of an event such as a large dividend payment, leveraged buyout, debt restructuring, merger, or recapitalization; such events are unpredictable and may benefit shareholders or new creditors at the expense of existing debt holders. Credit risk is likely to increase during periods of economic uncertainty or downturns. Credit risk associated with non-U.S. dollar denominated securities may increase if the value of an issuer's home currency declines relative to the U.S. dollar. If a debt security owned by a Fund ceases to be rated or is downgraded below a permitted threshold, the Fund may (but is not required to) sell the security.

Derivatives Risk. Derivatives are financial instruments, including futures contracts, the values of which are based on the value of one or more underlying assets, such as stocks, bonds, currencies, interest rates, and market indexes. Derivatives involve risks different from, and possibly greater than, the risks associated with investing directly in the underlying assets and other more traditional investments. The market value of derivatives may be more volatile than that of other investments and can be affected by changes in interest rate or other market developments. The use of derivatives may accelerate the velocity of possible losses. Each type of derivative instrument may have its own special risks, including the risk of mispricing or improper valuation and the possibility that a derivative may not correlate perfectly or as expected with its underlying asset, rate, or index. Derivatives create leverage because the upfront payment required to enter into a derivative is often much smaller than the potential for loss (which may in theory be unlimited). A derivative may be subject to liquidity risk, especially during times of financial market distress; certain types of derivatives may be terminated or modified only with the consent of their counterparties. The use of derivatives may cause a Fund's investment returns to be impacted by the performance of securities the Fund does not own. Derivatives are specialized instruments that may require investment techniques and risk analyses different from those associated with stocks and bonds. Although the use of derivatives is intended to enhance a Fund's performance, it may instead reduce returns and increase volatility, or have a different effect than anticipated, especially in unusual or extreme market conditions. Suitable derivatives transactions may not be available in all circumstances and there can be no assurance that a particular derivative position will be available or used by a Fund or that, if used, such strategies will be successful. Regulations may require a Fund to segregate certain of its assets or buy or sell a security at a disadvantageous time or price to maintain offsetting positions or asset coverage in connection with certain derivatives transactions. Use of derivatives may increase the amount and change the timing of taxes payable by shareholders.

Economic and Political Risks. These risks may be short-term by causing a change in the market that is corrected in a year or less, or they may have long-term impacts which may cause changes in the market that last for many years. Some factors may affect one sector of the economy or a single stock, but may not have a significant impact on the overall market.

Emerging Markets Risk. Non-U.S. Investment Risk (described below) may be particularly high to the extent a Fund invests in emerging market securities. Emerging market securities may present issuer, market, currency, liquidity, legal, political, and other risks different from, and potentially greater than, the risks of investing in securities and instruments tied to U.S. or developed non-U.S. issuers. Emerging markets may have less established legal and accounting systems than those in more developed markets. Governments in emerging markets may be less stable and more likely to take extra-legal action with respect to companies, industries, assets, or foreign ownership than those in more developed markets. The economies of emerging markets may be dependent on relatively few industries and thus affected more severely by local or global changes. Emerging market securities may also be more volatile, less liquid, and more difficult to value than securities economically tied to U.S. or developed non-U.S. issuers

Equity Investing Risk. Equity securities represent an ownership interest in an issuer rather than a right to receive a specified future payment. This makes equity securities more sensitive than debt securities to changes in an issuer's earnings and overall financial condition; as a result, equity securities are generally more volatile than debt securities. Equity securities may lose value as a result of changes relating to the issuers of those securities, such as management performance, financial leverage, or changes in the actual or anticipated earnings of a company, or as a result of actual or perceived market conditions that are not specific to an issuer. Even when the securities markets are generally performing strongly, there can be no assurance that equity securities held by a Fund will increase in value. Because

the rights of all of a company's creditors are senior to those of holders of equity securities, shareholders are least likely to receive any value if an issuer files for bankruptcy**.**

High-Yield (''Junk'') Bond Risk. A Fund's high yield bonds may include distressed bonds, which may present a high risk of default or be in default at the time they are purchased. Distressed securities are speculative and involve even greater risks than other high-yield bonds, including the risk that interest payments may not be made on a current basis, or that principal will not be repaid in full. A Fund could incur significant expenses to the extent it is required to negotiate new terms with the issuer of a distressed bond or seek recovery upon a default in respect of a distressed bond. In any reorganization or liquidation proceeding related to a defaulted security, a Fund could lose its entire investment or could be required to accept cash or securities with a value substantially less than its original investment. The below investment-grade securities in which a Fund invests are not typically listed on any exchange and the secondary market (if any) for such securities may be less liquid than other securities, which may cause transactions in below investment-grade securities to be more costly. A lack of publicly available information, irregular trading activity, and wide bid-ask spreads, among other factors, may make these securities more difficult to sell at an advantageous time or price than other types of investments. These factors may affect the value a Fund may realize in selling below investment-grade securities, which could result in losses to a Fund.

Income Risk. The income you earn from a Fund may decline due to declining interest rates. This is because, in a falling interest rate environment, a Fund generally will have to invest the proceeds from sales of Fund shares, as well as the proceeds from maturing portfolio securities (or portfolio securities that have been called, see "Call Risk" above), into lower-yielding securities.

Interest Rate Risk. Debt securities that pay interest based on a fixed rate are subject to the risk that they will decline in value if interest rates rise. Interest rate changes may occur suddenly and unexpectedly, and may be caused by a wide variety of factors including central bank monetary policy, inflation rates, and general economic conditions. A Fund may lose money as a result of such movements. The longer the remaining maturity of a debt security, the more its value is likely to be affected by changes in interest rates. Debt securities with longer durations tend to be more sensitive to changes in interest rates, usually making them more volatile than securities with shorter durations. The values of equity and other non-debt securities may also decline due to fluctuations in interest rates. A Fund may choose not to or be unable to hedge itself fully against changes in interest rates. If a Fund uses derivatives to hedge against changes in interest rates, those hedges may not work as intended and may decrease in value if interest rates move differently than anticipated. Interest rates are currently at or near historic lows in many developed countries, including the United States, which increases the risk that interest rates will rise. In the United States, the Federal Reserve Board has already begun, and may continue, to raise interest rates. Non-fixed rate instruments (i.e., variable and floating rate securities) generally are less sensitive to interest rate changes but may decline in value if their interest rates do not rise as much or as quickly as interest rates in general. Conversely, non-fixed-rate instruments will not generally increase in value if interest rates decline. If a Fund holds variable or floating rate securities, a decrease in market interest rates may adversely affect the income received from such securities.

Liquidity Risk. Liquidity risk is the risk that a Fund may not be able to buy or sell an investment at an advantageous time or price, which could force a Fund to hold a security that is declining in value or forego other investment opportunities. An illiquid instrument is harder to value because there may be little or no market data available based on purchases or sales of the instrument. Liquidity risk may result from the lack of an active market or a reduced number and capacity of traditional market participants to make a market in fixed income securities. A Fund may also experience liquidity risk to the extent it invests in private placement securities, securities of issuers with smaller market capitalizations, or securities with substantial market and/or credit risk. The liquidity of an issuer's securities may decrease if its credit rating falls, it experiences sudden unexpected cash outflows, or some other event causes counterparties to avoid trading with or lending to the issuer. Liquidity risk is greater for below investment grade securities and restricted securities, especially in difficult market conditions. Over the past three decades, bond markets have grown more quickly than dealer capacity to engage in fixed income trading. In addition, recent regulatory changes applicable to financial intermediaries that make markets in debt securities have restricted or made it less desirable for those financial intermediaries to hold large inventories of less liquid debt securities. Because market makers provide stability to a market through their intermediary services, a reduction in dealer inventory may lead to decreased liquidity and increased volatility in the fixed income markets. Additional legislative or regulatory actions to address perceived liquidity or other issues in the debt securities markets could alter or impair a Fund's ability to pursue its investment objectives or use certain investment strategies and techniques. Liquidity risk may intensify during periods of economic uncertainty. Debt securities with longer durations may face heightened liquidity risk. Unusually high redemption requests or other unusual market conditions may make it difficult for a Fund to honor redemption requests within the permitted period. Meeting such requests could require a Fund to sell securities at reduced prices or under unfavorable conditions. Other market participants may be attempting to liquidate holdings at the same time as a Fund, which could increase supply in the market and contribute to liquidity risk.

Manager Risk. The Investment Manager's (Shelton Capital Management) opinion about the intrinsic worth or creditworthiness of a company, security, or other investment may be incorrect or the market may continue to undervalue the company, security, or other investment; The Investment Manger may not make timely purchases or sales of securities for a Fund; and a Fund's investment objective may not be achieved. The Funds are subject to various operational risks, including risks associated with the calculation of net asset value. In particular, errors or systems failures and other technological issues may adversely impact a Fund's calculation of its net asset value, and such net asset value calculation issues could result in inaccurately calculated net asset values, delays in net asset value calculation and/or the inability to calculate net asset value for some period. The Funds may be unable to recover any losses associated with such failures.

Market Exposure Risk. The market price of a security or other investment may increase or decrease, sometimes suddenly and unpredictably. Investments may decline in value because of factors affecting markets generally, such as real or perceived challenges to the economy, national or international political events, natural disasters, changes in interest or currency rates, adverse changes to credit markets, or general adverse investment sentiment. The prices of investments may reflect factors affecting one or more industries, such as the price of specific commodities or consumer trends, or factors affecting particular issuers. During a general downturn in the markets, multiple asset classes may decline in value simultaneously. Market disruptions may prevent a Fund from implementing investment decisions in a timely manner. Fluctuations in the value of the Fund's investments will cause that Fund's share price to fluctuate. An investment in a Fund, therefore, may be more suitable for long-term investors who can bear the risk of short- and long-term fluctuations in a Fund's share price. In the case of a Fund designed to track passively the performance of the associated index, the Fund does not intend to take steps to reduce its market exposure in any market.

MidCap Stock Risk. The risk that stocks of relatively smaller capitalization within the midcap range of companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Relatively smaller capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Non-U.S. Currency Risk. Non-U.S. currencies may decline relative to the U.S. dollar and affect a Fund's investments in non-U.S. currencies, in securities that are denominated in non-U.S. currencies, in securities of issuers that are exposed to non-U.S. currencies, or in derivatives that provide exposure to non-U.S. currencies. When a given currency depreciates against the U.S. dollar, the value of securities denominated in that currency typically declines. A U.S. dollar-denominated depositary receipt is exposed to currency risk if the security underlying it is denominated in a non-U.S. currency. Currency depreciation may affect the value of U.S. securities if their issuers have exposure to non-U.S. currencies and non-U.S. issuers may similarly be exposed to currencies other than those in which their securities are denominated and the country in which they are domiciled. Shelton Capital Management may not be able to accurately estimate an issuer's non-U.S. currency exposure.

Non-U.S. Investment Risk. Non-U.S. securities (including ADRs and other securities that represent interests in non-U.S. issuer's securities) involve some special risks such as exposure to potentially adverse foreign political and economic developments; market instability; nationalization and exchange controls; potentially lower liquidity and higher volatility; possible problems arising from accounting, disclosure, settlement, and regulatory practices that differ from U.S. standards; foreign taxes that could reduce returns; higher transaction costs and foreign brokerage and custodian fees; inability to vote proxies, exercise shareholder or bondholder rights, pursue legal remedies, and obtain judgments with respect to foreign investments in foreign courts; possible insolvency of a sub-custodian or securities depository; and fluctuations in foreign exchange rates that decrease the investment's value (although favorable changes can increase its value). Non-U.S. stock markets may decline due to conditions unique to an individual country or within a region, including unfavorable economic conditions relative to the United States or political and social instability or unrest. Non-U.S. investments may become subject to economic sanctions or other government restrictions by domestic or foreign regulators, which could negatively impact the value or liquidity of those investments. There may be increased risk of delayed settlement of portfolio transactions or loss of certificates of portfolio securities. Governments in certain foreign countries participate to a significant degree, through ownership or regulation, in their respective economies. Action by such a government could have a significant effect on the market price of securities issued in its country. These risks may be higher when investing in emerging market issuers. Certain of these risks also apply to securities of U.S. issuers with significant non-U.S. operations. Global economies and financial markets are becoming increasingly interconnected, which increases the possibilities that conditions in one country or region may adversely affect issuers in a different country or region

Prepayment and Extension Risk. The risk that declining interest rates may cause borrowers to prepay mortgages and debt obligations underlying the securities owned by a Fund. The proceeds received by a Fund from prepayments will likely be reinvested at interest rates lower than the original investment, thus resulting in a reduction of income to a Fund. Likewise, rising interest rates could reduce prepayments and extend the life of securities with lower interest rates, which may increase the sensitivity of a Fund's value to rising interest rates.

Regulatory Risk. New laws and regulations promulgated by governments and regulatory authorities may affect the value of securities issued by specific companies, in specific industries or sectors, or in all securities issued in the affected country. In times of political or economic stress or market turmoil, governments and regulators may intervene directly in markets and take actions that may adversely affect certain industries, securities, or specific companies. Government and/or regulatory intervention may reduce the value of debt and equity securities issued by affected companies and may also severely limit a Fund's ability to trade those securities.

SmallCap Stock Risk. The risk that stocks of smaller capitalization companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Small capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Additional Risks

Portfolio Turnover. The Funds generally intend to purchase securities for long-term investments rather than short-term gains. However, a security may be held for a shorter than expected period of time if, among other things, Shelton needs to raise cash in the Fund or feels that it is appropriate to do so. Portfolio holdings may also be sold sooner than anticipated due to unexpected changes in the markets. Buying and selling securities may involve incurring some expense to a Fund, such as commissions paid to brokers and other transaction costs. By selling a security, a Fund may realize taxable capital gains that it will subsequently distribute to shareholders. Generally speaking, the higher a Fund's annual portfolio turnover, the greater its brokerage costs and the greater likelihood that it will realize taxable capital gains. Increased brokerage costs may affect a Fund's performance. Also, unless you are a tax-exempt investor, or you purchase shares through a tax-deferred account, the distributions of capital gains may affect your after- tax return. For some Funds, annual portfolio turnover of 100% or more is considered high.

Temporary Defensive Positions. In certain market conditions, some or all of a of a Fund's securities may be sold and the proceeds retained as cash, or temporarily invested in U.S. government securities or money market instruments, if the Fund's investment manager believes it is in the best interest of shareholders to do so. As of the date of this Prospectus, this has never happened; but if it were to occur, the investment goals of the relevant Funds might not be achieved.

Valuation Risk. Some or all of the securities held by a Fund may be valued using "fair value" techniques, rather than market quotations, under the circumstances described in this Prospectus under "How Fund Shares are Priced." Security values may differ depending on the methodology used to determine their values, and may differ from the last quoted sales or closing prices. No assurance can be given that the use of these fair value procedures will always best represent the price at which a Fund could sell the affected portfolio security or result in a more accurate net asset value per share of a Fund.

Fund Organization and Management

SCM Trust. SCM Trust, a Massachusetts business trust (the "Trust"), is a family of five no-load mutual funds, each of which is described in this combined prospectus. A Board of Trustees, consisting of four individuals, has primary responsibility for the oversight of the management of each Fund for the benefit of its shareholders, not day-to-day management. The Board authorizes the Trust to enter into service agreements with Shelton Capital Management and other service providers to provide necessary or desirable services on behalf of the Trust and the Funds. Shareholders are not parties to or third-party beneficiaries of such service agreements. Neither this prospectus nor the Statement of Additional Information ("SAI"), any documents filed as exhibits to the Trust's registration statement, nor any other communications, disclosure documents or regulatory filings from or on behalf of the Trust or a Fund creates a contract between or among any shareholder of a Fund, on the one hand, and the Trust, a Fund, a service provider to the Trust or a Fund, and/or the Trustees or officers of the Trust, on the other hand. The Board of Trustees (or the Trust and its officers, service providers or other delegates acting under authority of the Board) may amend or use a new prospectus or SAI with respect to a Fund or the Trust, and/or amend, file and/or issue any other communications, disclosure documents, or regulatory filings, and may amend or enter into any contracts to which the Trust or a Fund is a party, and interpret or amend the investment objective(s), policies, restrictions, and contractual provisions applicable to any Fund, without shareholder input or approval, except in circumstances in which shareholder approval is specifically required by law (such as changes to fundamental investment restrictions) or where a shareholder approval requirement is specifically disclosed in the Trust's then-current prospectus or SAI.

Shelton Capital Management. The investment advisor for the Funds is Shelton Capital Management, 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710, Denver, CO 80265. Shelton manages over $2 billion of assets as of March 26, 2018. Shelton has been managing mutual funds since 1985. Shelton is responsible for managing the Funds and handling the administrative requirements of the Funds. As compensation for managing the portfolios, Shelton receives a management fee from each Fund. For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, the fees, net of reimbursements, were 1.25% for the Shelton Greater China Fund; 0.90% for the Shelton BDC Income Fund; 0.80% for the Shelton Real Estate Income Fund; 1.17% for the Shelton Tactical Credit Fund; and 0.74% for the Shelton International Select Equity Fund.

Mr. Andrew Manton has served as a member of the portfolio management team for the International Select Equity Fund since the Fund's inception, and as the lead portfolio manager since May 2018. He has served a member of the portfolio management team for the Shelton Greater China Fund since November 13, 2017. Mr. Manton joined the Advisor in July 2016 after serving as a Senior Portfolio Manager at WHV. Prior to his affiliation with WHV, Mr. Manton was a Senior Research Analyst and a member of the Large Cap Global Equities team at Victory Capital Management, and an analyst in both the fundamental Active Equities and Quantitative Strategies groups at Deutsche Asset Management. He has a BS in Finance from the University of Illinois at Chicago and an MBA with a concentration in Quantitative Finance and Accounting from the Tepper School of Business at Carnegie Mellon University.

Mr. John Harnisch, CFA, has served as the lead portfolio manager of the Tactical Credit Fund and the BDC Income Fund since joining the Advisor in July 2016. He has served as the lead portfolio manager of the Real Estate Income

Fund since April 30, 2018. Mr. Harnisch is a member of the portfolio management teams of other funds managed by the Advisor: the U.S. Government Securities Fund, Short-Term U.S. Government Bond Fund, California Tax-Free Income Fund and United States Treasury Trust. Prior to joining the firm, he was a portfolio manager at Acuity Capital Management, and he worked previously for Babson Capital Management. Mr. Harnisch earned a BA in Economics from Trinity College in 2002 and earned the CFA charter in 2006. He is currently a member of the Hartford CFA Society and the CFA Institute.

Mr. William Mock has served as a member of the portfolio management team for the Shelton Tactical Credit Fund, the BDC Income Fund and the Real Estate Income Fund since March 29, 2017 (April 20, 2018 in the case of the Real Estate Income Fund). Mr. Mock has served as the lead portfolio manager for other funds managed by the Advisor: the U.S. Government Securities Fund, Short-Term U.S. Government Bond Fund, California Tax-Free Income Fund and United States Treasury Trust since 2010. Mr. Mock is a member the team managing the Shelton Tactical Credit Fund. Mr. Mock also served as portfolio manager of the Shelton Greater China Fund from 2012 to 2017. He served as a portfolio manager for Shelton from 2001 to 2003, managing the Short- Term U.S. Government Bond Fund, U.S. Government Securities Fund, California Tax-Free Income Fund and United States Treasury Trust. He left the firm in 2003 to work for TKI Capital Management, a convertible arbitrage hedge fund, where he served as head Trader until 2006. In 2007, Mr. Mock rejoined an affiliate of Shelton, ETSpreads, and continues as a partner in this affiliate. Prior to 2001, Mr. Mock gained investment and trading experience at Société Générale and Citibank, N.A. Mr. Mock earned a BS in engineering from Kansas State University and is an honors graduate of the University of Chicago Booth School of Business MBA Program, with an emphasis in finance.

The statement of additional information (“SAI”) provides additional information about the portfolio managers’ compensation, other accounts managed by the portfolio managers and the portfolio managers’ ownership of securities of the Funds.

Other. A discussion regarding the basis for the Board’s approval of the investment advisory agreements for each Fund is available in the Fund’s semi-annual report for the period year ended June 30, 2017. The SAI provides additional information about the Board of Trustees, portfolio managers’ compensation, other accounts managed by the portfolio managers and the portfolio managers’ ownership of securities of the Funds.

How to Buy Shares

You may buy shares directly from the Funds’ distributor, or through third-party distributors, brokerage firms and retirement plans. If you invest through a third-party distributor, many of the policies, options and fees charged for the transaction may be different. You should contact them directly for information regarding how to invest or redeem through third-party distributors.

The following information is specific to buying directly from the Funds' distributor.

Opening an Account. You can open an account online or by downloading an application from our website at www.sheltoncap.com and mailing the completed form to us. For questions, call us at (800) 955-9988.

You will find all the necessary application materials included in the packet accompanying this Prospectus. You may also open an account online by accessing our website at www.sheltoncap.com. Additional paperwork may be required for entity investors, including corporations, associations, and trusts, and for certain fiduciaries. The minimum initial investments and subsequent investments for each Fund are as follows:

	Minimum Initial Investment	Minimum Subsequent Investment
Accounts with Automatic Investment Plan ("AIP")	$500	$100
All other Funds' accounts	$1,000	$100

The Funds' distributor may change the minimum investment amounts at any time or waive them at its discretion. To protect against fraud, it is the policy of the Funds not to accept unknown third-party checks for the purposes of opening new accounts or purchasing additional shares. If you have any questions concerning the application materials, wire transfers, our yields and net asset values, or our investment policies and objectives, please call us toll-free at (800) 955-9988.

Distribution (12b-1) Fees

Investor Class shares of the Funds pay RFS Partners the principal underwriter, a distribution (12b-1) fee. *Because distribution (12b-1) fees are paid out of fund assets on an ongoing basis, 12b-1 fees will, over time, increase the cost of your investment in a fund and may cost you more than other types of sales charges.*

These fees are computed as an annual percentage of the average daily net assets of each class of shares of a Fund, as follows:

	Distribution Fee
Investor Class Shares	0.25%

How to Buy Shares – Initial Purchase

Make your check payable to the name of the Fund in which you are investing and mail it with the application to the transfer agent of the Funds, Gemini Fund Services, LLC, at the address indicated below. Please note the minimum initial investments previously listed.

SCM Trust

C/O Gemini Fund Services, LLC

17605 Wright Street

Omaha, NE 68130

You may also forward your check (and application, for new accounts) to the Funds' offices, which will in turn forward your check (and application, for new accounts) on your behalf to the Funds' agent for processing. You will receive the share price next determined after your check has been received by the agent. Please note that this means that the shares will be purchased at the next calculated price after receipt by the agent, which is typically the next business day following receipt at the Funds' offices. The Funds' office is located at the following address:

SCM Trust

1050 17th Street, Suite 1710

Denver, CO 80265-2077

You also may buy shares of a Fund through selected securities brokers. Your broker is responsible for the transmission of your order to Gemini Fund Services, LLC, the Fund's transfer agent, and may charge you a fee. You will generally receive the share price next determined after your order is placed with your broker, in accordance with your broker's agreed upon procedures with the Funds. Your broker can advise you of specific details.

Purchasing by Exchange

You may purchase shares in a Fund by exchanging shares from an account in one of our other Funds, including other mutual funds managed by Shelton Capital Management which are not described in this Prospectus. Please see our website, call the number above, or consult your financial adviser or broker for more information. Such exchanges must meet the minimum amounts required for initial or subsequent investments. When opening an account by exchanging shares, your new account must be established with the same registration and an exchange authorization must be in effect. If you have an existing account with us and an exchange authorization in effect, call (800) 955-9988 during normal business hours (8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Mountain Time) to exchange shares. You may also exchange shares by accessing our website at www.sheltoncap.com. You must complete the online access agreement in order to access your account online. Each exchange actually represents the sale of shares of one Fund and the purchase of shares in another, which may produce a capital gain or loss for tax purposes. All transactions are processed at the

share price next calculated after receiving the instructions in good order (as described below), generally at the normally scheduled close of trading on the NYSE, typically 4 p.m. Eastern Time.

Wiring Instructions and Use of Checks

For wiring money to your account, you can obtain specific wire instructions by calling (800) 955-9988. In order to make your order effective, we must have your order in good form as described below. Please note a Fund and Shelton reserve the right to reject any purchase. Your purchase will be processed at the net asset value next calculated after your order has been received by the Fund's agent. You will begin to earn dividends as of the first business day following the day of your purchase. All your purchases must be made in U.S. dollars, and checks must be drawn on banks located in the United States. We reserve the right to limit the number of investment checks processed at one time. If a check does not clear, we will cancel your purchase. You will be liable for any losses and fees incurred in connection with a check that does not clear for any reason, including insufficient funds. When you purchase by check, redemption proceeds will not be sent until we are satisfied that the investment has been collected (confirmation of clearance may take up to 15 days). Payments by check or other negotiable bank deposit will normally be effective within 2 business days for checks drawn on a member of the Federal Reserve System and longer for most other checks. You can wire federal funds from your bank or broker, which may charge you a fee. The Funds do not consider the U.S. Postal Service or other independent delivery services to be their agents. Therefore, deposit in the mail or with such delivery services does not constitute receipt by the Funds' transfer agent or the Funds.

Purchasing Additional Shares

Make your check payable to the Fund in which you are investing, write your account number on the check, and mail your check with the deposit slip from your most recent statement to the address printed on your account statement. There is a $100 minimum for subsequent investments. After setting up your online account, you may obtain a history of transactions for your account(s) by accessing our website at www.sheltoncap.com.

Automatic Investment Plan

Using the Funds' Automatic Investment Plan, or AIP, you may arrange to make additional purchases automatically by electronic funds transfer ("EFT") from your checking or savings account. Your bank must be a member of the Automated Clearing House. You can terminate the program with ten days written notice. There is no fee to participate in this program, however, a service fee of $25.00 will be deducted from your account for any AIP purchase that does not clear due to insufficient funds, or if prior to notifying the Funds in writing or by telephone to terminate the plan, you close your bank account or take other action in any manner that prevents withdrawal of the funds from the designated checking or savings account. Investors may enroll on our website or by calling the Funds and obtaining a paper form. The share prices of the Funds are subject to fluctuations. Before undertaking any plan for systematic investment, you should keep in mind that such a program does not assure a profit or protect against a loss. We reserve the right to suspend the offering of shares of any of the Funds for a period of time and to reject any specific purchase order in whole or in part. The Funds do not send individual transaction confirmations to individuals participating in an automatic investment plan. You will receive a quarterly statement of all transactions occurring during the most recent calendar quarter.

How Fund Shares are Priced

The share price (net asset value per share or NAV) for a Fund is normally calculated as of the scheduled close of trading on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), generally 4 p.m. ET, each day that the NYSE is open for business. The NAV is calculated by dividing Fund net assets (i.e. total assets minus total liabilities) by the number of shares outstanding. For purposes of determining the NAV, security transactions are normally recorded one business day after the trade date. If the NYSE is unexpectedly closed due to weather or other extenuating circumstances on a day it would normally be open for business, or if the NYSE has an unscheduled early closing, the Funds reserve the right to accept purchase and redemption orders and calculate their share price as of the normally scheduled close of regular trading on the NYSE for that day. If a Fund's authorized agent receives your request in good order (as described below) before the time as of which a Fund prices its shares (generally the normally scheduled close of trading on the NYSE, at 4 p.m. ET), your transactions will be priced at that day's NAV. If your request is received after such time, it will be priced at the next business day's NAV. A Fund cannot accept orders that request a particular day or price for your transaction or any other special conditions. The time at which transactions and shares are priced and the time until which orders are accepted may be changed in case of an emergency or if the NYSE closes at a time other than 4 p.m. ET. Some securities may be listed on foreign exchanges that are open on days (such as U.S. holidays) when the Funds do not calculate their NAVs. This could cause the value of a Fund's portfolio investments to be affected by trading on days when you cannot buy or sell shares. For purposes of calculating the NAV, portfolio holdings for which market quotations are readily available are valued at market value. Listed securities, for example, are generally valued using the official quoted close price or the last sale on the exchange that is determined to be the primary market for the security. Other portfolio holdings, such as debt securities, certain preferred stocks, and derivatives traded over the counter, are valued using prices received from independent pricing services which utilize dealer quotes, recent transaction data, pricing models, and other inputs to arrive at market-based valuations. Pricing models may consider quoted prices for similar securities, interest rates, cash flows (including prepayment speeds), and credit risk. Exchange-traded derivatives are generally valued at the settlement price determined by the relevant exchange and centrally cleared derivatives are generally valued at the price determined by the relevant clearing house. Short-term securities with less than 60 days to maturity may be valued at amortized cost if amortized cost approximates current value. Mutual funds are valued at their respective net asset values. Security values are not discounted based on the size of the Fund's position and may differ from the value a Fund receives upon the sale of the securities. If market quotations are not readily available or if normal valuation procedures produce valuations that are deemed unreliable or inappropriate under the circumstances existing at the time, the investment will be valued at fair value as determined in good faith by or under the direction of the Funds' Board of Trustees. The Board of Trustees has appointed Shelton Capital Management to make fair value determinations in accordance with the Funds' Valuation Policies ("Valuation Policies"), subject to Board oversight. Shelton Capital Management has established a Pricing Committee. The Pricing Committee is responsible for implementing the Valuation Policies, including determining the fair value of securities and other investments when necessary. The Pricing Committee considers relevant indications of value that are reasonably available to it in determining the fair value assigned to a particular security, such as the value of similar financial instruments, trading volumes, contractual restrictions on disposition, related corporate actions, and changes in economic conditions. As trading in securities on most foreign exchanges is normally completed before the close of the NYSE, the value of non-U.S. securities can change by the time the Fund calculates its NAV. Valuing securities through a fair value determination involves greater reliance on judgment than valuation of securities based on readily available market quotations. In some instances, lack of information and uncertainty as to the significance of information may lead to a conclusion that a prior valuation is the best indication of a security's value. When fair value pricing is employed, the prices of securities used by a Fund to calculate its NAV may differ from quoted or published prices for the same securities.

How to Sell Shares

You may redeem all or a portion of your shares on any business day that the Funds are open for business. Your shares will be redeemed at the net asset value next calculated (after the close of the NYSE which is 4 PM Eastern Time) after the Fund's agent has received your redemption request in good order (as described below). Remember that a Fund may hold redemption proceeds until we are satisfied that we have collected the purchase price for any shares purchased by check. To avoid possible delays, which could be up to 15 days, you should consider making your investment by wire, following the instructions as described in the section titled "Wire Instructions" in this Prospectus.

By Mail

If you have not elected telephone redemption or transfer privileges, you must send a letter of instruction. Additionally, if the check is to be made payable to a third-party or sent to an address other than the address of record, you must obtain a "medallion signature guarantee" on the letter of instruction. The letter of instruction must specify (i) the name of the Fund, (ii) the number of shares to be sold and/or the dollar amount, (iii) your name(s), and (iv) your account number(s). The letter of instruction is to be mailed to the Funds' offices. If you have additional questions, please contact us at (800) 955-9988. The Funds' Transfer Agent requires that each individual's signature(s) appearing on a redemption request be guaranteed by an eligible signature guarantor such as a commercial bank, broker-dealer, credit union, securities exchange or association, clearing agency or savings association. This policy is designed to protect shareholders who do not elect telephone privileges on their accounts.

By Exchange

You must meet the minimum investment requirement of the Fund into which you are exchanging. You can only exchange between accounts with identical account registrations. Same day exchanges are accepted until market close, normally 4:00 p.m. Eastern Time.

By Wire

You must have applied for the wire feature on your account. We will notify you when this feature is active, and you may then make wire redemptions by calling us before 4:00 p.m. Eastern Time (1:00 p.m., Pacific Time). This means your money will be wired to your bank the next business day.

By Electronic Funds Transfer

You must have applied for the EFT withdrawal feature on your account. Typically, money sent by EFT will be sent to your bank within three business days after the sales of your securities. There is no fee for this service.

Online

You can sell shares in a regular account by accessing our website at www.sheltoncap.com. You may not buy or sell shares in a retirement account using our online feature. If you have recently added banking information or changed your address online, there is a 15-day delay from the date of the change to when the redemption will be sent out.

By Telephone

You must have telephone privileges set up in advance of any transaction on your account. Provide the name of the Fund from which you are redeeming shares, the exact name in which your account is registered, your account number, the required identification information and the number of shares or dollar amount that you wish to redeem. Unless you submit an account enrollment form that indicates that you have declined telephone and/or online exchange privileges, you agree, by signing your account enrollment form, to authorize and direct the Funds to accept and act upon telephone, online and fax instructions for exchanges involving your account or any other account with the same registration. The Funds employ reasonable procedures in an effort to confirm the authenticity of your instructions. These procedures will require a redeeming shareholder to give a special authorization number or password. Provided these procedures are followed, you further agree that neither the Funds nor the Funds' agent will be responsible for any loss, damage, cost or expense arising out of any instructions received for an account. You should realize that by electing the telephone privileges and online access options, you may be giving up a measure of security that you might otherwise have if you were to exchange your shares in writing. For reasons involving the security of your account, telephone transactions may be recorded.

Systematic Withdrawal Plan

If you own shares of a Fund with a value of $10,000 or more, you may establish a Systematic Withdrawal Plan. You may receive monthly or quarterly payments in amounts of not less than $100 per payment. Details of this plan may be obtained by calling the Funds at (800) 955-9988.

Other Redemption Policies

Payment of Redemption Proceeds: The Trust is committed to pay in cash all requests for redemption by any shareholder of record, limited in amount, however, during any 90-day period to the lesser of $250,000 or 1% of the value of the applicable Fund's net assets at the beginning of such period. Such commitment is irrevocable without the prior approval of the SEC.

Redemption-in-Kind: In the case of requests for redemption in excess of such amounts, the Trustees reserve the right to make payments in whole or in part in securities or other assets of the Fund from which the shareholder is redeeming. Such payments-in -kind might be made, for example, in case of stressed market conditions, or if the payment of such a redemption in cash would be detrimental to the existing shareholders of that Fund or the Trust. In such circumstances, the securities distributed would be valued at the price used to compute such Fund's net asset value. Should a Fund do so, a shareholder would likely incur transaction fees in converting the securities to cash. However, a Fund could be practically limited in its ability to redeem shares in-kind due to logistical or other issues.

Redemption Methods Available: Generally, a Fund expects to pay redemption proceeds in cash. To do so, a Fund typically expects to satisfy redemption requests either by using available cash (or cash equivalents) or by selling portfolio securities. These methods may be used during both normal and stressed market conditions.

Retirement Plan Redemptions: Retirement Plan shareholders should complete a Rollover Distribution Election Form in order to sell shares of the Funds so that the sale is treated properly for tax purposes. Once your shares are redeemed, we will normally mail you the proceeds on the next business day, but within no later than 7 business days. When the markets are closed (or when trading is restricted) for any reason other than its customary weekend or holiday closing, or under any emergency circumstances as determined by the SEC to merit such action, we may suspend redemption or postpone payment dates.

Low Balance Accounts: If you want to keep your account(s) open, please be sure that the value of your account does not fall below $1,000 due to redemptions. Shelton may elect to close an account that falls below the minimum and mail you the proceeds to the address of record. We will give you 30 days written notice that your account(s) will be closed unless you make an investment to increase your account balance(s) to the $1,000. If you close your account, any accrued dividends will be paid as part of your redemption proceeds. The share prices of the Funds will fluctuate, and you may receive more or less than your original investment when you redeem your shares.

Other Important Policies Related to Buying and Selling Shares

Good Order. Good order means that the request includes:

- Fund name and account number;
- Amount of the transaction in dollars or shares; (if redemption is requested by internet or mail, the amount of the transaction may be stated in percentage terms);
- Signatures of all owners exactly as registered on the account (for written requests);
- Medallion Signature Guarantee, if required (see Medallion Signature Guarantees); and
- Any supporting legal documentation that may be required.
- Clear and actionable instructions to the Fund as applicable

Note: for corporate/institutional accounts only, the required signature(s) must be either (1) Medallion-guaranteed and clearly indicate the capacity of the signer to act for the corporation or institution or (2) that of an authorized signatory as indicated by the account records.

Medallion Signature Guarantees. You will need to have your signature Medallion guaranteed in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- Sending redemption proceeds to any person, address, or bank account not on record; and
- Transferring redemption proceeds to a SCM Trust account with a different registration (name/ownership) from yours; and
- Changes to account ownership, signature authority or registration.

A Medallion Signature Guarantee may be obtained from a domestic bank or trust company, broker, dealer, clearing agency, savings association, or other financial institution which participates in a Medallion program recognized by the Securities Transfer Association. Signature guarantees from financial institutions which do not participate in a Medallion program will not be accepted. A notary public cannot provide Medallion Signature Guarantees.

Keep in mind the following important policies:

- A Fund may take up to 7 business days to pay redemption proceeds.
- If your shares were recently purchased by check, the Fund will not release your redemption proceeds until payment of the check can be verified which may take up to 15 days.
- Exchange purchases must meet the minimum investment amounts of the Fund you are purchasing.
- You must obtain and read the Prospectus for the Fund you are buying prior to making the exchange.
- If you have not selected the convenient exchange privileges on your original account application, you must provide a medallion signature guaranteed letter of instruction to the Fund, directing any changes in your account.
- The Funds may refuse any purchase or exchange purchase transaction for any reason.
- Each signature on a request for redemption or account registration change must be medallion signature guaranteed separately.
- All share activity is subject to federal and state rules and regulations. These are in place to prevent, among other things, money laundering and other illegal movements of money.

THE FUNDS AND SHELTON RESERVE CERTAIN RIGHTS, INCLUDING THE FOLLOWING:

- To automatically redeem your shares if your account balance falls below the minimum balance due to the sale of shares.
- To modify or terminate the exchange privilege on 60 days written notice.
- To refuse any purchase or exchange purchase order.
- To change or waive a Fund's minimum investment amount.
- To suspend the right to redeem shares, and delay sending proceeds, during times when trading on the principal markets for the Funds are restricted or halted, or otherwise as permitted by the SEC.
- To withdraw or suspend any part of the offering made by this Prospectus.
- To automatically redeem your shares if you fail to provide all required enrollment information and documentation.

Other Policies

Tax-Saving Retirement Plans

We can set up your new account in a Fund under one of several tax-sheltered plans. The following plans let you save for your retirement and shelter your investment earnings from current income taxes: *IRAs/Roth IRAs:* You can also make investments in the name of your spouse if your spouse has no earned income. *SIMPLE, SEP, 401(k)/Profit-Sharing and Money-Purchase Plans (Keogh):* Open to corporations, self-employed people and partnerships, to benefit themselves and their employees. *403(b) Plans*. Open to eligible employees of certain states and non-profit organizations. Each IRA is subject to an annual custodial fee of $10.00 per social security number. The annual custodial fee will be waived for IRAs with a balance greater than $10,000. The Funds reserve the right to change, modify or eliminate this waiver at any time. We can provide you with complete information on any of these plans, including information that discusses benefits, provisions and fees.

Cash Distributions

Unless you otherwise indicate on the account application, we will reinvest all dividends and capital gains distributions back into your account. You may indicate on the application that you wish to receive either income dividends or capital gains distributions in cash. EFT is available to those investors who would like their dividends electronically transferred to their bank accounts. For those investors who do not request this feature, dividend checks will be mailed via regular mail. If you elect to receive distributions by mail and the U.S. Postal Service cannot deliver your checks or if the checks remain uncashed for six months or more, we will void the checks and reinvest your money in your account at the then current net asset value and reinvest your subsequent distributions.

Statements and Reports

Shareholders of the Funds will receive statements at least quarterly and after every transaction (other than AIP transactions) that affects their share balance and/or account registration. Shareholders receiving paper statements may be required to pay an account fee of $25. A statement with tax information will be mailed to you by January 31 of each year, a copy of which will be filed with the IRS if it reflects any taxable distributions. Twice a year you will

receive our financial statements, at least one of which will be audited. The account statements you receive will show the total number of shares you own and a current market value. You may rely on these statements in lieu of share certificates which are not necessary and are not issued. You should keep your statements to assist in record keeping and tax calculations. We pay for regular reporting services, but not for special services. Special services would include a request for a historical transcript of an account. You may be required to pay a separate fee for these special services. As an alternative to requesting special services, you can establish an online account. Once the online account is established, you may also obtain a transaction history for your account(s) by accessing our website atwww.sheltoncap.com.

Consolidated Mailings & Householding

Consolidated statements offer convenience to investors by summarizing account information and reducing unnecessary mail. We send these statements to all shareholders unless shareholders specifically request otherwise. These statements include a summary of all funds held by each shareholder as identified by the first line of registration, social security number and zip code. Householding refers to the practice of mailing one Prospectus, Annual Report and Semi-Annual Report to each home for all household investors. If you would like extra copies of these reports, please download a copy from www.sheltoncap.com or call the Funds at (800) 955-9988. If you would like to elect out of household-based mailings or to receive a complimentary copy of the current SAI, annual or semi-annual report, please call Shelton or write to the Secretary of the Funds at 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710, Denver, CO 80265.

Electronic Delivery of Documents

You may sign up for electronic statements online or by calling shareholder services at (800) 955-9988. If you sign up over the telephone, a temporary password will be issued to you and you must reset the password to secure your account and access.

Financial Intermediaries

You may purchase or sell Fund shares through a financial intermediary, which may charge you a fee for this service and may require different minimum initial and subsequent investments than the Funds. Financial intermediaries may also impose other charges or restrictions different from those applicable to shareholders who invest in the Funds directly. In addition, a broker may charge a commission to its customers on transactions in Fund shares, provided the broker acts solely on an agency basis for its customer and does not receive any distribution-related payment in connection with the transaction. Shareholders who are customers of financial intermediaries or participants in programs serviced by them should contact the financial intermediaries for additional information. A financial intermediary may be the shareholder of record of your shares. The Funds, Shelton Capital Management, Gemini Fund Services, and each of their respective directors, trustees, officers, employees, and agents are not responsible for the failure of any financial intermediary to carry out its obligations to its customers.

Shelton Capital Management, out of its own resources, and without additional cost to the Funds or their shareholders, may provide additional cash payments or non-cash compensation to financial intermediaries who sell shares of the Funds. Such payments and compensation are in addition to service fees paid by the Funds. These additional cash payments are generally made to intermediaries that provide shareholder servicing, marketing support and/or access to sales meetings, sales representatives and management representatives of the intermediary. Cash compensation may also be paid to financial intermediaries for the inclusion of the Funds on the sales list, including a preferred or select sales list, in other sales programs or as an expense reimbursement in cases where the intermediary provides shareholder services to Fund shareholders.

Risks of Frequent Trading in Fund Shares

The Funds are intended for long-term investment purposes and not for market timing or excessive short-term trading. Frequent trading of significant portions of a Fund's shares may adversely affect Fund performance and therefore, the interests of long-term investors. Volatility in portfolio cash balances resulting from excessive purchases or sales or exchanges of Fund shares, especially involving large dollar amounts, may disrupt efficient portfolio management and make it difficult to implement long-term investment strategies. In particular, frequent trading of Fund shares may:

- Cause a Fund to keep more assets in money market instruments or other very liquid holdings than it would otherwise like, causing the Fund to miss out on gains in a rising market, or
- Force a Fund to sell some of its investments sooner than it would otherwise like in order to honor redemptions, and
- Increase brokerage commissions and other portfolio transaction expenses if securities are constantly being bought and sold by the Fund as assets and move in and out.

To the extent any fund significantly invests in illiquid or restricted securities, such as high-yield bonds or small-cap equity securities, because these securities are often infrequently traded, investors may seek to trade Fund shares in an effort to benefit from their understanding of the value of these securities.

Procedures to Limit Short-Term Trading in Fund Shares

The Funds have adopted policies and procedures designed to discourage short-term trading. Although market-timing can take place in many forms, the Funds generally define a market-timing account as an account that habitually redeems or exchanges Fund shares in an effort to profit from short-term movements in the price of securities held by the Funds. The Funds seek to eliminate such purchases and have taken steps that it believes to be reasonable to discourage such activity. The Funds' frequent trading policies and procedures seek to identify frequent trading by monitoring purchase and redemption activities in each Fund over certain periodic intervals and above certain dollar thresholds. The policies include communicating with relevant shareholders or financial intermediaries, and placing restrictions on share transactions, when deemed appropriate by the Fund. The Fund reserves the right to reject any purchase order. While the Funds make efforts to identify and restrict frequent trading that could impact the management of a Fund, the Funds receive purchase and sales orders through financial intermediaries and cannot always know or detect frequent trading that may be facilitated by the use of intermediaries or by the use of combined or omnibus accounts by those intermediaries. If a shareholder, in the opinion of a Fund, continues to attempt to use the Fund for market-timing strategies after being notified by the Fund or its agent, the account(s) of that shareholder may

be closed to new purchases and exchange privileges may be suspended. Additionally, if any transaction is deemed to have the potential to adversely impact a Fund, the Fund has certain rights listed and detailed later in this prospectus.

The application of the Funds' excessive trading policies involves judgments that are inherently subjective and involve some selectivity in their application. The Funds, however, seek to make judgments that are consistent with the interests of the Funds' shareholders. No matter how the Funds define excessive trading, other purchases and sales of Fund shares may have adverse effects on the management of a Fund's portfolio and its performance. Additionally, due to the complexity and subjectivity involved in identifying excessive trading and the volume of Fund shareholder transactions, there can be no guarantee that the Funds will be able to identify violations of the excessive trading policy or to reduce or eliminate all detrimental effects of excessive trading.

The restrictions above may not apply to shares held in omnibus accounts for which the Funds do not receive sufficient transactional detail to enforce such restrictions.

Identity Verification Procedures Notice

The USA PATRIOT Act requires financial institutions, including mutual funds, to adopt certain policies and programs to prevent money-laundering activities, including procedures to verify the identity of customers opening new accounts. When completing the account application, you will be required to supply the Funds with your taxpayer identification number and other information the Fund considers appropriate to assist the Funds in verifying your identity. Until such verification is made, the Funds may temporarily limit additional share purchases. In addition, the Funds may limit additional share purchases or close an account if it is unable to verify a customer's identity. As required by law, the Funds may employ various procedures to ensure that the information supplied by you is correct. These procedures may incorporate comparing the information provided to fraud databases or requesting additional information or documentation from you. Your information will be handled by us as discussed in our privacy statement below.

Disclosure of Portfolio Holdings

The Funds provide a complete list of their holdings four times in each fiscal year, as of the end of each quarter. The Funds file the lists with the SEC on Form N-CSR (second and fourth quarters) and Form N-Q (first and third quarters). Shareholders may view the Funds' Forms N-CSR and N-Q on the SEC's website at sec.gov. Forms N-CSR and N-Q may also be reviewed and copied at the SEC's Public Reference Room in Washington, DC. Information regarding the operations of the Public Reference Room may be obtained by calling 202-551-8090 (direct) or 800-SEC-0330 (general SEC number). Shareholders may contact the Funds at (800) 955-9988 for a copy of the Form N-Q filing.

Shareholders will receive portfolio holdings information via annual and semi-annual reports, which will be mailed to shareholders and posted on the Funds' website. Portfolio holdings will be made available by Gemini Financial Services, the Trust's service provider, ten business day after month-end by releasing the information to ratings agencies. A more complete description of the Funds' policies and procedures with respect to the disclosure of the Funds' portfolio securities is available in the Funds' SAI.

Dividends and Taxes

Dividends. Any investment in the Funds typically involves several tax considerations. The information below is meant as a general summary for U.S. citizens and residents. Because your situation may be different, it is important that you consult your tax advisor about the tax implications of your investment in any of the Funds. As a shareholder, you are entitled to your share of the dividends your Fund earns. All SCM Trust Funds distribute substantially all of their dividends quarterly with the exception of Shelton International Select Equity which distributes annually. Shareholders of record on the second to last business day of the quarter will receive the dividends. Shareholders of record on the second to last business day of the month will receive the dividends. Capital gains are generally paid on the last day of November, to shareholders of record on the second to last business day of November of each year. At the beginning of each year, shareholders are provided with information detailing the tax status of any dividend the Funds have paid during the previous year. After every distribution, the value of a Fund share drops by the amount of the distribution. If you purchase shares of one of the Funds before the record date of a distribution and elect to have distributions paid to you in cash, you will pay the full price for the shares and then receive some portion of that price back in the form of a taxable distribution. This is sometimes referred to as buying a dividend.

Taxes. This discussion only addresses the U.S. federal income tax consequences of an investment in a Fund for U.S. persons and does not address any foreign tax consequences or, except where specifically noted, any state or local tax consequences. For purposes of this discussion, U.S. persons are:

(i) U.S. citizens or residents;
(ii) U.S. corporations;
(iii) an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or

(iv) a trust, if a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over its administration and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all of its substantial decisions, or certain electing trusts that were in existence on August 20, 1996, and were treated as domestic trusts on August 19, 1996.

This discussion does not address issues of significance to U.S. persons in special situations such as (i) certain types of tax-exempt organizations, (ii) shareholders holding shares through tax-advantaged accounts (such as 401(k) plan accounts or individual retirement accounts), (iii) shareholders holding investments through foreign institutions (financial and non-financial) or through foreign accounts, (iv) financial institutions, (v) broker-dealers, (vi) entities not organized under the laws of the United States or a political subdivision thereof, (vii) shareholders holding shares as part of a hedge, straddle or conversion transaction, and (viii) shareholders who are subject to the U.S. federal alternative minimum tax. If a partnership (including for this purpose any entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) is a beneficial owner of shares, the tax treatment of a partner in the partnership will generally depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. For further information regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of an investment in a Fund, investors should see the SAI under "**TAXES-Taxation of the Funds.**"

Non-U.S. persons that are considering the purchase of shares should consult with their own tax advisers regarding the U.S. federal, foreign, state and local tax consequences of the purchase, ownership and disposition of shares in a Fund.

Each Fund intends to meet all requirements under Subchapter M of the Code necessary to qualify for treatment as a "regulated investment company" (RIC) and thus does not expect to pay any U.S. federal income tax on income and capital gains distributed to shareholders. The Funds also intend to meet certain distribution requirements such that the Fund is not subject to U.S. federal income tax in general. This discussion assumes that the Funds will qualify under Subchapter M of the Code as RICs and will satisfy such distribution requirements. There can be no guarantee that this assumption will be correct.

Investors should consult with their tax advisers regarding the U.S. federal, foreign, state and local tax consequences of an investment in the Fund.

Taxation of Fund Distributions

For U.S. federal income tax purposes, shareholders of a Fund are generally subject to taxation based on the underlying character of the income and gain recognized by the Fund and distributed to the shareholders. Distributions of net capital gains that are properly designated by a Fund as capital gain dividends ("capital gain dividends") will be taxable to shareholders as long-term capital gains. Generally, distributions of earnings derived from ordinary income and short-term capital gains will be taxable as ordinary income. Certain distributions from a Fund may be "qualified dividend income;' which will be taxed to individuals and other non-corporate shareholders at favorable rates so long as certain holding period and other requirements are met. Corporate shareholders may be able to take a dividends-received deduction for a portion of the dividends they receive from a Fund, to the extent such dividends are received by the Fund from a domestic corporation and to the extent a portion of interest paid or accrued on certain high yield discount obligations owned by the Fund are treated as dividends.

39

A Fund may realize long-term capital gains when it sells or redeems a security that it has owned for more than one year, or from transactions in so-called "section 1256 contracts," which may generate both short-term and long-term capital gains distributions. A Fund may realize short-term capital gains from the sale of investments that the Fund owned for one year or less or from transactions in section 1256 contracts. A Fund may realize ordinary income from foreign currency gains, from interest on indebtedness owned by the Fund, and from other sources. The term "Section 1256 contract" refers to regulated future contracts, foreign currency contracts, non-equity options, debt options, dealer equity options, and certain other options.

Distributions of a Fund's earnings are taxable whether a shareholder receives them in cash or reinvests them in additional shares. A dividend or distribution made shortly after a shareholder purchases shares of a Fund will be taxable even though such distribution is in effect a return of capital. An investor can avoid this result by investing after a Fund has paid a dividend.

Sale or Redemption of Fund Shares

A shareholder who sells or redeems shares of a Fund generally will recognize a gain or a loss. The gain or loss will be equal to the difference between the amount received in the redemption (net of any applicable redemption fees) and the shareholder's aggregate adjusted basis in the shares surrendered.

Any capital gain or loss realized upon redemption of shares of a Fund is generally treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the shares have been held for more than one year and as a short-term capital gain or loss if the shares have been held for one year or less. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to significant limitations. For more information, see the SAI under "TAXES-Sale or Redemption of Shares."

In certain circumstances, a loss realized upon a redemption of shares of a Fund may not be deducted currently under the rules governing "wash sales." Persons redeeming shares should consult their own tax advisor with respect to whether the wash sale rules apply and when such a loss might be deductible.

Taxation of Certain Investments

A Fund's investments in foreign securities may be subject to foreign withholding or other taxes, which would reduce a Fund's yield on those securities. Shareholders generally will not be entitled to claim a foreign tax credit or deduction with respect to foreign taxes paid by a Fund, although it is possible that Fund may be able to elect to pass through foreign tax credits or deductions to its shareholders. The Funds make no assurances regarding their ability or willingness to so elect. In addition, a Fund's investments in foreign securities or foreign currencies may increase or accelerate the Fund's recognition of ordinary income and may affect the timing or amount of the Fund's distributions. For more information, see the SAI under "TAXES-Special Tax Considerations**.**"

The Funds may, at times, buy debt obligations at a discount from their stated redemption price at maturity. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, any original issue discount inherent in such investments will be included in a Fund's ordinary income as such income accrues. Even though payment of that amount may not be received until a later time and will be subject to the risk of nonpayment, it will be distributed to shareholders as taxable dividends. The Funds may also buy debt obligations in the secondary market that are treated as having market discount. Generally, gain recognized on the disposition of such an investment is taxed as ordinary income for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of the accrued market discount, but a Fund may elect instead to currently include the amount of market discount as ordinary income even though the Fund does not receive payment of such amount at that time. A Fund's investments in certain mortgage-backed securities, asset-backed securities and derivatives may also cause the Fund to recognize taxable income in excess of the cash generated by such obligations. Thus, the Fund could be required at times to liquidate other investments in order to satisfy its distribution requirements, potentially increasing the amount of capital gain dividends made to shareholders.

Surtax on Net Investment Income

A 3.8% surtax applies to net investment income of an individual taxpayer, and on the undistributed net investment income of a trust or estate, to the extent that the taxpayer's income exceeds certain amounts. Net investment income generally includes distributions paid by a Fund (except exempt-interest dividends) and capital gains from the sale or exchange of Fund shares. For information regarding the surtax on net investment income, see the SAI under "TAXES-Surtax on Net Investment Income**.**"

Backup Withholding

The Funds are required in certain circumstances to apply backup withholding on taxable dividends, redemption proceeds and certain other payments that are paid to any shareholder who does not furnish to a Fund certain information and certifications or who is otherwise subject to backup withholding. For more information regarding backup withholding, see the SAI under "TAXES-Backup Withholding."

Tax Legislation

Congress has enacted far-reaching changes to the U.S. income tax laws. These changes may directly or indirectly affect investments in the Funds. See the SAI under "TAXES-Tax Cuts and Jobs Act."

Notice of Privacy Policy

FACTS	**WHAT DO THE FUNDS DO WITH YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION?**
WHY?	Financial companies choose how they share your personal information. Federal law gives consumers the right to limit some but not all sharing. Federal law also requires us to tell you how we collect, share, and protect your personal information. Please read this notice carefully to understand what we do.
WHAT?	The types of personal information we collect and share depend on the product or service you have with us. This information can include: Social Security number and account transactions Account balances and transaction history Wire transfer instructions
HOW?	All financial companies need to share customers' personal information to run their everyday business. In the section below, we list the reasons financial companies can share their customers' personal information; the reasons the Funds choose to share; and whether you can limit this sharing.

REASONS WE CAN SHARE YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION	**DO THE FUNDS SHARE:**	**CAN YOU LIMIT THIS SHARING?**
For our everyday business purposes – such as to process your transactions, maintain your account(s), respond to court orders and legal investigations, or report to credit bureaus	Yes	No
For our marketing purposes – to offer our products and services to you	No	We do not share.
For joint marketing with other financial companies	No	We do not share.
For our affiliates' everyday business purposes – information about your transactions and experiences	Yes	No
For our affiliates' everyday business purposes – information about your creditworthiness	No	We do not share.
For non-affiliates to market to you	No	We do not share.

WHO WE ARE

Who is providing this notice?	SCM Trust

WHAT WE DO

How do the Funds protect my personal information?	To protect your personal information from unauthorized access and use, we use security measures that comply with federal law. These measures include computer safeguards and secured files and buildings.
How do the Funds collect my personal information?	We collect your personal information, for example, when you open an account provide account information or give us your contact information make a wire transfer or deposit money

Why can't I limit all sharing?	Federal law gives you the right to limit only sharing for affiliates' everyday business purposes-information about your creditworthiness affiliates from using your information to market to you sharing for non-affiliates to market to you State laws and individual companies may give you additional rights to limit sharing.

DEFINITIONS

Affiliates	Companies related by common ownership or control. They can be financial and nonfinancial companies.
Non-affiliates	Companies not related by common ownership or control. They can be financial and nonfinancial companies. *The Funds do not share with non-affiliates so they can market to you.*
Joint marketing	A formal agreement between non-affiliated financial companies that together market financial products or services to you. *The Funds do not jointly market.*

OTHER IMPORTANT INFORMATION

California Residents	If your account has a California home address, your personal information will not be disclosed to nonaffiliated third parties except as permitted by applicable California law, and we will limit sharing such personal information with our affiliates to comply with California privacy laws that apply to us.

Use of E-Mail Addresses:

If you have requested information regarding SCM Trust products and services and supplied your e-mail address to us, we may occasionally send you follow-up communications or information on additional products or services. Additionally, registered clients can subscribe to the following e-mail services:

Prospectus and Shareholder Reports – Receive prospectuses and shareholder reports online instead of by U. S. Mail.

Paperless Statements – Receive an e-mail with a link to our Web site informing you that our client statements are available online to view, print or download.
Tax Forms – Receive an e-mail with a link to our Web site informing you that our client tax forms are available online to view, print or download.

We also include instructions and links for unsubscribing from Shelton e-mails. We do not sell email addresses to anyone, although we may disclose e-mail addresses to third parties that perform administrative or marketing services for us. We may track receipt of e- mails to gauge the effectiveness of our communications.

Financial Highlights

The financial highlights table is intended to help you understand the Fund's performance for the past five fiscal years. Certain information reflects financial results of a single Fund share. The total returns in the table represent the rate that an investor would have earned (or lost) on an investment in the Fund (assuming reinvestment of all dividends and distributions). This information has been audited by Tait, Weller & Baker LLP, whose report, along with the Fund's financial statements, are included in the Annual Report, available upon request.

Financial Highlights

For a Share Outstanding Throughout Each Year or Period

Shelton Greater China Fund Direct Shares	Year Ended December 31, 2017	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Year Ended December 31, 2015	Year Ended December 31, 2014	Year Ended December 31, 2013
Net asset value, beginning of year	$ 6.86	$ 6.89	$ 7.55	$ 7.21	$ 7.12
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS					
Net investment income (loss) [(a)]	0.11	0.10	0.05	0.08	0.03
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	2.27	0.03	(0.58)	0.36	0.28
Total from investment operations	2.38	0.13	(0.53)	0.44	0.31
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS					
Dividends from net investment income	(0.19)	(0.16)	(0.13)	(0.10)	(0.22)
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	—	—	—
Total distributions	(0.19)	(0.16)	(0.13)	(0.10)	(0.22)
Net asset value, end of year	$ 9.05	$ 6.86	$ 6.89	$ 7.55	$ 7.21
Total return	34.85%	1.95%	(7.05)%	6.19%	4.34%
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA					
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$ 8,885	$ 7,200	$ 7,726	$ 10,332	$ 11,415
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:					
Before expense reimbursements	2.62%	3.13%	2.60%	2.69%	3.00%
After expense reimbursements	1.98%	1.97%	1.98%	1.98%	2.36%
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets					
Before expense reimbursements	0.67%	0.31%	0.01%	0.33%	(0.22)%
After expense reimbursements	1.31%	1.47%	0.63%	1.04%	0.42%
Portfolio turnover	25%	11%	0%	5%	10%

Shelton BDC Income Fund [c]	Institutional Shares		Formerly AR Capital BDC Income Fund	
	Year Ended December 31, 2017	Year Ended December 31, 2016 [b][c]	Year Ended March 31, 2016 [i]	Period of May 2, 2014 to March 31, 2015 [d][i]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$9.11	$ 8.40	$9.65	$10.00
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS				
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.59	0.44	0.80	1.55
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	(0.22)	0.72	(1.36)	(1.40)
Total from investment operations	0.37	1.16	(0.56)	0.15
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS				
Dividends from net investment income	(0.56)	(0.45)	(0.69)	(0.50)
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	—	—
Total distributions	(0.56)	(0.45)	(0.69)	(0.50)
Net asset value, end of period	$8.92	$ 9.11	$8.40	$9.65
Total return	3.94 %	14.07 %	(5.76)%[e]	1.59 %[e]
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA				
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$1,610	$ 420	$443	$106
Ratio of expenses to average net assets: [j]				
Before expense reimbursements	1.78 %	2.53 %	2.47 %	10.23%[f]
After expense reimbursements	1.25 %	1.24 %	1.25 %	1.25 %[f]
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets [h]			9.30 %	17.58%[f]
Before expense reimbursements	5.82 %	5.26 %		
After expense reimbursements	6.34 %	6.55 %		
Portfolio turnover	118 %	38 %	166 %	33 %[g]

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.

(b) For the nine months ended December 31, 2016.

(c) Following the acquisition on November 4, 2016, Advisor Class and Class A were renamed Institutional Shares and Investor Shares.

(d) The inception date of Shelton BDC Income Fund is April 22, 2014; the commencement of operations and start of performance for Institutional Shares and Investor Shares is May 2, 2014. The inception date of Shelton Real Estate Income Fund is June 4, 2013; the commencement of operations and start of performance is June 7, 2013.

(e) Total returns shown exclude the effect of applicable sales loads/redemption fees. If the Adviser did not reimburse/waive a portion of the Fund's expenses, total return would have been lower. Returns are not annualized

(f) Annualized

(g) Not annualized

(h)

Recognition of net investment income by the Fund is affected by the timing in which the Fund invests. The ratio does not include the net income of the investment companies in which the Fund invests.

(i) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.

(j) Does not include expenses of investment companies in which the Fund invests.

Shelton BDC Income Fund [c]	Investor Shares		Formerly AR Capital BDC Income Fund	
	Year Ended December 31, 2017	Year Ended December 31, 2016 [b][c]	Year Ended March 31, 2016 [i]	For the Period of May 2, 2014 to March 31, 2015 [d][i]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$9.21	$ 8.51	$9.66	$10.00
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS				
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.54	0.44	0.70	0.77
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	(0.19)	0.71	(1.17)	(0.62)
Total from investment operations	0.35	1.15	(0.47)	0.15
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS				
Dividends from net investment income	(0.55)	(0.45)	(0.68)	(0.49)
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	—	—
Total distributions	(0.55)	(0.45)	(0.68)	(0.49)
Net asset value, end of period	$9.01	$ 9.21	$8.51	$9.66
Total return	3.73 %	13.74 %	(4.83)%[e]	1.56 %[e]
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA				
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$13,486	$ 13,614	$12,853	$11,658
Ratio of expenses to average net assets: [j]				
Before expense reimbursements	2.04 %	2.82 %	2.66 %	7.61 %[f]
After expense reimbursements	1.50 %	1.50 %	1.45 %	1.50 %[f]
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets [h]			7.89 %	8.94 %[f]
Before expense reimbursements	5.21 %	5.16 %		
After expense reimbursements	5.73 %	6.48 %		
Portfolio turnover	118 %	38 %	166 %	33 %[g]

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.

(b) For the nine months ended December 31, 2016.

(c) Following the acquisition on November 4, 2016, Advisor Class and Class A were renamed Institutional Shares and Investor Shares.

(d) The inception date of Shelton BDC Income Fund is April 22, 2014; the commencement of operations and start of performance for Institutional Shares and Investor Shares is May 2, 2014. The inception date of Shelton Real Estate Income Fund is June 4, 2013; the commencement of operations and start of performance is June 7, 2013.

(e) Total returns shown exclude the effect of applicable sales loads/redemption fees. If the Adviser did not reimburse/waive a portion of the Fund's expenses, total return would have been lower. Returns are not annualized

(f) Annualized

(g) Not annualized

(h) Recognition of net investment income by the Fund is affected by the timing in which the Fund invests. The ratio does not include the net income of the investment companies in which the Fund invests.
(i) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.
(j) Does not include expenses of investment companies in which the Fund invests.

Shelton Real Estate Income Fund	**Institutional Shares** [c]		Formerly AR Capital Real Estate Income Fund		
	Year Ended December 31, 2017	Year Ended December 31, 2016 [b]	Year Ended March 31, 2016 [h]	Year Ended March 31, 2015 [h]	For the Period of June 7, 2013 to March 31, 2014 [d][h]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$8.82	$ 10.65	$11.40	$10.22	$10.00
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS					
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.28	0.23	0.26	0.27	0.25
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	0.07	0.07	0.02 [i]	1.58	0.23 [i]
Total from investment operations	0.35	0.30	0.28	1.85	0.48
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS					
Dividends from net investment income	(0.53)	(0.38)	(0.48)	(0.60)	(0.18)
Distributions from return of capital	—	(0.18)	—	—	—
Distributions from capital gains	—	(1.57)	(0.55)	(0.07)	(0.08)
Total distributions	(0.53)	(2.13)	(1.03)	(0.67)	(0.26)
Net asset value, end of period	$8.64	$ 8.82	$10.65	$11.40	$10.22
Total return	3.98 %	3.15 %[g]	2.90 %[e]	18.71 %[e]	5.01 %[e]
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA					
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$131	$ 908	$703	$15,295	$17,533
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:					
Before expense reimbursements	2.10 %	2.49 %[f]	2.01 %	2.21 %	3.97 %[f]
After expense reimbursements	1.17 %	1.14 %[f]	1.15 %	1.15 %	1.15 %[f]
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets			2.40 %	2.54 %	3.09 %[f]
Before expense reimbursements	2.20 %	1.61 %[f]			
After expense reimbursements	3.13 %	2.96 %[f]			
Portfolio turnover	41 %	137 %[g]	99 %	104 %	86 %[g]

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.

(b) For the nine months ended December 31, 2016.

(c) Following the acquisition on November 4, 2016, Advisor Class and Class A were renamed Institutional Shares and Investor Shares.

(d) The inception date of Shelton BDC Income Fund is April 22, 2014; the commencement of operations and start of performance for Institutional Shares and Investor Shares is May 2, 2014. The inception date of Shelton Real Estate Income Fund is June 4, 2013; the commencement of operations and start of performance is June 7, 2013.

(e)

Total returns shown exclude the effect of applicable sales loads/redemption fees. If the Adviser did not reimburse/waive a portion of the Fund's expenses, total return would have been lower. Returns are not annualized

(f) Annualized

(g) Not annualized

(h) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.

(i) Net realized and unrealized gain on investments per share does not correlate within the Financial Highlights for the periods ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2014 due to the timing of the shareholder subscriptions and redemptions.

Shelton Real Estate Income Fund	Investor Shares [c]		Formerly AR Capital Real Estate Income Fund		
	Year Ended December 31, 2017	Year Ended December 31, 2016 [b]	Year Ended March 31, 2016 [h]	Year Ended March 31, 2015 [h]	For the Period of June 7, 2013 to March 31, 2014 [d][h]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$8.85	$ 10.66	$11.40	$10.21	$10.00
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS					
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.31	0.21	0.30	0.26	0.28
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	0.01	0.07	(0.03)	1.57	0.18 [i]
Total from investment operations	0.32	0.28	0.27	1.83	0.46
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS					
Dividends from net investment income	(0.29)	(0.35)	(0.46)	(0.57)	(0.17)
Distributions from return of capital	—	(0.17)	—	—	—
Distributions from capital gains	—	(1.57)	(0.55)	(0.07)	(0.08)
Total distributions	(0.29)	(2.09)	(1.01)	(0.64)	(0.25)
Net asset value, end of period	$8.88	$ 8.85	$10.66	$11.40	$10.21
Total return	3.72 %	3.02 %[g]	2.79 %[e]	18.47 %[e]	4.83 %[e]
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA					
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$9,916	$ 14,898	$11,396	$20,677	$14,362
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:					
Before expense reimbursements	2.35 %	2.72 %[f]	2.22 %	2.46 %	4.22 %[f]
After expense reimbursements	1.42 %	1.39 %[f]	1.36 %	1.40 %	1.40 %[f]
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets			2.75 %	2.41 %	3.47 %[f]
Before expense reimbursements	2.53 %	1.41 %[f]			
After expense reimbursements	3.46 %	2.74 %[f]			
Portfolio turnover	41 %	137 %[g]	99 %	104 %	86 %[g]

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.

(b) For the nine months ended December 31, 2016.

(c) Following the acquisition on November 4, 2016, Advisor Class and Class A were renamed Institutional Shares and Investor Shares.

(d) The inception date of Shelton BDC Income Fund is April 22, 2014; the commencement of operations and start of performance for Institutional Shares and Investor Shares is May 2, 2014. The inception date of Shelton Real Estate Income Fund is June 4, 2013; the commencement of operations and start of performance is June 7, 2013.

(e) Total returns shown exclude the effect of applicable sales loads/redemption fees. If the Adviser did not reimburse/waive a portion of the Fund's expenses, total return would have been lower. Returns are not annualized

(f) Annualized

(g) Not annualized

(h) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.

(i) Net realized and unrealized gain on investments per share does not correlate within the Financial Highlights for the periods ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2014 due to the timing of the shareholder subscriptions and redemptions.

Shelton Tactical Credit Fund

Investor Shares [c]	For the Period Ended December 31, 2017 [d]	Year Ended April 30, 2017	Year Ended April 30, 2016 [b]	For the Period December 16, 2014* to April 30, 2015 [b]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$ 10.59	$10.47	$10.38	$ 10.00
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS				
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.38	0.63	0.55	0.11
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	(0.22)	0.26	(0.08)	0.35
Total from investment operations	0.16	0.89	0.47	0.46
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS				
Dividends from net investment income	(0.44)	(0.77)	(0.35)	(0.08)
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	(0.03)	—
Total distributions	(0.44)	(0.77)	(0.38)	(0.08)
Net asset value, end of period	$ 10.31	$10.59	$10.47	$ 10.38
Total return	1.58 %	8.84 %	4.66 %	4.57 %
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA				
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$ 8,447	$16,112	$11,392	$ 126
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:				
Before expense reimbursements	1.91 %	2.61 %	2.91 %	6.60 %
After expense reimbursements	1.67 %	1.65 %	1.86 %	1.68 %
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets				
Before expense reimbursements	5.10 %	4.99 %		
After expense reimbursements	5.34 %	5.96 %	5.29 %	2.97 %
Portfolio turnover	239 %	246 %	695 %	532 %

Shelton Tactical Credit Fund

Institutional Shares [c]	For the Period Ended December 31, 2017 [d]	Year Ended April 30, 2017	Year Ended April 30, 2016 [b]	For the Period December 16, 2014* to April 30, 2015 [b]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$ 10.62	$10.46	$10.38	$ 10.00
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS				
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.39	0.67	0.56	0.12
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	(0.20)	0.27	(0.08)	0.34
Total from investment operations	0.19	0.94	0.48	0.46
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS				
Dividends from net investment income	(0.45)	(0.78)	(0.37)	(0.08)
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	(0.03)	—
Total distributions	(0.45)	(0.78)	(0.40)	(0.08)
Net asset value, end of period	$ 10.36	$10.62	$10.46	$ 10.38
Total return	1.79 %	9.35 %	4.78 %	4.60 %
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA				
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$ 17,256	$19,609	$16,139	$ 4,448
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:				
Before expense reimbursements	1.67 %	2.34 %	2.66 %	6.35 %
After expense reimbursements	1.42 %	1.39 %	1.61 %	1.42 %
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets				
Before expense reimbursements	5.27 %	5.42 %		
After expense reimbursements	5.51 %	6.37 %	5.54 %	3.22 %
Portfolio turnover	239 %	246 %	695 %	532 %

*Commencement of operations.

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.

(b) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.

(c) As of March 17, 2017, Class A Shares and Class I Shares were renamed to Investor Shares and Institutional Shares, respectively.

(d) For the eight month period ended December 31, 2017.

Shelton International Select Equity Fund

Investor Shares [d]	For the Period Ended December 31, 2017 [e]	Year Ended April 30, 2017	Year Ended April 30, 2016 [c]	Year Ended April 30, 2015 [c]	Year Ended April 30, 2014 [c]	Year Ended April 30, 2013 [c]
Net asset value, beginning of period	$ 18.02	$15.88	$21.16	$23.48	$20.54	$19.30
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS						
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.08	0.17	0.19	0.17	0.14	0.05
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	3.60	2.13	(4.97)	(2.34)	2.92	1.22
Total from investment operations	3.68	2.30	(4.78)	(2.17)	3.06	1.27
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS						
Dividends from net investment income	(0.39)	(0.16)	(0.50)	(0.15)	(0.09)	(0.03)
Distributions from return of capital	(0.01)	—	—	—	—	—
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	—	—	(0.03)	—
Total distributions	(0.40)	(0.16)	(0.50)	(0.15)	(0.12)	(0.03)
Redemption Fees	—	—	—	— (b)	— (b)	— (b)
Net asset value, end of period	$ 21.30	$18.02	$15.88	$21.16	$23.48	$20.54
Total return	20.53 %	14.55 %[f]	(22.51)%[f]	(9.18)%[f]	14.90 %[f]	6.61 %[f]
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA						
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$ 3,785	$4,488	$8,488	$31,583	$46,435	$53,447
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:						
Before expense reimbursements	1.59 %	2.02 %[g]	1.53 %[g]	1.45 %[g]	1.45 %[g]	1.46 %[g]
After expense reimbursements	1.24 %	1.24 %	1.48 %	1.45 %	1.49 %	1.50 %
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets						
Before expense reimbursements	0.23 %					
After expense reimbursements	0.58 %	1.06 %	1.11 %	0.75 %	0.67 %	0.27 %
Portfolio turnover	24 %	41 %	40 %	8 %	6 %	5 %

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.
(b) Amount is less than $0.005 per share.
(c) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.
(d) As of July 28, 2017, Class A Shares and Class I Shares were renamed to Investor Shares and Institutional Shares, respectively.
(e) For the eight month period ended December 31, 2017.
(f)

Total investment return is calculated assuming a purchase of shares on the first day and a sale of shares on the last day of each period reported and includes reinvestment of dividends and distributions, if any. For Investor Shares (Formerly Class A Shares), total investment return does not reflect the impact of the maximum front-end sales load of 5.75%. If reflected, the return would be lower.

(g) During the period, certain fees were waived and/or reimbursed; or recouped, if any. If such fee waivers and/or reimbursements or recoupments had not occurred, the ratios would have been as indicated.

Shelton International Select Equity Fund

Institutional Shares [d]	For the Period Ended December 31, 2017 [e]	Year Ended April 30, 2017	Year Ended April 30, 2016 [c]	Year Ended April 30, 2015 [c]	Year Ended April 30, 2014 [c]	Year Ended April 30, 2013 [c]
Net asset value, beginning of year	$ 18.03	$15.90	$21.20	$23.53	$20.59	$19.35
INCOME FROM INVESTMENT OPERATIONS						
Net investment income (loss) [a]	0.10	0.22	0.25	0.24	0.20	0.11
Net gain (loss) on securities (both realized and unrealized)	3.61	2.13	(5.01)	(2.36)	2.92	1.22
Total from investment operations	3.71	2.35	(4.76)	(2.12)	3.12	1.33
LESS DISTRIBUTIONS						
Dividends from net investment income	(0.39)	(0.22)	(0.54)	(0.21)	(0.15)	(0.09)
Distributions from return of capital	(0.01)	—	—	—	—	—
Distributions from capital gains	—	—	—	—	(0.03)	—
Total distributions	(0.40)	(0.22)	(0.54)	(0.21)	(0.18)	(0.09)
Redemption Fees	—	—	—	— (b)	— (b)	— (b)
Net asset value, end of year	$ 21.34	$18.03	$15.90	$21.20	$23.53	$20.59
Total return	20.74 %	14.89 %[f]	(22.36)%[f]	(8.94)%[f]	15.18 %[f]	6.88 %[f]
RATIOS / SUPPLEMENTAL DATA						
Net assets, end of year (000s)	$ 42,824	$38,737	$44,133	$369,610	$347,791	$320,190
Ratio of expenses to average net assets:						
Before expense reimbursements	1.32 %	1.76 %[g]	1.28 %[g]	1.20 %[g]	1.20 %[g]	1.21 %[g]
After expense reimbursements	0.99 %	0.99 %	1.23 %	1.20 %	1.24 %	1.25 %
Ratio of net investment income (loss) to average net assets						
Before expense reimbursements	0.41 %					
After expense reimbursements	0.74 %	1.32 %	1.36 %	1.11 %	0.92 %	0.58 %

Portfolio turnover	24	%	41	%	40	%	8	%	6	%	5	%

(a) Calculated based upon average shares outstanding.
(b) Amount is less than $0.005 per share.
(c) Audited by other independent registered public accounting firm.
(d) As of July 28, 2017, Class A Shares and Class I Shares were renamed to Investor Shares and Institutional Shares, respectively. See Note 5.
(e) For the eight month period ended December 31, 2017.
(f) Total investment return is calculated assuming a purchase of shares on the first day and a sale of shares on the last day of each period reported and includes reinvestment of dividends and distributions, if any. For Investor Shares (Formerly Class A Shares), total investment return does not reflect the impact of the maximum front-end sales load of 5.75%. If reflected, the return would be lower.
(g) During the period, certain fees were waived and/or reimbursed; or recouped, if any. If such fee waivers and/or reimbursements or recoupments had not occurred, the ratios would have been as indicated.

Learn More

This Prospectus contains important information on the Funds and should be read and kept for future reference. You can also get more information from the following sources:

Annual and Semi-Annual Reports

These are automatically mailed to all shareholders without charge. In the Annual Report, you will find a discussion of market conditions and investment strategies that significantly affected each fund's performance during its most recent fiscal year. The Annual Report is incorporated by reference into this Prospectus, making it a legal part of the Prospectus.

Statement of Additional Information

This includes more details about the Funds, including a detailed discussion of the risks associated with the various investments. The SAI is incorporated by reference into this Prospectus, making it a legal part of the Prospectus. You may obtain a copy of these documents free of charge by calling the Funds at (800) 955-9988, by accessing the Funds' website at *www.sheltoncap.com*, or by emailing the Funds at *info@sheltoncap.com*, or by contacting the SEC at the address noted below or via e-mail at publicinfo@sec.gov. The SEC may charge you a duplication fee. You can also review these documents in person at the SEC's Public Reference Room, or by visiting the SEC's Internet Site at *www.sec.gov*.

Securities and Exchange Commission

Public Reference Section

Washington, DC 20549-01520

1-202-551-8090

www.sec.gov

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

55

1050 17th Street, Suite 1710

Denver, CO 80265-2077

(800) 955-9988

www.sheltoncap.com

Investment Company Act File Number 811-04417

SCM Trust

1050 17th Street, Suite 1710

Denver, CO 80265-1077

(800) 955-9988

Statement of Additional Information – May 1, 2018

	Ticker Symbols
Shelton Greater China Fund	SGCFX
Shelton BDC Income Fund– Institutional Shares	LOAIX
Shelton BDC Income Fund– Investor Shares	LOANX
Shelton Real Estate Income – Institutional Shares	RENIX
Shelton Real Estate Income – Investor Shares	RENTX
Shelton Tactical Credit Fund – Institutional Shares	DEBIX
Shelton Tactical Credit Fund– Investor Shares	DEBTX
Shelton International Select Equity Fund– Institutional Shares	SISEX
Shelton International Select Equity Fund– Investor Shares	SISLX

This SAI is not the Funds' Prospectus, but provides additional information which should be read in conjunction with the Prospectus dated May 1, 2018 (as may be amended), which is incorporated by reference into this SAI. The Funds' Prospectus and most recent Annual Report may be obtained from the at no charge by visiting http://sheltoncap.com, or contacting the Funds at the address or telephone number shown above. This SAI contains additional and more detailed information about the Funds' operations and activities than the Prospectus.

SCM Trust (the "Trust") presently consists of the following five separate series: Shelton Greater China Fund (the "China Fund"), the Shelton BDC Income Fund (the "BDC Income Fund"), the Shelton Real Estate Income (the "Real Estate Income Fund"), the Shelton Tactical Credit Fund (the "Tactical Credit Fund"), and Shelton International Select Equity Fund (the "International Select Equity Fund") (each a "Fund" and collectively, the "Funds").

Each Fund may not be suitable or appropriate for all investors. Each Fund's share price will fluctuate with market, economic, and currency conditions, and your investment may be worth more or less when redeemed than when purchased. The Funds should not be relied upon as a complete investment program, nor used to play short-term swings in the equity, debt, or currency markets. The Funds are not money market funds and are not appropriate

investments for those whose primary objective is principal stability. A Fund's assets (and therefore, an investment in the Fund) will be subject to all the risks of investing in the financial markets. All investment entails risk. The value of a Fund's portfolio will fluctuate based upon market conditions. Although a Fund may seek to reduce risk by investing in a diversified portfolio, such diversification does not eliminate all risk. In seeking to meet its investment objective(s), each Fund will invest in securities or instruments whose investment characteristics are consistent with the Fund's investment program, but there is no assurance or guarantee that a Fund will achieve its objective(s). The principal investments and investment practices and risks of each Fund are described in its Prospectus; the following provides additional information with respect to certain of those and other investments and investment practices in which the Funds may engage and risks to which the Funds may be exposed.

1

Table of Contents

Fundamental Investment Objectives and Policies of the Funds	3
Description of Additional Investment Securities and Portfolio Techniques	3
Investment Restrictions	72
Disclosure of Portfolio Holdings	75
Trustees and Officers	76
Board Leadership Structure and Standing Board Committees	78
Code of Ethics	79
Shareholder Beneficial Ownership	80
Investment Management and Other Services	81
Portfolio Managers	84
Policies Regarding Broker-Dealers used for Portfolio Transactions	88
Additional Information Regarding Purchases and Redemptions of Fund Shares	89
Taxes	90
Taxation of Fund Distributions	93
Sale or Redemption of Shares	94
Miscellaneous Information	101
Financial Statements	102
Appendix	102

About SCM Trust

The Trust is organized as a Massachusetts business trust organized under the laws of the State of Massachusetts on July 15, 1988. The Funds' principal office is located at 1050 17th Street, Suite `1710, Denver, CO 80265, and their telephone number is 1-800-955- 9988. The Greater China Fund was operated as a closed-end management investment company under the name Taiwan Greater China Fund until October 10, 2011, at which time it was, with shareholder approval, converted into an open-end management investment company. The Trust is not required, nor does it intend, to hold annual shareholder meetings. However, the Trust may hold special meetings for purposes such as electing trustees of the Trust (each a "Trustee" and collectively, the "Trustees"), changing fundamental policies, or approving a new investment management agreement. If in the future the Trust adds funds, you will have equal rights as to voting and to vote separately by fund as to issues affecting only your fund (such as changes in fundamental investment policies and objectives). Your voting rights are not cumulative, which means that the holders of more than 50% of the shares of the Trust voting in any election of Trustees can, if they choose to do so, elect all of the Trustees. Meetings of shareholders may be called by the Trustees in their sole discretion or upon demand of the holders of 10% or more of the outstanding shares of the Trust for the purpose of electing or removing Trustees

The Trust is not required, nor does it intend, to hold annual shareholder meetings. However, the Trust may hold special meetings for a specific Fund or for the Trust as a whole for purposes such as electing Trustees, changing fundamental policies, or approving an investment management agreement. You have equal rights as to voting and to vote separately by Fund as to issues affecting only your Fund (such as changes in fundamental investment policies and objectives). Your voting rights are not cumulative, so that the holders of more than 50% of the shares voting in any election of Trustees can, if they choose to do so, elect the Trustees. Meetings of shareholders may be called by the Trustees in their discretion or upon demand of the holders of 10% or more of the outstanding shares of any Fund for the purpose of electing or removing Trustees.

CCM Partners, LP d/b/a Shelton Capital Management Capital Management serves as Investment Advisor (the "Advisor") to the funds of the Trust.

Fundamental Investment Objectives and Policies of the Funds

The fundamental investment objectives and investment policies of the Funds are set forth in the current Prospectus of the Funds. The following information supplements the information contained in the Prospectus, and each Fund will pursue its investment objective by following the principal investment strategies set out in the Prospectus. Certain Funds may also invest in the following types of assets and/or employ the following investment techniques, as indicated below.

Description of Additional Investment Securities and Portfolio Techniques

Greater China Fund

Small Cap Securities. The Fund may invest in securities of issuers of various sizes. Smaller companies often have limited product lines, markets or financial resources, and they may be dependent upon one or a few key people for management and may lack depth of management. Smaller companies may have less certain growth prospects, and be more sensitive to changing economic conditions than larger, more established companies. The Fund may have more difficulty obtaining information about smaller portfolio companies, or valuing or disposing of their securities, than it would if it focused on larger, more well-known companies. Transaction costs in stocks of smaller capitalization companies may be higher than those of larger capitalization companies. The securities of such companies generally are subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements and may be less liquid than securities of larger, more established companies or the markets in general, and can react differently to political, market and economic developments than more established companies. The Fund may also invest in securities of non-U.S. issuers in the form of American Depositary Receipts (“ADRs”) and International Depositary Receipts (“IDRs”), which are also known as Global Depositary Receipts (“GDRs”). Generally, ADRs in registered form are U.S. dollar-denominated securities designed for use in the U.S. securities markets, which may be converted into an underlying foreign security. ADRs represent the right to receive securities of foreign issuers deposited in a domestic bank or correspondent bank. ADRs do not eliminate all risk inherent in investing in the securities of foreign issuers. The Fund may also invest in European Depositary Receipts ("EDRs"), which are receipts evidencing an arrangement with a European bank similar to that for ADRs and are designed for use in the European securities markets. IDRs and GDRs are similar to ADRs, with the exception that they are usually bearer securities (meaning they entitle the holder to rights under the security merely by holding the security) for investors or traders outside the U.S., and for companies wishing to raise equity capital in securities markets outside the United States. Most IDRs have been used to represent shares although some represent bonds, commercial paper and certificates of deposit. Additionally, some IDRs may be convertible to ADRs, making them particularly useful for arbitrage between markets.

Lending Portfolio Securities. From time to time, the Fund may lend securities (but not in excess of 33 1/3% of its total assets) from its portfolio of investments to brokers, dealers and financial institutions and, in turn, receive collateral in cash or securities believed by the Fund to be equivalent to securities rated investment grade by S&P, Moody’s or Fitch. While the loan is outstanding, the Fund is required to maintain collateral at all times in an amount

equal to at least 105% of the current market value of the securities loaned by the Fund, including any accrued interest or dividends receivable from these securities. Any cash collateral received by the Fund is to be invested in short-term, high quality debt securities, the income from which would increase the return to the Fund. The Fund retains all rights of beneficial ownership as to the loaned portfolio securities, including voting rights and rights to interest or other distributions, and has the right to regain record ownership of loaned securities to exercise such beneficial rights. Such loans are terminable at any time by either the Fund or the borrower. The Fund may be required to pay administrative, finders' and custodial fees to persons unaffiliated with the Fund in connection with the arranging of such loans and, if permitted under the 1940 Act or pursuant to an exemptive order thereunder, such fees may be paid to persons affiliated with the Fund. In the event of a default by the borrower, the Fund may suffer time delays and incur costs or possible losses in connection with the Fund's disposition of the collateral. The Advisor will review and monitor the creditworthiness of such borrowers on an ongoing basis if it elects to lend securities of the Fund.

Futures Contracts. The Fund may enter into agreements to "buy" or "sell" a stock index at a fixed price at a specified date. No stock actually changes hands under these contracts; instead, changes in the underlying index's value are settled in cash. The cash settlement amounts are based on the difference between the index's current value and the value contemplated by the contract. An option on a stock index futures contract is an agreement to buy or sell an index futures contract; that is, exercise of the option results in ownership of a position in a futures contract. Most stock index futures are based on broad-based common stock indices. Additionally, the Fund may take advantage of opportunities in the area of futures contracts and options on futures contracts and any other derivative investments which are not presently contemplated for use by the Fund or which are not currently available but which may be developed, to the extent such opportunities are both consistent with the Fund's investment objective and legally permissible for the Fund. Because the value of index futures depends primarily on the value of their underlying indices, the performance of broad-based contracts will generally reflect broad changes in common stock prices. The Fund's investments may be more or less heavily weighted in securities of particular types of issuers, or securities of issuers in particular industries, than the indexes underlying its index futures positions. Therefore, while the Fund's index futures positions should provide exposure to changes in value of the underlying indexes (or protection against declines in their value in the case of hedging transactions), it is likely that, in the case of hedging transactions, the price changes of the Fund's index futures positions will not match the price changes of the Fund's other investments. Other factors that could affect the correlation of the Fund's index futures positions with its other investments are discussed below.

Futures Margin Payments. Both the purchaser and seller of a futures contract are required to deposit "initial margin" with a futures broker (known as a "futures commission merchant," or "FCM"), when the contract is entered into. Initial margin deposits are equal to a percentage of the contract's value, as set by the exchange where the contract is traded, and may be maintained in cash or high quality liquid securities. If the value of either party's position declines, that party will be required to make additional "variation margin" payments to settle the change in value on a daily basis. The party that has a gain may be entitled to receive all or a portion of this amount. Initial and variation margin payments are similar to good faith deposits or performance bonds, unlike margin extended by a securities broker, and initial and variation margin payments do not constitute purchasing securities on margin for purposes of the Fund's investment limitations. In the event of the bankruptcy of a FCM that holds margin on behalf of the Fund, the Fund may be entitled to a return of margin owed to it only in proportion to the amount received by the FCM's other customers. The Advisor will attempt to minimize this risk by monitoring the creditworthiness of the FCMs with which the Fund does business.

Limitations on Futures Transactions. The Fund has filed a notice of eligibility for exclusion from the definition of the term "commodity pool operator" with the National Futures Association, which regulates trading in the futures markets. Pursuant to Rule 4.5 of the regulations promulgated under the Commodity Exchange Act, as amended, each Fund may use futures contracts for bona fide hedging purposes within the meaning of U.S. Commodities Futures Trading Commission ("CFTC") regulations; provided, however, that, with respect to positions in futures contracts which are not used for bona fide hedging purposes within the meaning of CFTC regulations, the aggregate initial margin required to establish such position will not exceed five percent of the liquidation value of the Fund's portfolio, after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such contracts into which the Fund has entered. The Advisor also intends to follow certain other limitations on the Fund's futures activities. Under normal conditions, the Fund will not enter into any futures contract if, as a result, the sum of (i) the current value of assets hedged in the case of strategies involving the sale of securities, and (ii) the current value of the indexes or other instruments underlying the Fund's other futures positions would exceed 20% of the Fund's total assets. In addition, the Fund does not intend to enter into futures contracts that are not traded on exchanges or boards of trade. The above limitations on the Fund's investments in futures contracts, and the Fund’s policies regarding futures contracts discussed elsewhere in this statement of additional information, are not fundamental policies and may be changed as regulatory agencies permit. Non-fundamental policies may be changed without shareholder approval. Various exchanges and regulatory authorities have undertaken reviews of futures trading in light of market volatility. Among the possible actions that have been presented are proposals to adopt new or more stringent daily price fluctuation limits for futures transactions, and proposals to increase the margin requirements for various types of strategies. It is impossible to predict what actions, if any, will result from these reviews at this time. The Fund may purchase futures contracts in order to attempt to remain fully invested in equities. For example, if the Fund had cash and short-term securities on hand that it wished to invest in common stocks, but at the same time it wished to maintain a highly liquid position in order to be prepared to meet redemption requests or other obligations, it could purchase an index futures contract in order to approximate the activity of the index with that portion of its portfolio. The Fund may also purchase futures contracts as an alternative to purchasing actual securities. For example, if the Fund intended to purchase stocks but had not yet done so, it could purchase a futures contract in order to participate in the index's activity while deciding on particular investments. This strategy is sometimes known as an anticipatory hedge. In these strategies the Fund would use futures contracts to attempt to achieve an overall return -- whether positive or negative -- similar to the return from the stocks included in the underlying index, while taking advantage of potentially greater liquidity than futures contracts may offer. Although the Fund would hold cash and liquid debt securities in a segregated account with a value sufficient to cover its open futures obligations, the segregated assets would be available to the Fund immediately upon closing out the futures position, while settlement of securities transactions can take several days. When the Fund wishes to sell securities, it may sell index futures contracts to hedge against stock market declines until the sale can be completed. For example, if the Advisor anticipated a decline in common stock prices, at a time when the Fund

anticipated selling common stocks, it could sell a futures contract in order to lock in current market prices. If stock prices subsequently fell, the futures contract's value would be expected to rise and offset all or a portion of the anticipated loss in the common stocks the Fund had hedged in anticipation of selling them. Of course, if prices subsequently rose, the futures contract's value could be expected to fall and offset all or a portion of any gains from those securities. The success of this type of strategy depends to a great extent on the degree of correlation between the index futures contract and the securities hedged.

Asset Coverage for Futures Positions. The Fund will comply with guidelines established by the Securities Exchange Commission (the "SEC") with respect to coverage of futures strategies by mutual funds, and if the guidelines so require will set aside cash and/or other appropriate liquid assets (e.g., U.S. equities, U.S. Government securities or other high grade debt obligations) in a segregated custodial account in the amount prescribed. Securities held in a segregated account cannot be sold while the futures or option strategy is outstanding, unless they are replaced with other suitable assets. As a result, there is a possibility that segregation of a large percentage of the Fund's assets could impede portfolio management or the Fund's ability to meet redemption requests or other current obligations.

Correlation of Price Changes. As noted above, price changes of the Fund's futures positions may not be perfectly correlated with price changes of its other investments because of differences between the underlying indexes and the types of securities the Fund invests in. For example, if the Fund sold a broad-based index futures contract to hedge against a stock market decline while the Fund completed a sale of specific securities in its portfolio, it is possible that the price of the securities could move differently from the broad market average represented by the index futures contract, resulting in an imperfect hedge which could affect the correlation between the Fund's return and that of the respective benchmark index. In the case of an index futures contract purchased by the Fund either in anticipation of actual stock purchases or in an effort to be fully invested, failure of the contract to track its index accurately could hinder the Fund in the achievement of its objective. Futures prices can also diverge from the prices of their underlying indexes. Futures prices are affected by such factors as current and anticipated short-term interest rates, changes in volatility of the underlying index, and the time remaining until expiration of the contract, which may not affect security prices the same way. Imperfect correlation may also result from differing levels of demand in the futures markets and the securities markets, from structural differences in how futures and securities are traded, or from imposition of daily price fluctuation limits for futures contracts. The Fund may sell futures contracts with a greater or lesser value than the securities it wishes to hedge in order to attempt to compensate for differences in historical volatility between the futures contract and the securities, although this may not be successful in all cases.

Liquidity of Futures Contracts. Because futures contracts are generally settled within a day from the date they are closed out, compared with a settlement period of up to five days for some types of securities, the futures markets can provide superior liquidity to the securities markets in many cases. Nevertheless, there is no assurance a liquid secondary market will exist for any particular futures contract at any particular time. In addition, futures exchanges may establish daily price fluctuation limits for futures contracts, and may halt trading if a contract's price moves upward or downward more than the limit in a given day. On volatile trading days when the price fluctuation limit is reached, it may be impossible for the Fund to enter into new positions or close out existing positions. Trading in futures can also be halted if trading in the underlying securities is halted. If the secondary market for a futures contract is not liquid because of price fluctuation limits or otherwise, it would prevent prompt liquidation of unfavorable futures positions, and potentially could require the Fund to continue to hold a futures position until the delivery date regardless of potential consequences. If the Fund must continue to hold a futures position, its access to other assets held to cover the position could also be impaired.

American Depository Receipts (ADRs), European Depository Receipts (EDRs) and Global Depository Receipts (GDRs) (also known as International Depository Receipts ("IDRs"). The Fund may invest in sponsored and unsponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs. Such investments may subject the Fund to significant investment risks that are different than domestic markets. Unsponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs may involve additional risks in that they are organized without the cooperation of the issuer of the underlying securities. As a result, available information

concerning the issuer may not be as current as that for sponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs. The value of securities denominated in or indexed to foreign currencies and of dividends and interest from such securities can change significantly when foreign currencies strengthen or weaken relative to the U.S. dollar. Foreign securities markets generally have less trading volume and less liquidity than the U.S. markets, and prices on some foreign securities can be highly volatile. In general ADRs, in registered form, are denominated in U.S. dollars and are designated for use in the U.S. securities markets, while EDRs and GDRs (also known as IDRs) in bearer form, may be denominated in other currencies and are designed for use in European markets and global markets, respectively. Many foreign countries lack uniform accounting and disclosure standards comparable to those applicable to U.S. companies, and it may seem more difficult to obtain reliable information regarding an issuer's financial conditions and operations. Settlement of transaction in some foreign markets may be delayed or may be less frequent than in the U.S., which could affect the liquidity of the Fund's investments. In addition, the cost of foreign investing, including withholding taxes, brokerage commissions and custodial costs are generally higher than for U.S. investments. Foreign markets may offer less protection to investors than U.S. markets. Foreign issuers, brokers, and securities markets may be subject to less government supervision. Foreign security trading practices, including those involving the release of assets in advance of payment, may involve increased risks in the event of a failed trade or the insolvency of the broker-dealer, which may result in substantial delays in settlement. It may also be more difficult to enforce legal rights in foreign countries. Investing abroad also involves different political and economic risks. Foreign investments may be affected by actions of foreign governments adverse to the interests of U.S. investors, including the possibility of expropriation or nationalization of assets, confiscatory taxation, restriction on U.S. investments or on the ability to repatriate assets or convert currency into U.S. dollars, or other government intervention. There may be a greater possibility of default by foreign governments or foreign government sponsored enterprises. Investments in foreign countries also involve the risk of local political, economic, or social instability, military action or unrest, or adverse diplomatic developments. There is no assurance that the Advisor will be able to anticipate these potential events or counter their effects.

Options on Securities, Securities Indices and Currencies. The Fund may purchase put and call options on securities in which it has invested, on foreign currencies represented in its portfolios and on any securities index based in whole or in part on securities in which the Fund may invest. In an effort to minimize risks, the Fund usually will not use options for speculative purposes or as leverage. The Fund may purchase call options in anticipation of an increase in the market value of securities of the type in which it may invest or a positive change in the currency in which such securities are denominated. The purchase of a call option would entitle the Fund, in return for the premium paid, to purchase specified securities or a specified amount of a foreign currency at a specified price during the option period. The Fund may purchase and sell options traded on U.S. and foreign exchanges. Although the Fund will generally purchase only those options for which there appears to be an active secondary market, there can be no assurance that a liquid secondary market on an exchange will exist for any particular option or at any particular time. For some options, no secondary market on an exchange may exist. In such event, it might not be possible to effect closing transactions in particular options, with the result that the Fund would have to exercise its options in order to realize any profit and would incur transaction costs upon the purchase or sale of the underlying securities. Secondary markets on an exchange may not exist or may be illiquid for a variety of reasons including: (i) insufficient trading interest in certain options; (ii) restrictions on opening transactions or closing transactions imposed by an exchange; (iii) trading halts, suspensions or other restrictions may be imposed with respect to particular classes or series of options; (iv) unusual or unforeseen circumstances which interrupt normal operations on an exchange; (v) inadequate facilities of an exchange or the Options Clearing Corporation (the "OCC") to handle current trading volume at all times; or (vi) discontinuance in the future by one or more exchanges for economic or other reasons, of trading of options (or of a particular class or series of options), in which event the secondary market on that exchange (or in that class or series of options) would cease to exist, although outstanding options on that exchange that had been issued by the OCC as a result of trades on that exchange would continue to be exercisable in accordance with their terms. There is no assurance that higher than anticipated trading activity or other unforeseen events might not, at times, render certain of the facilities of the OCC inadequate, and result in the institution by an exchange of special procedures that may interfere with the timely execution of the Fund's orders.

Securities of Other Investment Companies – Closed End Funds. The Fund may purchase closed-end funds that invest in foreign securities. Unlike open-end investment companies, closed-end funds issue a fixed number of shares that trade on major stock exchanges or over the counter. Additionally, closed-end funds do not stand ready to issue or redeem on a continuous basis. Closed-end funds often sell at a discount to net asset value. Applicable provisions of the 1940 Act require that the Fund limit its investments so that, as determined immediately after a securities purchase is made: (a) not more than 10% of the value of that Fund's total assets will be invested in the aggregate in securities of investment companies as a group; and (b) either (i) that Fund and affiliated persons of that Fund not own together more than 3% of the total outstanding shares of any one investment company at the time of purchase (and that all shares of the investment company held by that Fund in excess of 1% of the company's total outstanding shares be deemed illiquid), or (ii) that Fund not invest more than 5% of its total assets in any one investment company and the investment not represent more than 3% of the total outstanding voting stock of the investment company at the time of purchase. As a shareholder in an investment company, the Fund bears its ratable share of that investment company's expenses, including advisory and administration fees, resulting in an additional layer of management fees and expenses for shareholders. This duplication of expenses would occur regardless of the type of investment company, i.e., open-end (mutual fund) or closed-end.

BDC Income Fund and Real Estate Income Fund

Below Investment Grade Securities. The Funds may invest in securities that are rated below investment grade. Securities rated below investment grade are regarded as having predominately speculative characteristics with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay interest and repay principal, and these bonds are commonly referred to as ''high-yield'' or ''junk'' securities. These securities are subject to a greater risk of default. The prices of these lower-grade securities are more sensitive to negative developments, such as a decline in the issuer's revenues or a general economic downturn, than are the prices of higher-grade securities. Lower-grade securities tend to be less liquid than investment-grade securities. The market values of lower-grade securities tend to be more volatile than investment grade securities. A security will be considered to be below investment grade if it is rated as such by one nationally recognized statistical rating organization (''NRSRO'') (for example, below Baa3 or BBB- by Moody's Investors Services, Inc. (''Moody's'') or Standard & Poor's Ratings Services (''S&P'')) or, if unrated, are judged to be below investment grade by the Advisor. Although a company's senior debt rating may be, for example, BBB-, an underlying security issued by such company in which a Fund invests may have a lower rating. See Appendix A for a description of certain ratings. Lower-rated securities, or equivalent unrated securities, may be considered speculative with respect to the issuer's continuing ability to make principal and interest payments. Analysis of the creditworthiness of issuers of lower-rated securities may be more complex than for issuers of higher-quality debt securities, and a Fund's ability to achieve its investment objective may, to the extent the Fund is invested in lower-rated securities, be more dependent upon such creditworthiness analysis than would be the case if the Fund were investing in higher-quality securities. An issuer of these securities has a currently identifiable vulnerability to default and the issuer may be in default or there may be present elements of danger with respect to principal or interest. The secondary markets in which lower-rated securities are traded may be less liquid than the market for higher-grade securities. Less liquidity in the secondary trading markets could adversely affect the price at which a Fund could sell a particular lower-rated security when necessary to meet liquidity needs or in response to a specific economic event, such as a deterioration in the creditworthiness of the issuer, and could adversely affect and cause large fluctuations in the net asset value (''NAV'') of the Fund's shares. Adverse publicity and investor perceptions may decrease the values and liquidity of high-yield securities. It is reasonable to expect that any adverse economic conditions could disrupt the market for lower-rated securities, have an adverse impact on the value of those securities or adversely affect the ability of the issuers of those securities to repay principal or interest on those securities. New laws and proposed new laws may adversely impact the market for lower-rated securities.

Borrowing and Other Forms of Leverage. The Funds may borrow money to the extent permitted by their investment policies and applicable law. When a Fund borrows money or otherwise leverages its portfolio, the value of an investment in the Fund will be more volatile and other investment risks will tend to be compounded. This is because leverage tends to exaggerate the effect of any increase or decrease in the value of the Fund's holdings. In addition to borrowing money from banks, the Funds may engage in certain other investment transactions that may be viewed as forms of financial leverage (*e.g.*, entering into reverse repurchase agreements or dollar rolls; investing collateral from loans of portfolio securities; entering into when-issued, delayed-delivery or forward-commitment transactions; or using derivatives such as swaps, futures, forwards or options).

Cash Reserves. The Funds' cash reserves will be held to provide sufficient flexibility to take advantage of new opportunities for investments and for other cash needs. If the Advisor has difficulty finding an adequate number of undervalued equity securities, all or any portion of the Funds' assets may also be invested temporarily in money market instruments. Money market instruments in which the Funds may invest its cash reserves may consist of obligations

issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government or its agencies or instrumentalities, commercial paper rated by any NRSRO (such as Moody's or S&P), certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances issued by domestic banks having total assets in excess of one billion dollars or money market mutual funds.

Collateralized Mortgage Obligations (''CMOs'') and Multiclass Pass-Through Securities. The Funds may invest in CMOs. CMOs are debt obligations collateralized by mortgage loans or mortgage pass-through securities. Typically, CMOs are collateralized by Government National Mortgage Association (''Ginnie Mae''), Federal National Mortgage Association (''Fannie Mae'') or Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation (''Freddie Mac'') certificates, but also may be collateralized by whole loans or private mortgage pass-through securities (such collateral is collectively hereinafter referred to as ''Mortgage Assets''). Mortgage Assets may be collateralized by commercial or residential uses. Multiclass pass-through securities are equity interests in a trust composed of Mortgage Assets. Payments of principal of and interest on the Mortgage Assets, and any reinvestment income thereon, may require the Funds to pay debt service on the CMOs or make scheduled distributions on the multiclass pass-through securities. CMOs may be issued by Federal Agencies, or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks and special purpose subsidiaries of the foregoing. The issuer of a series of mortgage pass-through securities may elect to be treated as a Real Estate Mortgage Investment Conduit (''REMIC''). REMICs include governmental and/or private entities that issue a fixed pool of mortgages secured by an interest in real property. REMICs are similar to CMOs in that they issue multiple classes of securities, but unlike CMOs, which are required to be structured as debt securities, REMICs may be structured as indirect ownership interests in the underlying assets of the REMICs themselves. Although CMOs and REMICs differ in certain respects, characteristics of CMOs described below apply in most cases to REMICs as well. In a CMO, a series of bonds or certificates is issued in multiple classes. Each class of CMOs, often referred to as a ''tranche,'' is issued at a specific fixed or floating coupon rate and has a stated maturity or final distribution date. Principal prepayments on the Mortgage Assets may cause the CMOs to be retired substantially earlier than their stated maturities or final distribution dates. Interest is paid or accrues on all classes of the CMOs on a monthly, quarterly or semiannual basis. Certain CMOs may have variable or floating interest rates and others may be Stripped Mortgage Securities. For more information on Stripped Mortgage Securities, see ''Stripped Mortgage Securities'' below. The principal of and interest on the Mortgage Assets may be allocated among the several classes of a CMO series in a number of different ways. Generally, the purpose of the allocation of the cash flow of a CMO to the various classes is to obtain a more predictable cash flow to certain of the individual tranches than exists with the underlying collateral of the CMO. As a general rule, the more predictable the cash flow is on a CMO tranche, the lower the anticipated yield will be on that tranche at the time of issuance relative to prevailing market yields on other mortgage-backed securities. As part of the process of creating more predictable cash flows on most of the tranches in a series of CMOs, one or more tranches generally must be created that absorb most of the volatility in the cash flows on the underlying mortgage loans. The yields on these tranches are generally higher than prevailing market yields on mortgage-backed securities with similar maturities. As a result of the uncertainty of the cash flows of these tranches, the market prices of and yield on these tranches generally are more volatile.

CMBS. The Funds may invest in CMBS, which are bonds that evidence interests in, or are secured by, a single commercial mortgage loan or a pool of commercial mortgage loans. Accordingly, the CMBS are subject to all the risks of the underlying mortgage loans. The value of CMBS may also change due to shifts in the market's perception of issuers and regulatory or tax changes adversely affecting the mortgage securities markets as a whole. In addition, CMBS are subject to the credit risk associated with the performance of the underlying mortgage properties, although this can sometimes be reduced by third-party guarantees or other forms of credit support.

Derivatives Transactions. The Funds may purchase and sell financial futures contracts and options on such contracts. A financial futures contract is an agreement to buy or sell a specific security or financial instrument at a particular price on a stipulated future date. Although some financial futures contracts call for making or taking delivery of the underlying securities or instruments, in most cases these obligations are closed out before the settlement date. The

closing of a contractual obligation may be accomplished by purchasing or selling an identical offsetting futures contract. Other financial futures contracts by their terms call for cash settlements. The Funds may also buy and sell index futures contracts with respect to any stock or bond index traded on a recognized stock exchange or board of trade. An index futures contract is a contract to buy or sell units of an index on a specified future date at a price agreed upon when the contract is made. The stock index futures contract specifies that no delivery of the actual stocks making up the index will take place. Instead, settlement in cash must occur upon the termination of the contract, with the settlement being the difference between the contract price and the actual level of the stock index at the expiration of the contract. In addition, the Funds may enter into foreign currency futures contracts, as described below under ‘‘Foreign Currency and Currency Hedging Transactions.’’ When a Fund purchases a futures contract, an amount of cash or liquid portfolio securities generally equal to the settlement price less any margin deposit will be designated as segregated by the Fund’s custodian. When writing a futures contract, the Fund will maintain with its custodian similar liquid assets that, when added to the amounts deposited with a futures commission merchant or broker as margin, are equal to the market value of the instruments underlying the contract. Alternatively, the Fund may ‘‘cover’’ its position by owning the instruments underlying the contract (or, in the case of an index futures contract, a portfolio with a volatility substantially similar to that of the index on which the futures contract is based), or holding a call option permitting the Fund to purchase the same futures contract at a price no higher than the price of the contract written by the Fund (or at a higher price if the difference is maintained in liquid assets with the Fund’s custodian). Each Fund will be authorized to use financial futures contracts and related options for hedging and non-hedging purposes. The Funds may lose the expected benefit of transactions in financial contracts if currency exchange rates or securities prices change in an unanticipated manner. Such unanticipated changes in currency exchange rates or securities prices may also result in poorer overall performance than if the Funds had not entered into any futures transactions. When purchasing stocks or bonds, the buyer acquires ownership in the security, however, buyers of futures contracts are not entitled to ownership of the underlying commodity until and unless they decide to accept delivery at expiration of the contract. In practice, delivery of the underlying commodity to satisfy a futures contract rarely occurs because most futures traders use the liquidity of the central marketplace to sell their futures contract before expiration.

Price Limits. Some (not all exchanges have price change limits) commodity futures exchanges impose on each commodity futures contract traded on that exchange a maximum permissible price movement for each trading session. If the maximum permissible price movement is achieved on any trading day, no more trades may be executed above (or below, if the price has moved downward) that limit. If a Fund wishes to execute a trade outside the daily permissible price movement, it would be prevented from doing so by exchange rules, and would have to wait for another trading session to execute its transaction.

Price Volatility. Despite the daily price limits on various futures exchanges, the price volatility of commodity futures contracts has been historically greater than that for traditional securities such as stocks and bonds. To the extent that a Fund invests in commodity futures contracts, the assets of the Fund, and therefore the prices of Fund shares, may be subject to greater volatility.

Marking-to-Market Futures Positions. The futures clearinghouse marks every futures contract to market at the end of each trading day to ensure that the outstanding futures obligations are limited to the mark-to-market change in price from one day for any given futures contract. This process of marking-to-market is designed to prevent losses from accumulating in any futures account. Therefore, if a Fund's futures positions have declined in value, the Fund may be required to post additional margin to cover this decline. Alternatively, if the Fund's futures positions have increased in value, this increase will be credited to the Fund's account. The Funds may also purchase and sell commodity futures contracts and can hold substantial positions in such contracts. The Funds' investments in commodity futures contracts and related instruments may involve substantial risks. Some of the special characteristics and risks of these investments are described below. Commodity futures contracts are agreements between two parties. One party agrees to buy a commodity from the other party at a later date at a price and quantity agreed-upon when the contract is made. Commodity futures contracts are traded on futures exchanges. These futures exchanges offer a central marketplace in which to transact futures contracts, a clearing corporation to process trades, a standardization of expiration dates and contract sizes and the availability of a secondary market. Futures markets also specify the terms and conditions of delivery as well as the maximum permissible price movement during a trading session. Additionally, the commodity futures exchanges may have position limit rules that limit the amount of futures contracts that any one party may hold in a particular commodity at any point in time. These position limit rules are designed to prevent any one participant from controlling a significant portion of the market. In the commodity futures markets, the exchange clearing corporation takes the other side in all transactions, either buying or selling directly to the market participants. The clearinghouse acts as the counterparty to all exchange-traded futures contracts. That is, the Fund's obligation is to the clearinghouse, and the Fund will look to the clearinghouse to satisfy the Fund's rights under the futures contract.

Options on Securities and Stock Indexes. Each Fund may write covered call and put options and purchase call and put options on securities, stock indices or futures contracts that are traded on U.S. exchanges. Each Fund may also enter into over-the-counter put and call options on securities and baskets of securities, indexes and other financial instruments.

An option is a contract that gives the purchaser of the option, in return for the premium paid, the right to buy (in the case of a call option) a specified security or futures contract, as applicable, or to sell (in the case of a put option) a specified security from or to the writer of the option at a designated price during the term of the option. An option on a

securities index gives the purchaser of the option, in return for the premium paid, the right to receive from the seller cash equal to the difference between the closing price of the index and the exercise price of the option. Each Fund may write a call or put option only if the option is ‘‘covered.’’ A call option on a security written by a Fund is covered if the Fund owns the underlying security covered by the call or has an absolute and immediate right to acquire that security without additional cash consideration (or for additional cash consideration held in a segregated account by its custodian) upon conversion or exchange of other securities held in its portfolio. A call option on a security is also covered if the Fund owns a call option on the same security and in the same principal amount as the call option written where the exercise price of the call option held (a) is equal to or less than the exercise price of the call option written or (b) is greater than the exercise price of the call option written if the difference is maintained by the Fund in cash or liquid portfolio securities in a segregated account with its custodian. A put option on a security written by a Fund is ‘‘covered’’ if the Fund maintains similar liquid assets with a value equal to the exercise price designated as segregated at its custodian, or else owns a put option on the same security and in the same principal amount as the put option written where the exercise price of the put option held is equal to or greater than the exercise price of the put option written. The value of the underlying securities on which options may be written at any one time will not exceed 25% of the total assets of the Fund, and the Fund will not purchase put or call options if the aggregate premium paid for such options would exceed 5% of its total assets at the time of purchase.

Each Fund will cover call options on stock indices by owning securities whose price changes, in the opinion of the Advisor, are expected to be similar to those of the index, or in such other manner as may be in accordance with the rules of the exchange on which the option is traded and applicable laws and regulations. Nevertheless, where a Fund covers a call option on a stock index through ownership of securities, such securities may not match the composition of the index. In that event, the Fund will not be fully covered and could be subject to risk of loss in the event of adverse changes in the value of the index. The Fund will cover put options on stock indices by segregating assets equal to the option's exercise price, or in such other manner as may be in accordance with the rules of the exchange on which the option is traded and applicable laws and regulations.

Each Fund will receive a premium for writing a put or call option, which will increase the Fund's gross income in the event the option expires unexercised or is closed out at a profit. If the value of a security or an index on which the Fund has written a call option falls or remains the same, the Fund will realize a profit in the form of the premium received (less transaction costs) that could offset all or a portion of any decline in the value of any portfolio securities underlying the option. A rise in the value of the security or index underlying a call option written by a Fund, exposes the Fund to possible loss or loss of opportunity to realize appreciation in the value of any portfolio securities underlying or otherwise related to the call option. By writing a put option, the Fund assumes the risk of a decline in the underlying security or index. To the extent that the price changes of any portfolio securities being hedged correlate with changes in the value of the underlying security or index, writing put options on securities or indices will increase the Fund's losses in the event of a market decline, although such losses will be offset in part by the premium received for writing the option.

Each Fund may also purchase put options to hedge its investments against a decline in value. By purchasing a put option, the Fund will seek to offset a decline in the value of the portfolio securities being hedged through appreciation of the put option. If the value of the Fund's investments does not decline as anticipated, the Fund's loss will be limited to the premium paid for the option plus related transaction costs. The success of this strategy will depend, in part, on the accuracy of the correlation between the changes in value of the underlying security or index and the changes in value of the Fund's security holdings being hedged.

Each Fund may purchase call options on individual securities to hedge against an increase in the price of securities that the Fund anticipates purchasing in the future. Similarly, each Fund may purchase call options to attempt to reduce the risk of missing a broad market advance, or an advance in an industry or market segment, at a time when the Fund holds uninvested cash or short-term debt securities awaiting investment. When purchasing call options, the Fund will bear the risk of losing all or a portion of the premium paid if the value of the underlying security or index does not rise.

There can be no assurance that a liquid market will exist when the Fund seeks to close out an option position, and for certain options not on an exchange no market usually exists. Trading could be interrupted, for example, because of supply and demand imbalances arising from a lack of either buyers or sellers, or the options exchange could suspend trading after the price has risen or fallen more than the maximum specified by the exchange. Although the Fund may be able to offset to some extent any adverse effects of being unable to liquidate an option position, the Fund may experience losses in some cases as a result of such inability.

10

Foreign Currency Transactions and Currency Hedging Transactions. In order to hedge against foreign currency exchange rate risks from adverse changes in the relationship between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies (including to hedge against anticipated future changes which otherwise might adversely affect the prices of securities that the Fund intends to purchase at a later date), each Fund may enter into forward foreign currency exchange contracts (forward contracts), foreign currency futures contracts (foreign currency futures), and foreign currency swap agreements (foreign currency swaps), as well as purchase put or call options on foreign currencies, as described below.

A forward currency contract is an obligation to purchase or sell a specific currency for an agreed price on a future date that is individually negotiated and privately traded by currency traders and their customers. A foreign currency future is an exchange-traded contract for the purchase or sale of a specified foreign currency at a specified price at a future date. A foreign currency swap is an agreement between two parties to exchange principal and interest payments on a loan made in one currency for principal and interest payments of a loan of equal value in another currency. Each Fund may enter into a foreign currency forward contract, foreign currency futures contract or foreign currency swap or purchase a currency option, for example, when it enters into a contract for the purchase or sale of a security denominated in a foreign currency or expects to receive a dividend or interest payment on a portfolio holding, in order to ‘‘lock in’’ the U.S. dollar value of the security or payment. In addition, each Fund may enter into a foreign currency forward contract, futures contract or swap or purchase a currency option in respect of a currency which acts as a proxy for a currency in which the Fund’s portfolio holdings or anticipated holdings are denominated. This second investment practice is generally referred to as ‘‘cross-hedging.’’ Because in connection with the Fund’s foreign currency transactions an amount of the Fund’s assets equal to the amount of the Fund’s current commitment will be segregated to be used to pay for the commitment, the Fund will always have cash or other liquid assets available that are sufficient to cover any commitments under these transactions. The segregated assets will be marked-to-market on a daily basis.

Each Fund may enter into a forward contract to attempt to minimize the risk to the Fund from adverse changes in the relationship between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies. Forward contracts may limit potential gain from a positive change in the relationship between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies. Unanticipated changes in currency prices may result in poorer overall performance for the Fund than if it had not engaged in such contracts.

Each Fund may enter into exchange-traded foreign currency futures for the purchase or sale for future delivery of foreign currencies. U.S. exchange-traded futures are regulated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission. This investment technique will be used only to hedge against anticipated future changes in exchange rates which otherwise might adversely affect the value of the Fund’s portfolio securities or adversely affect the prices of securities that the Fund intends to purchase at a later date.

Each Fund may enter into foreign currency swaps to shift its currency exposure from one currency to another currency. Each Fund may purchase and write put and call options on foreign currencies for the purpose of protecting against declines in the dollar value of foreign portfolio securities and against increases in the U.S. dollar cost of foreign securities to be acquired. As is the case with other kinds of options, however, the writing of an option on foreign currency will constitute only a partial hedge, up to the amount of the premium received, and the Fund could be required to purchase or sell foreign currencies at disadvantageous exchange rates, thereby incurring losses. The

purchase of an option on foreign currency may constitute an effective hedge against fluctuation in exchange rates although, in the event of rate movements adverse to the Fund's position, the Fund may forfeit the entire amount of the premium plus related transaction costs.

The successful use of foreign currency transactions will usually depend on the Advisor's ability to forecast currency exchange rate movements correctly. Should exchange rates move in an unexpected manner, the Fund may not achieve the anticipated benefits of forward contracts, foreign currency futures or may realize losses.

Swap Transactions. Swap agreements are counter contracts entered into primarily by institutional investors that agree to exchange the returns (or differentials in rates of return) earned or realized on particular predetermined investments or instruments. The gross returns to be exchanged or ''swapped'' between the parties are generally calculated with respect to a ''notional amount,'' *i.e*., the return on or increase in value of a particular dollar amount invested at a particular interest rate, in a particular foreign currency, or in a ''basket'' of credit default swaps or securities representing a particular index. The ''notional amount'' of the swap agreement is only used as a basis upon which to calculate the obligations that the parties to a swap agreement have agreed to exchange.

Swap agreements will tend to shift investment exposure from one type of investment to another. For example, if a Fund agreed to exchange payments in U.S. dollars for payments in a foreign currency, the swap agreement would tend to decrease the Fund's exposure to U.S. interest rates and increase its exposure to foreign currency and interest rates. Depending on how they are used, swap agreements may increase or decrease the overall volatility of the Fund's investments and its share price and yield. Caps and floors have an effect similar to buying or writing options.

Most swap agreements entered into are cash settled and calculate the obligations of the parties to the agreement on a ''net basis.'' Thus, a Fund's current obligations (or rights) under a swap agreement generally will be equal only to the net amount to be paid or received under the agreement based on the relative values of the positions held by each party to the agreement (the ''net amount''). The Fund's current obligations under a swap agreement will be accrued daily (offset against any amounts owed to the Fund) and any accrued but unpaid net amounts owed to a swap counterparty will be covered by the segregation of permissible liquid assets of the Fund.

Specific swap agreements include foreign currency swaps; index swaps; interest rate swaps (including interest rate locks, caps, floors and collars); credit default swaps; and total return swaps (including equity swaps).

Interest Rate Swap Transactions. An interest rate swap agreement involves the exchange of cash flows based on interest rate specifications and a specified principal amount, often a fixed payment for a floating payment that is linked to an interest rate. In an interest rate cap one party receives payments at the end of each period in which a specified interest rate on a specified principal amount exceeds an agreed rate; conversely, in an interest rate floor one party may receive payments if a specified interest rate on a specified principal amount falls below an agreed rate. Interest rate collars involve selling a cap and purchasing a floor, or vice versa, to protect the Fund against interest rate movements exceeding given minimum or maximum levels.

Credit Default Swap Transactions. Credit default swap agreements and similar agreements may have as reference obligations debt securities that are or are not currently held by either Fund. The protection ''buyer'' in a credit default contract may be obligated to pay the protection ''seller'' an up-front payment or a periodic stream of payments over the term of the contract provided generally that no credit event on a reference obligation has occurred. If a credit event occurs, the seller generally must pay the buyer the ''par value'' (full notional value) of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity described in the swap, or the seller may be required to deliver the related net cash amount, if the swap is cash settled.

Total Return Swap Transactions. In a total return or ''equity'' swap agreement one party makes payments based on a set rate, either fixed or variable, while the other party makes payments based on the return of an underlying asset, which includes both the income it generates and any capital gains. The underlying reference asset of a total return swap may include an individual security, an equity index, loans or bonds.

Commodity Swap Transactions. Each Fund may invest in total return swaps to gain exposure to specific commodities or the overall commodity markets. A total return commodity swap is an agreement to make payments of the price appreciation from a specified commodity, basket of commodities or commodity index during the specified period, in return for payments equal to a fixed or floating rate of interest or the price appreciation from another specified commodity, basket of commodities or commodity index. Alternatively, a total return swap can be structured so that one party will make payments to the other party if the value of the relevant commodity, basket of commodities or commodity index increases, but receive payments from the other party if the value of that commodity, basket of commodities or commodity index decreases. If the commodity swap is for one period, the Fund will pay a fixed fee, established at the outset of the swap. Each Fund may enter into exchanges for risk, in which a position in a futures contract is exchanged for an over-the-counter swap, (or an over-the-counter swap is exchanged for a futures contract) with a commodity broker in accordance with exchange rules.

Credit Derivatives. Credit derivative transactions include those involving default price risk derivatives and market spread derivatives. Default price risk derivatives are linked to the price of reference securities or loans after a default by the issuer or borrower, respectively. Market spread derivatives are based on the risk that changes in market factors, such as credit spreads, can cause a decline in the value of a security, loan or index. There are three basic transactional forms for credit derivatives: swaps, options and structured instruments. The use of credit derivatives is a highly specialized activity which involves strategies and risks different from those associated with ordinary portfolio security transactions. The risk of loss in a credit derivative transaction varies with the form of the transaction. For example, if a Fund purchases a default option on a security, and if no default occurs with respect to the security, the Fund's loss is limited to the premium it paid for the default option. In contrast, if there is a default by the grantor of a default option, the Fund's loss will include both the premium it paid for the option and the decline in value of the underlying security that the default option hedged. If a Fund is a buyer in a credit default swap agreement and no credit event occurs, the Fund recovers nothing if the swap is held through its termination date. However, if a credit event occurs, the Fund may elect to receive the full notional value of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity that may have little or no value. As a seller, a Fund generally receives an up-front payment or a fixed rate of income throughout the term of the swap, which typically is between six months and three years, provided that there is no credit event. If a credit event occurs, generally the seller must pay the buyer the full notional value of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity that may have little or no value.

Structured Notes. Structured notes are privately negotiated debt obligations where the principal and/or interest is determined by reference to the performance of a benchmark asset, market or interest rate (an ‘‘embedded index’’), such as selected securities or commodities, an index of securities or commodities, or specified interest rates, or the differential performance of two assets or markets. When a Fund purchases a structured note, it will make a payment of principal to the counterparty. Some structured notes have a guaranteed repayment of principal while others place a portion (or all) of the principal at risk. The possibility of default by the counterparty or its credit provider may be greater for structured notes than for other types of money market instruments. The terms of such structured instruments normally provide that their principal and/or interest payments are to be adjusted upwards or downwards (but not ordinarily below zero) to reflect changes in the embedded index while the structured instruments are outstanding. As a result, the interest and/or principal payments that may be made on a structured product may vary widely, depending upon a variety of factors, including the volatility of the embedded index and the effect of changes in the embedded index on principal and/or interest payments. The rate of return on structured notes may be determined by applying a multiplier to the performance or differential performance of the referenced index or indexes or other assets. Application of a multiplier involves leverage that will serve to magnify the potential for gain and the risk of loss. Structured notes may not have an active trading market.

Commodity Forward Contracts. A commodity forward contract, which may be standardized and exchange-traded or customized and privately negotiated, is an agreement for one party to buy, and the other party to sell, a specific quantity of an underlying commodity or other tangible asset for an agreed-upon price at a future date. A forward contract generally is settled by physical delivery of the commodity or other tangible asset underlying the forward contract to an agreed upon location at a future date (rather than settled by cash) or will be rolled forward into a new forward contract. Non-deliverable forwards (‘‘NDFs’’) specify a cash payment upon maturity. NDFs are normally used when the market for physical settlement of the currency is underdeveloped, heavily regulated or highly taxed.

Risks of Derivatives Transactions. Derivatives transactions can be highly volatile and involve various types and degrees of risk, depending upon the characteristics of the particular derivative, including the imperfect correlation between the value of such instruments and the underlying assets, the possible default of the other party to the transaction and illiquidity of the derivative instruments. Derivatives transactions may entail investment exposures that are greater than their cost would suggest, meaning that a small investment in derivatives could have a large potential impact on the Fund’s performance, effecting a form of investment leverage on the Fund’s portfolio. In certain types of derivatives transactions, the Fund could lose the entire amount of its investment; in other types of derivatives transactions the potential loss is theoretically unlimited.

The market for many derivatives is, or suddenly can become, illiquid. Changes in liquidity may result in significant, rapid and unpredictable changes in the prices for derivatives transactions. The Fund could experience severe losses if it were unable to liquidate its position because of an illiquid secondary market. Successful use of derivatives transactions also is subject to the ability of the Advisor to predict correctly movements in the direction of the relevant market and, to the extent the transaction is entered into for hedging purposes, to ascertain the appropriate correlation between the transaction being hedged and the price movements of the securities, currency, interest rate or other reference asset underlying the derivatives transactions. Derivatives transactions entered into to seek to manage the risks of the Fund’s portfolio of securities may have the effect of limiting gains from otherwise favorable market movements. For example, the use of currency instruments for hedging purposes may limit gains from a change in the relationship between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies. The use of derivatives transactions may result in losses

greater than if they had not been used (and a loss on a derivatives transaction position may be larger than the gain in a portfolio position being hedged), may require the Fund to sell or purchase portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than current market values, may limit the amount of appreciation the Fund can realize on an investment, or may cause the Fund to hold a security that it might otherwise sell. Amounts paid by the Fund as premiums and cash or other assets held as collateral with respect to derivatives transactions may not otherwise be available to the Fund for investment purposes. To the extent derivatives transactions would be deemed to be illiquid, they will be included in the maximum limitation of 15% of net assets invested in restricted or illiquid securities. The use of currency transactions can result in the Fund incurring losses as a result of the imposition of exchange controls, political developments, government intervention or failure to intervene, suspension of settlements or the inability of the Fund to deliver or receive a specified currency.

Structured notes and related instruments carry risks similar to those of more traditional derivatives such as futures, forward and option contracts. However, structured instruments may entail a greater degree of market risk and volatility than other types of debt obligations. The Fund will be subject to credit risk with respect to the counterparties to certain Derivatives transactions entered into by the Fund. Derivatives may be purchased on established exchanges or, as described herein, through privately negotiated transactions referred to as over-the-counter (‘‘OTC’’) derivatives. Exchange-traded derivatives generally are guaranteed by the clearing agency which is the issuer or counterparty to such derivatives. However, many futures exchanges and boards of trade limit the amount of fluctuation permitted in futures contract prices during a single trading day and once the daily limit has been reached in a particular contract no trades may be made that day at a price beyond that limit or trading may be suspended. There also is no assurance that sufficient trading interest to create a liquid secondary market on an exchange will exist at any particular time and no such secondary market may exist or may cease to exist. Each party to an OTC derivative bears the risk that the counterparty will default. OTC derivatives are less liquid than exchange-traded derivatives because the other party to the transaction may be the only investor with sufficient understanding of the derivative to be interested in bidding for it. If a counterparty becomes bankrupt or otherwise fails to perform its obligations under a derivative contract due to financial difficulties, the Fund may experience significant delays in obtaining any recovery under the derivative contract in bankruptcy or other reorganization proceeding. The Fund may obtain only a limited recovery or may obtain no recovery in such circumstances.

There is no limit on the amount of a Fund’s assets that can be put at risk through the use of futures contracts and the value of the Fund’s futures contracts and options thereon may equal or exceed 100% of the Fund’s total assets. No Fund has a current intention of entering into futures transactions other than for traditional hedging purposes.

Each Fund is subject to legal requirements that are designed to reduce the effects of any leverage created by the use of derivative instruments. Under these requirements, a Fund must identify liquid assets, or engage in other measures, with regard to its derivative transactions. Each Fund will cover its derivative obligations by segregating liquid assets or covering its obligations with an offsetting position, as determined by the Advisor, in accordance with procedures approved by the Board.

Each Fund will be operated so that it will not be considered a commodity pool (i.e., a pooled investment vehicle which trades in commodity futures contracts and options thereon and the operator of which is registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission). In addition, each Fund has claimed an exclusion from the definition of commodity pool operator and, therefore, is not subject to registration or regulation as a pool operator under the Commodity Exchange Act.

Each Fund’s intention to qualify as a regulated investment company (‘‘RIC’’) under the Internal Revenue Code (the ‘‘Code’’) will limit the extent to which the Fund can engage in certain derivatives transactions. With respect to purchases of derivatives, the Fund will comply with applicable law and guidance.

Exchange-Traded Notes (‘‘ETNs’’). Each Fund may invest in ETNs. ETNs have many features of senior, unsecured, unsubordinated debt securities. Their returns are linked to the performance of a particular asset, such as a market index, less applicable fees and expenses. ETNs are listed on an exchange and traded in the secondary market. A Fund may hold the ETN until maturity, at which time the issuer is obligated to pay a return linked to the performance of the relevant asset. ETNs do not typically make periodic interest payments and principal is not protected.

The market value of an ETN may be influenced by, among other things, time to maturity, level of supply, and demand of the ETN, volatility and lack of liquidity in the underlying assets, changes in the applicable interest rates, the current performance of the asset to which the ETN is linked and the credit rating of the ETN issuer. The market value of an ETN may differ from the performance of the applicable asset and there may be times when an ETN trades at a premium or discount to the underlying asset's value. This difference in price may be due to the fact that the supply and demand in the market for ETNs at any point in time is not always identical to the supply and demand in the market for the assets on which the ETN's return is based. A change in the issuer's credit rating may also impact the value of an ETN despite the underlying asset remaining unchanged. ETNs are also subject to tax risk. No assurance can be given that the Internal Revenue Service (''IRS'') will accept, or a court will uphold, how the Fund characterizes and treats ETNs, including the income it pays, for tax purposes.

An ETN that is tied to a specific market index may not be able to replicate and maintain exactly the composition and relative weighting of securities, commodities, or other components in the applicable market index. ETNs also incur certain expenses not incurred by their applicable market index, and the Fund would bear a proportionate share of any fees and expenses borne by the ETN in which it invests.

A Fund's decision to sell its ETN holdings may be limited by the availability of a secondary market. In addition, although an ETN may be listed on an exchange, the issuer may not be required to maintain the listing and there can be no assurance that a secondary market will exist for an ETN. Some ETNs that use leverage in an effort to amplify the returns of an underlying market index can, at times, be relatively illiquid and may therefore be difficult to purchase or sell at a fair price. Leveraged ETNs may offer the potential for greater return, but the potential for loss and speed at which losses can be realized also are greater.

Floating Rate and Variable Rate Demand Notes. Each Fund may purchase taxable or tax-exempt floating rate and variable rate demand notes for short-term cash management or other investment purposes. Floating rate and variable rate demand notes and bonds may have a stated maturity in excess of one year, but may have features that permit a holder to demand payment of principal plus accrued interest upon a specified number of days' notice. Frequently, such obligations are secured by letters of credit or other credit support arrangements provided by banks. The issuer has a corresponding right, after a given period, to prepay in its discretion the outstanding principal of the obligation plus accrued interest upon a specific number of days' notice to the holders. The interest rate of a floating rate instrument may be based on a known lending rate, such as a bank's prime rate, and is reset whenever such rate is adjusted. The interest rate on a variable rate demand note is reset at specified intervals at a market rate.

Foreign Currency Transactions. Each Fund may engage in currency exchange transactions to protect against uncertainty in the level of future foreign currency exchange rates and to increase current return. There can be no assurance that appropriate foreign currency transactions will be available for the Fund at any time or that the Fund will enter into such transactions at any time or under any circumstances even if appropriate transactions are available to it.

Each Fund may engage in both ‘‘transaction hedging’’ and ‘‘position hedging.’’ When it engages in transaction hedging, the Fund enters into foreign currency transactions with respect to specific receivables or payables of the Fund generally arising in connection with the purchase or sale of its portfolio securities. Each Fund may engage in transaction hedging when it desires to ‘‘lock in’’ the U.S. dollar price of a security it has agreed to purchase or sell, or the U.S. dollar equivalent of a dividend or interest payment in a foreign currency. By transaction hedging, the Fund may attempt to protect against a possible loss resulting from an adverse change in the relationship between the U.S. dollar and the applicable foreign currency during the period between the date on which the security is purchased or sold or on which the dividend or interest payment is declared, and the date on which such payments are made or received.

Each Fund may purchase or sell a foreign currency on a spot (*i.e.*, cash) basis at the prevailing spot rate in connection with transaction hedging. Each Fund may also enter into contracts to purchase or sell foreign currencies at a future date (‘‘forward contracts’’) and purchase and sell foreign currency futures contracts. For transaction hedging purposes, each Fund may also purchase exchange-listed and over-the-counter call and put options on foreign currency futures contracts and on foreign currencies. A put option on a futures contract gives the Fund the right to assume a short position in the futures contract until expiration of the option. A put option on currency gives the Fund the right to sell a currency at a specified exercise price until the expiration of the option. A call option on a futures contract gives the Fund the right to assume a long position in the futures contract until the expiration of the option. A call option on currency gives the Fund the right to purchase a currency at the exercise price until the expiration of the option.

When it engages in position hedging, the Fund enters into foreign currency exchange transactions to protect against a decline in the values of the foreign currencies in which securities held by the Fund are denominated or are quoted in their principle trading markets or an increase in the value of currency for securities which the Fund expects to purchase. In connection with position hedging, each Fund may purchase put or call options on foreign currency and foreign currency futures contracts and buy or sell forward contracts and foreign currency futures contracts. Each Fund may also purchase or sell foreign currency on a spot basis.

The precise matching of the amounts of foreign currency exchange transactions and the value of the portfolio securities involved will not generally be possible since the future value of such securities in foreign currencies will change as a consequence of market movements in the values of those securities between the dates the currency exchange transactions are entered into and the dates they mature. It is impossible to forecast with precision the market value of each Fund's portfolio securities at the expiration or maturity of a forward or futures contract. Accordingly, it may be necessary for a Fund to purchase additional foreign currency on the spot market (and bear the expense of such purchase) if the market value of the security or securities being hedged is less than the amount of foreign currency the Fund is obligated to deliver and if a decision is made to sell the security or securities and make delivery of the foreign currency. Conversely, it may be necessary to sell on the spot market some of the foreign currency received upon the sale of the portfolio security or securities of the Fund if the market value of such security or securities exceeds the amount of foreign currency the Fund is obligated to deliver. To offset some of the costs of hedging against fluctuations in currency exchange rates, the Fund may write covered call options on those currencies. Transaction and position hedging do not eliminate fluctuations in the underlying prices of the securities that the Fund owns or intends to purchase or sell. They simply establish a rate of exchange that one can achieve at some future point in time. Additionally, although these techniques tend to minimize the risk of loss due to a decline in the value of the hedged currency, they tend to limit any potential gain which might result from the increase in the value of such currency.

Each Fund may also seek to increase its current return by purchasing and selling foreign currency on a spot basis, by purchasing and selling futures contracts on foreign currencies and options on foreign currencies and on foreign currency futures contracts, and by purchasing and selling foreign currency forward contracts. The value of any currency, including U.S. dollars and foreign currencies, may be affected by complex political and economic factors applicable to the issuing country. In addition, the exchange rates of foreign currencies (and therefore the values of foreign currency options, forward contracts and futures contracts) may be affected significantly, fixed, or supported directly or indirectly by U.S. and foreign government actions. Government intervention may increase risks involved in purchasing or selling foreign currency options, forward contracts, and futures contracts because exchange rates may not be free to fluctuate in response to other market forces. Foreign governmental restrictions or taxes could result in adverse changes in the cost of acquiring or disposing of foreign currencies.

Foreign Securities. Each Fund may invest in foreign (non-U.S.) securities. Investing in securities issued by foreign companies involves considerations and possible risks not typically associated with investing in securities issued by domestic corporations. The values of foreign investments are affected by changes in currency rates or exchange control regulations, application of foreign tax laws, including withholding taxes, changes in governmental administration or economic or monetary policy (in the United States or abroad), or changed circumstances in dealings between nations. Costs are incurred in connection with conversions between various currencies. In addition, foreign brokerage commissions are generally higher than in the United States, and foreign securities markets may be less liquid, more volatile, and less subject to governmental supervision than in the United States. Investments in foreign

countries could be affected by other factors not present in the United States, including expropriation, confiscatory taxation, lack of uniform accounting and auditing standards, and potential difficulties in enforcing contractual obligations which could extend settlement periods.

Investments in foreign securities, especially in emerging market countries, will expose the Fund to the direct or indirect consequences of political, social or economic changes in the countries that issue the securities or in which the issuers are located. Certain countries in which a Fund may invest, especially emerging market countries, have historically experienced, and may continue to experience, high rates of inflation, high interest rates, exchange rate fluctuations, large amounts of external debt, balance of payments and trade difficulties, and extreme poverty and unemployment. Many of these countries are also characterized by political uncertainty and instability. The cost of servicing external debt will generally be adversely affected by rising international interest rates because many external debt obligations bear interest at rates that are adjusted based upon international interest rates. In addition, with respect to certain foreign countries, there is a risk of:

- the possibility of expropriation of assets;
- confiscatory taxation;
- difficulty in obtaining or enforcing a court judgment;
- economic, political or social instability; and
- diplomatic developments that could affect investments in those countries.

Each Fund may invest in sponsored and unsponsored American Depositary Receipts (ADRs), Global Depositary Receipts (GDRs) and similar depositary receipts. ADRs, typically issued by a financial institution (a depositary), evidence ownership interests in a security or a pool of securities issued by a foreign company and deposited with the depositary. Prices of ADRs are quoted in U.S. dollars, and ADRs are traded in the United States. GDRs are receipts issued outside the United States, typically by non-United States banks and trust companies, which evidence ownership of either foreign or domestic securities. Generally, GDRs, in bearer form, are designated for use outside the United States. Ownership of ADRs and GDRs entails similar investment risks to direct ownership of foreign securities traded outside the U.S., including increased market liquidity, currency, political, information and other risks. Income and gains earned by the Fund in respect of foreign securities may be subject to foreign withholding and other taxes, which will reduce the Fund's return on such securities.

Forward Commitments and Dollar Rolls. Each Fund may enter into contracts to purchase securities for a fixed price at a future date beyond customary settlement time (''forward commitments'') if the Fund sets aside on its books liquid assets in an amount sufficient to meet the purchase price, or if the Fund enters into offsetting contracts for the forward sale of other securities it owns. In the case of to-be-announced (''TBA'') purchase commitments, the unit price and the estimated principal amount are established when the Fund enters into a contract, with the actual principal amount being within a specified range of the estimate. Forward commitments may be considered securities in themselves, and involve a risk of loss if the value of the security to be purchased declines prior to the settlement date, which risk is in addition to the risk of decline in the value of the Fund's other assets. Where such purchases are made through dealers, the Fund relies on the dealer to consummate the sale. The dealer's failure to do so may result in the loss to the Fund of an advantageous yield or price. Although the Fund will generally enter into forward commitments with the intention of acquiring securities for its portfolio or for delivery pursuant to options contracts it has entered into, the Fund may dispose of a commitment prior to settlement if the Advisor deems it appropriate to do so. The Fund may realize short-term profits or losses upon the sale of forward commitments.

Each Fund may enter into TBA sale commitments to hedge its portfolio positions or to sell securities it owns under delayed delivery arrangements. Proceeds of TBA sale commitments are not received until the contractual settlement date. Unsettled TBA sale commitments are valued at current market value of the underlying securities. If the TBA sale commitment is closed through the acquisition of an offsetting purchase commitment, the Fund realizes a gain or loss on the commitment without regard to any unrealized gain or loss on the underlying security. If the Fund delivers securities under the commitment, the Fund realizes a gain or loss from the sale of the securities based upon the unit price established at the date the commitment was entered into.

Each Fund may enter into dollar roll transactions (generally using TBAs) in which it sells a debt security for delivery in the current month and simultaneously contracts to purchase similar securities (for example, same type, coupon and maturity) at an agreed upon future time. By engaging in a dollar roll transaction, the Fund foregoes principal and interest paid on the security that is sold, but receives the difference between the current sales price and the forward price for the future purchase. The Fund would also be able to earn interest on the proceeds of the sale before they are reinvested. The Fund accounts for dollar rolls as purchases and sales. Dollar rolls may be used to create investment leverage and may increase the Fund's risk and volatility.

The obligation to purchase securities on a specified future date involves the risk that the market value of the securities that the Fund is obligated to purchase may decline below the purchase price. In addition, in the event the other party to the transaction files for bankruptcy, becomes insolvent or defaults on its obligation, the Fund may be adversely affected.

Government Mortgage Pass-Through Securities. Each Fund may invest in mortgage pass-through securities representing participation interests in pools of residential mortgage loans purchased from individual lenders by an agency, instrumentality or sponsored corporation of the United States government (‘‘Federal Agency’’) or originated by private lenders and guaranteed, to the extent provided in such securities, by a Federal Agency. Such securities, which are ownership interests in the underlying mortgage loans, differ from conventional debt securities, which provide for periodic payment of interest in fixed amounts (usually semiannually) and principal payments at payments (not necessarily in fixed amounts) that are a ‘‘pass-through’’ of the monthly interest and principal payments (including any prepayments) made by the individual borrowers on the pooled mortgage loans, net of any fees paid to the guarantor of such securities and the servicer of the underlying mortgage loans.

The government mortgage pass-through securities in which a Fund may invest include those issued or guaranteed by Ginnie Mae, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. Ginnie Mae certificates are direct obligations of the U.S. Government and, as such, are backed by the ‘‘full faith and credit’’ of the United States. Fannie Mae is a federally chartered, privately owned corporation. Freddie Mac is a corporate instrumentality of the United States. Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac certificates are not backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, but the issuing agency or instrumentality has the right to borrow, to meet its obligations, from an existing line of credit with the U.S. Treasury. The U.S. Treasury has no legal obligation to provide such line of credit and may choose not to do so.

Certificates for these types of mortgage-backed securities evidence an interest in a specific pool of mortgages. These certificates are, in most cases, ‘‘modified pass-through’’ instruments, wherein the issuing agency guarantees the payment of principal and interest on mortgages underlying the certificates, whether or not such amounts are collected by the issuer on the underlying mortgages. The Housing and Economic Recovery Act of 2008 (‘‘HERA’’) authorized the Secretary of the Treasury to support Fannie Mae, Freddie Mac, and the Federal Home Loan Banks (‘‘FHLBs’’) (collectively, the ‘‘GSEs’’) by purchasing obligations and other securities from those government-sponsored enterprises. HERA gave the Secretary of the Treasury broad authority to determine the conditions and amounts of such purchases.

On September 6, 2008, the Federal Housing Finance Agency (‘‘FHFA’’) placed Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac into conservatorship. As the conservator, FHFA succeeded to all rights, titles, powers, and privileges of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac and of any stockholder, officer or director of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac with respect to Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac and the assets of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. FHFA selected a new chief executive officer and chairman of the board of directors for Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac.

In connection with the conservatorship, the U.S. Treasury, exercising powers granted to it under HERA, entered into a Senior Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement (‘‘SPA’’) with each of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac pursuant to which the U.S. Treasury will purchase up to an aggregate of $100 billion of each of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac to maintain a positive net worth in each enterprise. This agreement contains various covenants that severely limit each enterprise’s operations. In exchange for entering into these agreements, the U.S. Treasury received $1 billion of each enterprise’s senior preferred stock and warrants to purchase 79.9% of each enterprise’s common stock. On February 18, 2009, the U.S. Treasury announced that it was doubling the size of its commitment to each enterprise under the Senior Preferred Stock Program to $200 billion. The U.S. Treasury’s obligations under the Senior Preferred Stock Program are for an indefinite period of time for a maximum amount of $200 billion per enterprise. On December 24, 2009, the U.S.

Treasury announced further amendments to the SPAs which included additional financial support for each GSE through the end of 2012 and changes to the limits on their retained mortgage portfolios. It is difficult, if not impossible, to predict the future political, regulatory or economic changes that could impact the GSEs.

Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac are continuing to operate as going concerns while in conservatorship and each remain liable for all of its obligations, including its guaranty obligations, associated with its mortgage-backed securities. The Senior Preferred SPA is intended to enhance each of Fannie Mae's and Freddie Mac's ability to meet its obligations. The FHFA has indicated that the conservatorship of each enterprise will end when the director of FHFA determines that FHFA's plan to restore the enterprise to a safe and solvent condition has been completed.

Hybrid Securities. Each Fund may acquire hybrid securities. A hybrid security combines an income-producing debt security (''income producing component'') and the right to receive payment based on the change in the price of an equity security (''equity component''). The income-producing component is achieved by investing in non-convertible, income-producing securities such as bonds, preferred stocks and money market instruments, which may be represented by derivative instruments. The equity component is achieved by investing in securities or instruments such as cash-settled warrants or options to receive a payment based on whether the price of a common stock surpasses a certain exercise price or options on a stock index. A hybrid security comprises two or more separate securities, each with its own market value. Therefore, the ''market value'' of a hybrid security is the sum of the values of its income-producing component and its equity component. A holder of a hybrid security faces the risk of a decline in the price of the security or the level of the index involved in the equity component, causing a decline in the value of the security or instrument, such as a call option or warrant, purchased to create the hybrid security. The equity component has risks typical to a purchased call option. Should the price of the stock fall below the exercise price and remain there throughout the exercise period, the entire amount paid for the call option or warrant would be lost. Because a hybrid security includes the income-producing component as well, the holder of a hybrid security also faces risks typical to all debt securities.

Illiquid Securities. Each Fund may invest in illiquid securities. A Fund will not invest in illiquid securities if immediately after such investment more than 15% of the Fund's net assets would be invested in such securities. For this purpose, illiquid securities include, among others, securities that are illiquid by virtue of the absence of a readily available market or legal or contractual restrictions on resale. Securities that have legal or contractual restrictions on resale but have a readily available market are not deemed illiquid for purposes of this limitation.

Historically, illiquid securities have included securities subject to contractual or legal restrictions on resale because they have not been registered under the Securities Act or which are otherwise not readily marketable. Securities which have not been registered under the Securities Act are referred to as private placements or restricted securities and are purchased directly from the issuer or in the secondary market. The Funds do not typically hold a significant amount of these restricted or other illiquid securities because of the potential for delays on resale and uncertainty in valuation. Limitations on resale may have an adverse effect on the marketability of portfolio securities, and the Funds might be unable to dispose of restricted or other illiquid securities promptly or at reasonable prices and might thereby experience difficulty satisfying redemptions within seven days. The Funds might also have to register such restricted securities in order to dispose of them, resulting in additional expense and delay. Adverse market conditions could impede such a public offering of securities.

In recent years, a large institutional market has developed for certain securities that are not registered under the Securities Act, including repurchase agreements, commercial paper, foreign securities, municipal securities and corporate bonds and notes. Institutional investors depend on an efficient institutional market in which the unregistered security can be readily resold or on an issuer's ability to honor a demand for repayment. The fact that there are contractual or legal restrictions on resale to the general public or to certain institutions may not be indicative of the liquidity of such investments.

Rule 144A under the Securities Act allows a broader institutional trading market for securities otherwise subject to restriction on resale to the general public. Rule 144A establishes a safe harbor from the registration requirements of the Securities Act of resales of certain securities to qualified institutional buyers, which generally creates a more liquid market for securities eligible for resale under Rule 144A than other types of restricted securities.

The Advisor will monitor the liquidity of restricted securities in the Fund's portfolio, under the supervision of the Board. In reaching liquidity decisions, the Advisor will consider, among other things, the following factors: (1) the frequency of trades and quotes for the security; (2) the number of dealers wishing to purchase or sell the security and the number of other potential purchasers; (3) dealer undertakings to make a market in the security; and (4) the nature of the security and the nature of the marketplace trades (*e.g.*, the time needed to dispose of the security, the method of soliciting offers and the mechanics of the transfer).

Inflation-Protected Securities. Each Fund may invest in U.S. Treasury Inflation Protected Securities (''U.S. TIPS''), which are debt securities issued by the U.S. Department of Treasury, the principal amounts of which are adjusted daily based upon changes in the rate of inflation. Each Fund may also invest in other inflation-protected securities issued by

non-U.S. governments or by private issuers. U.S. TIPS pay interest on a semi-annual basis, equal to a fixed percentage of the inflation-adjusted principal amount. The interest rate on these bonds is fixed at issuance, but over the life of the bond this interest may be paid on an increasing or decreasing principal value that has been adjusted for inflation.

Repayment of the original bond principal upon maturity (as adjusted for inflation) is guaranteed for U.S. TIPS, even during a period of deflation. However, because the principal amount of U.S. TIPS would be adjusted downward during a period of deflation, the Fund will be subject to deflation risk with respect to its investments in these securities. In addition, the current market value of the bonds is not guaranteed, and will fluctuate. If a Fund purchases in the secondary market U.S. TIPS whose principal values have been adjusted upward due to inflation since issuance, the Fund may experience a loss if there is a subsequent period of deflation. Each Fund may also invest in other inflation-related bonds which may or may not provide a guarantee of principal. If a guarantee of principal is not provided, the adjusted principal value of the bond repaid at maturity may be less than the original principal amount.

The periodic adjustment of U.S. TIPS is currently tied to the CPI-U, which is calculated by the Department of Treasury. The CPI-U is a measurement of changes in the cost of living, made up of components such as housing, food, transportation and energy. Inflation-protected bonds issued by a non-U.S. government are generally adjusted to reflect a comparable inflation index, calculated by that government. There can no assurance that the CPI-U or any non-U.S. inflation index will accurately measure the real rate of inflation in the prices of goods and services. If interest rates rise due to reasons other than inflation, investors in these securities may not be protected to the extent that the increase is not reflected in the bond's inflation measure. In addition, there can be no assurance that the rate of inflation in a non-U.S. country will be correlated to the rate of inflation in the United States.

Infrastructure Investments. Each Fund may invest in securities and other obligations of U.S. and non-U.S. issuers providing exposure to infrastructure investment. Infrastructure investments may be related to physical structures and networks that provide necessary services to society, such as transportation and communications networks, water and energy utilities and public service facilities. Securities, instruments, and obligations of infrastructure-related companies and projects are more susceptible to adverse economic or regulatory occurrences affecting their industries. Infrastructure companies may be subject to a variety of factors that may adversely affect their business or operations, including high interest costs in connection with capital construction programs, high leverage, costs associated with environmental and other regulations, the effects of economic slowdown, surplus capacity, increased competition from other providers of services, uncertainties concerning the availability of fuel at reasonable prices, the effects of energy conservation policies, and other factors. Infrastructure companies and projects also may be affected by or subject to regulation by various government authorities, including rate regulation; service interruption due to environmental, operational or other mishaps; the imposition of special tariffs and changes in tax laws, regulatory policies and accounting standards; and general changes in market sentiment towards infrastructure and utilities assets.

Initial Public Offerings. Each Fund may purchase debt or equity securities in initial public offerings (''IPOs''). These securities, which are often issued by unseasoned companies, may be subject to many of the same risks of investing in companies with smaller market capitalizations. Securities issued in IPOs have no trading history, and information about the companies may be available for very limited periods. Securities issued in an IPO frequently are very volatile in price, and the Fund may hold securities purchased in an IPO for a very short period of time. As a result, the Fund's investments in IPOs may increase portfolio turnover, which increases brokerage and administrative costs and may result in taxable distributions to shareholders.

At any particular time, or from time to time, a Fund may not be able to invest in securities issued in IPOs, or invest to the extent desired because, for example, only a small portion (if any) of the securities being offered in an IPO may be made available to the Fund. In addition, under certain market conditions, a relatively small number of companies may issue securities in IPOs. There can be no assurance that investments in IPOs will improve the Fund's performance.

Inverse Floaters. Inverse floaters constitute a class of CMOs with a coupon rate that moves inversely to a designated index, such as LIBOR (London Interbank Offered Rate). Inverse floaters have coupon rates that typically change at a multiple of the changes of the relevant index rate. Any rise in the index rate (as a consequence of an increase in interest rates) causes a drop in the coupon rate on an inverse floater while any drop in the index rate causes an increase in the coupon rate of an inverse floater. In some circumstances, the coupon on an inverse floater could decrease to zero. In addition, like most other debt securities, the value of inverse floaters will decrease as interest rates increase and their average lives will extend. Inverse floaters exhibit greater price volatility than the majority of mortgage-backed securities. In addition, some inverse floaters display extreme sensitivity to changes in prepayments. As a result, the yield to maturity of an inverse floater is sensitive not only to changes in interest rates, but also to changes in prepayment rates on the related underlying mortgage assets. As described above, inverse floaters may be used alone or in tandem with interest-only stripped mortgage instruments.

Investment Companies. Each Fund may invest in securities of other open- or closed-end investment companies. Each Fund may purchase shares of closed-end funds that are managed by an affiliate of the Advisor only to the extent that they are traded on a national exchange. Each Fund may also invest a portion of its assets in pooled investment vehicles other than registered investment companies. For example, some vehicles which are commonly referred to as ‘‘exchanged traded funds’’ may not be registered investment companies because of the nature of their underlying investments. As a stockholder in an investment company or other pooled vehicle, the Fund will bear its ratable share of that investment company’s or vehicle’s expenses, and would remain subject to payment of the fund’s advisory and administrative fees with respect to assets so invested.

Shareholders would therefore be subject to duplicative expenses to the extent the Fund invests in other investment companies or vehicles. In addition, the securities of other investment companies or pooled vehicles may be leveraged and will therefore be subject to leverage risks (in addition to other risks of the investment company’s or pooled vehicle’s strategy). The Fund will also incur brokerage costs when purchasing and selling shares of investment companies and other pooled vehicles.

An investment in the shares of another fund is subject to the risks associated with that fund’s portfolio securities. To the extent a Fund invests in shares of another fund, that Fund’s shareholders would indirectly pay a portion of that Fund’s expenses, including advisory fees, brokerage and other distribution expenses. These fees and expenses are in addition to the direct expenses of the Fund’s own operations.

Loan Participation and Assignments. Investment in secured or unsecured fixed or floating rate loans (‘‘Loans’’) arranged through private negotiations between a borrowing corporation, government, or other entity and one or more financial institutions (‘‘Lenders’’) may be in the form of participations in Loans (‘‘Participation’’) or assignments of all or a portion of Loans from third parties (‘‘Assignments’’). Participations typically result in the Fund having a contractual relationship only with the Lender, not with the borrower. The Fund has the right to receive payments of principal, interest and any fees to which it is entitled only from the Lender selling the Participation and only upon receipt by the Lender of the payments from the borrower. In connection with purchasing Participations, the Fund generally has no direct right to enforce compliance by the borrower with the terms of the loan agreement relating to the Loan, nor any rights of set-off against the borrower, and the Fund may not directly benefit from any collateral supporting the Loan in which it has purchased the Participation. As a result, the Fund assumes the credit risk of both the borrower and the Lender that is selling the Participation. In the event of the insolvency of the selling Lender, the Fund may be treated as a general creditor of that Lender and may not benefit from any set-off between the Lender and the borrower.

When a Fund purchases Assignments from Lenders, it acquires direct rights against the borrower on the Loan. In an Assignment, the Fund is entitled to receive payments directly from the borrower and, therefore, does not depend on the selling bank to pass these payments onto the Fund. However, because Assignments are arranged through private negotiations between potential assignees and assignors, the rights and obligations acquired by the Fund as the purchaser of an Assignment may differ from, and be more limited than, those held by the assigning Lender.

Assignments and Participations are generally not registered under the Securities Act, and thus may be subject to the Funds' limitation on investment in illiquid securities. The lack of a liquid secondary market could have an adverse impact on the value of such securities and on the Funds' ability to dispose of particular Assignments or Participations when necessary to meet the Funds' liquidity needs or in response to a specific economic event, such as a deterioration in the creditworthiness of the borrower.

Money Market Instruments. Each Fund may invest, for defensive purposes or otherwise, some or all of their assets in high-quality fixed-income securities, money market instruments and money market mutual funds, or hold cash or cash equivalents in such amounts as the Advisor deems appropriate under the circumstances. In addition, each Fund may invest in these instruments pending allocation of its respective offering proceeds. Money market instruments are high-quality, short-term, fixed-income obligations, which generally have remaining maturities of one year or less and may include U.S. Government securities, commercial paper, certificates of deposit, and bankers' acceptances issued by domestic branches of U.S. banks that are members of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (''FDIC'') and repurchase agreements.

Margin Payments. When a Fund purchases or sells a futures contract, it is required to deposit with its custodian an amount of cash, U.S. Treasury bills, or other permissible collateral equal to a small percentage of the amount of the futures contract. This amount is known as ‘‘initial margin.’’ Initial margin requirements are established by the exchanges on which futures contracts trade and may, from time to time, change. The nature of initial margin is different from that of margin in security transactions in that it does not involve borrowing money to finance transactions. Rather, initial margin is similar to a performance bond or good faith deposit that is returned to the Fund upon termination of the contract, assuming the Fund satisfies its contractual obligations. In addition, brokers may establish margin deposit requirements in excess of those required by the exchanges.

Subsequent payments to and from the broker occur on a daily basis in a process known as ‘‘marking to market.’’ These payments are called ‘‘variation margin’’ and are made as the value of the underlying futures contract fluctuates. For example, when a Fund sells a futures contract and the price of the underlying index rises above the delivery price, the Fund’s position declines in value. The Fund then pays the broker a variation margin payment equal to the difference between the delivery price of the futures contract and the value of the index underlying the futures contract. Conversely, if the price of the underlying index falls below the delivery price of the contract, the Fund’s futures position increases in value. The broker then must make a variation margin payment equal to the difference between the delivery price of the futures contract and the value of the index underlying the futures contract. When a Fund terminates a position in a futures contract, a final determination of variation margin is made, additional cash is paid by or to the Fund and the Fund realizes a loss or a gain. Such closing transactions involve additional commission costs.

Mortgage Dollar Rolls. Each Fund may enter into mortgage dollar rolls with a bank or a broker-dealer. A mortgage dollar roll is a transaction in which the Fund sells mortgage-related securities for immediate settlement and simultaneously purchases the same type of securities for forward settlement at a discount. While the Fund begins accruing interest on the newly purchased securities from the purchase or trade date, it is able to invest the proceeds from the sale of its previously owned securities, which will be used to pay for the new securities, in money market investments until future settlement date. The use of mortgage dollar rolls is a speculative technique involving leverage and can have an economic effect similar to borrowing money for investment purposes.

Mortgage-backed and Asset-backed Securities. Mortgage-backed securities, including collateralized mortgage obligations (‘‘CMOs’’) and certain stripped mortgage-backed securities, represent a participation in, or are secured by, mortgage loans. Asset-backed securities are structured like mortgage-backed securities, but instead of mortgage loans or interests in mortgage loans, the underlying assets may include such items as motor vehicle installment sales or installment loan contracts, leases of various types of real and personal property, and receivables from credit card agreements. The cash flow generated by the underlying assets is applied to make required payments on the securities and to pay related administrative expenses. The amount of residual cash flow resulting from a particular issue of asset-backed or mortgage-backed securities depends on, among other things, the characteristics of the underlying assets, the coupon rates on the securities, prevailing interest rates, the amount of administrative expenses, and the actual prepayment experience on the underlying assets. Each Fund may invest in any such instruments or variations as may be developed, to the extent consistent with its investment objectives and policies and applicable regulatory requirements. In general, the collateral supporting asset-backed securities is of a shorter maturity than mortgage loans and is likely to experience substantial prepayments. Mortgage-backed securities have yield and maturity characteristics corresponding to the underlying assets. Unlike traditional debt securities, which may pay a fixed rate of interest until maturity, when the entire principal amount comes due, payments on certain mortgage-backed securities

include both interest and a partial repayment of principal. Besides the scheduled repayment of principal, repayments of principal may result from the voluntary prepayment, refinancing or foreclosure of the underlying mortgage loans. If property owners make unscheduled prepayments of their mortgage loans, these prepayments will result in early payment of the applicable mortgage-backed securities. In that event a Fund may be unable to invest the proceeds from the early payment of the mortgage-backed securities in an investment that provides as high a yield as the mortgage-backed securities. Consequently, early payment associated with mortgage-backed securities may cause these securities to experience significantly greater price and yield volatility than that experienced by traditional debt securities. The occurrence of mortgage prepayments is affected by factors including the level of interest rates, general economic conditions, the location and age of the mortgage and other social and demographic conditions. During periods of falling interest rates, the rate of mortgage prepayments tends to increase, thereby tending to decrease the life of mortgage-backed securities. During periods of rising interest rates, the rate of mortgage prepayments usually decreases, thereby tending to increase the life of mortgage-backed securities. If the life of a mortgage-backed security is inaccurately predicted, the Fund may not be able to realize the rate of return it expected. Adjustable rate mortgage securities (‘‘ARMs’’), like traditional mortgage-backed securities, are interests in pools of mortgage loans that provide investors with payments consisting of both principal and interest as mortgage loans in the underlying mortgage pool are paid off by the borrowers. Unlike fixed-rate mortgage-backed securities, ARMs are collateralized by or represent interests in mortgage loans with variable rates of interest. These interest rates are reset at periodic intervals, usually by reference to an interest rate index or market interest rate. Although the rate adjustment feature may act as a buffer to reduce sharp changes in the value of adjustable rate securities, these securities are still subject to changes in value based on, among other things, changes in market interest rates or changes in the issuer’s creditworthiness. Because the interest rates are reset only periodically, changes in the interest rate on ARMs may lag changes in prevailing market interest rates. Also, some ARMs (or the underlying mortgages) are subject to caps or floors that limit the maximum change in the interest rate during a specified period or over the life of the security. As a result, changes in the interest rate on an ARM may not fully reflect changes in prevailing market interest rates during certain periods. Each Fund may also invest in ‘‘hybrid’’ ARMs, whose underlying mortgages combine fixed-rate and adjustable rate features.

Mortgage-backed and asset-backed securities are less effective than other types of securities as a means of ‘‘locking in’’ attractive long-term interest rates. One reason is the need to reinvest prepayments of principal; another is the possibility of significant unscheduled prepayments resulting from declines in interest rates. These prepayments would have to be reinvested at lower rates. The automatic interest rate adjustment feature of mortgages underlying ARMs likewise reduces the ability to lock-in attractive rates. As a result, mortgage- backed and asset-backed securities may have less potential for capital appreciation during periods of declining interest rates than other securities of comparable maturities, although they may have a similar risk of decline in market value during periods of rising interest rates. Prepayments may also significantly shorten the effective maturities of these securities, especially during periods of declining interest rates. Conversely, during periods of rising interest rates, a reduction in prepayments may increase the effective maturities of these securities, subjecting them to a greater risk of decline in market value in response to rising interest rates than traditional debt securities, and, therefore, potentially increasing the volatility of the Fund.

At times, some mortgage-backed and asset-backed securities will have higher than market interest rates and therefore will be purchased at a premium above their par value. Prepayments may cause losses on securities purchased at a premium.

Asset-backed securities may be collateralized by the fees earned by service providers. The values of asset-backed securities may be substantially dependent on the servicing of the underlying asset and are therefore subject to risks associated with negligence by, or defalcation of, their servicers. In certain circumstances, the mishandling of related documentation may also affect the rights of the security holders in and to the underlying collateral. The insolvency of entities that generate receivables or that utilize the assets may result in added costs and delays in addition to losses associated with a decline in the value of the underlying assets.

Preferred Securities. There are two basic types of preferred securities, traditional and hybrid-preferred securities. Traditional preferred securities consist of preferred stock issued by an entity taxable as a corporation. Preferred stocks, which may offer fixed or floating rate dividends, are perpetual instruments and considered equity securities. Preferred securities are subordinated to senior debt instruments in a company’s capital structure, in terms of priority to corporate income and claim to corporate assets, and therefore will be subject to greater credit risk than debt instruments. Alternatively, hybrid-preferred securities may be issued by corporations, generally in the form of interest-bearing notes with preferred securities characteristics, or by an affiliated trust or partnership of the corporation, generally in the form of preferred interests in subordinated debentures or similarly structured securities. The hybrid-preferred securities market consists of both fixed and adjustable coupon rate securities that are either perpetual in nature or have stated maturity dates. Hybrid-preferred securities are considered debt securities. Due to their similar attributes, the Advisor a also consider senior debt perpetual issues, certain securities with convertible features as well as exchange-listed senior debt issues that trade with attributes of exchange-listed perpetual and hybrid-preferred securities to be part of the broader preferred securities market.

Traditional Preferred Securities. Traditional preferred securities pay fixed or floating dividends to investors and have ‘‘preference’’ over common stock in the payment of dividends and the liquidation of a company’s assets. This means that a company must pay dividends on preferred stock before paying any dividends on its common stock. In order to be

payable, distributions on such preferred securities must be declared by the issuer's board of directors. Income payments on preferred securities may be cumulative, causing dividends and distributions to accumulate even if not declared by the board of directors or otherwise made payable. In such a case, all accumulated dividends must be paid before any dividend on the common stock can be paid. However, many traditional preferred stocks are non-cumulative, in which case dividends do not accumulate and need not ever be paid. Each Fund may invest in non-cumulative preferred securities, whereby the issuer does not have an obligation to make up any missed payments to its stockholders. There is no assurance that dividends or distributions on the traditional preferred securities in which a Fund invests will be declared or otherwise made payable. Preferred securities may also contain provisions under which payments must be stopped (*i.e.*, stoppage is compulsory, not discretionary). The conditions under which this occurs may relate to, for instance, capitalization levels. Hence, if a company incurs significant losses that deplete retained earnings automatic payment stoppage could occur. In some cases the terms of the preferred securities provide that the issuer would be obligated to attempt to issue common shares to raise funds for the purpose of making the preferred payments. However, there is no guarantee that the issuer would be successful in placing common shares. Preferred stockholders usually have no right to vote for corporate directors or on other matters. Shares of traditional preferred securities have a liquidation preference that generally equals the original purchase price at the date of issuance. The market value of preferred securities may be affected by, among other factors, favorable and unfavorable changes impacting the issuer or industries in which they operate, movements in interest rates and inflation and the broader economic and credit environments, and by actual and anticipated changes in tax laws, such as changes in corporate and individual income tax rates. Because the claim on an issuer's earnings represented by traditional preferred securities may become onerous when interest rates fall below the rate payable on such securities, the issuer may redeem the securities. Thus, in declining interest rate environments in particular, a Fund's holdings of higher rate-paying fixed rate preferred securities may be reduced, and the Fund may be unable to acquire securities of comparable credit quality paying comparable rates with the redemption proceeds.

Hybrid-preferred Securities. Hybrid-preferred securities are typically junior and fully subordinated liabilities of an issuer or the beneficiary of a guarantee that is junior and fully subordinated to the other liabilities of the guarantor. In addition, hybrid-preferred securities typically permit an issuer to defer the payment of income for eighteen months or more without triggering an event of default. Generally, the maximum deferral period is five years. Because of their subordinated position in the capital structure of an issuer, the ability to defer payments for extended periods of time without default consequences to the issuer, and certain other features (such as restrictions on common dividend payments by the issuer or ultimate guarantor when full cumulative payments on the hybrid preferred securities have not been made), these hybrid-preferred securities are often treated as close substitutes for traditional preferred securities, both by issuers and investors. Hybrid-preferred securities have many of the key characteristics of equity due to their subordinated position in an issuer's capital structure and because their quality and value are heavily dependent on the profitability of the issuer rather than on any legal claims to specific assets or cash flows.

Hybrid-preferred securities are typically issued with a final maturity date. In certain instances, a final maturity date may be extended and/or the final payment of principal may be deferred at the issuer's option for a specified time without default. No redemption can typically take place unless all cumulative payment obligations have been met, although issuers may be able to engage in open-market repurchases without regard to whether all payments have been paid.

Many hybrid-preferred securities are issued by trusts or other special purpose entities established by operating companies and are not a direct obligation of an operating company. At the time the trust or special purpose entity sells such preferred securities to investors, it purchases debt of the operating company (with terms comparable to those of the trust or special purpose entity securities), which enables the operating company to deduct for tax purposes the interest paid on the debt held by the trust or special purpose entity. The trust or special purpose entity is generally required to be treated as transparent for U.S. federal income tax purposes such that the holders of the trust preferred securities are treated as owning beneficial interests in the underlying debt of the operating company. Accordingly, payments on the hybrid-preferred securities are generally treated as interest rather than dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes and, as such, are not eligible for the DRD or the reduced rates of tax that apply to qualified dividend income. The trust or special purpose entity in turn would be a holder of the operating company's debt and would have priority with respect to the operating company's earnings and profits over the operating company's common stockholders, but would typically be subordinated to other classes of the operating company's debt. Typically a preferred security has a credit rating that is lower than that of its corresponding operating company's senior debt securities.

Within the category of hybrid-preferred securities are senior debt instruments that trade in the broader preferred securities market. These debt instruments, which are sources of long-term capital for the issuers, have structural features similar to other preferred securities such as maturities ranging from 30 years to perpetuity, call features, quarterly payments, exchange listings and the inclusion of accrued interest in the trading price.

In some cases traditional and hybrid securities may include loss absorption provisions that make the securities more equity like. This is particularly true in the financial sector, the largest preferred issuer segment. Events in global financial markets in recent periods have caused regulators to review the function and structure of preferred securities more closely. While loss absorption language is relatively rare in the preferred market today, it may become much more prevalent.

In one version of a preferred security with loss absorption characteristics, the liquidation value of the security may be adjusted downward to below the original par value under certain circumstances. This may occur, for instance, in the event that business losses have eroded capital to a substantial extent. The write down of the par value would occur automatically and would not entitle the holders to seek bankruptcy of the company. Such securities may provide for circumstances under which the liquidation value may be adjusted back up to par, such as an improvement in capitalization and/or earnings.

Another preferred structure with loss absorption characteristics is the contingent capital security (sometimes referred to as ‘‘CoCo’s’’). These securities provide for mandatory conversion into common shares of the issuer under certain circumstances. The mandatory conversion might relate, for instance, to maintenance of a capital minimum, whereby falling below the minimum would trigger automatic conversion. Since the common stock of the issuer may not pay a dividend, investors in these instruments could experience a reduced income rate, potentially to zero; and conversion would deepen the subordination of the investor, hence worsening standing in a bankruptcy. In addition, some such instruments have a set stock conversion rate that would cause an automatic write-down of capital if the price of the stock is below the conversion price on the conversion date.

Preferred securities may be subject to changes in regulations and there can be no assurance that the current regulatory treatment of preferred securities will continue.

Convertible Preferred Securities. Some preferred securities, generally known as convertible preferred securities, provide for an investor option to convert their holdings into common shares of the issuer. These securities may have lower rates of income than other preferred securities, and the conversion option may cause them to trade more like equities than typical fixed income instruments.

Floating Rate Securities. Each Fund may invest in floating rate preferred securities, which provide for a periodic adjustment in the interest rate paid on the securities. The terms of such securities provide that interest rates are

adjusted periodically based upon an interest rate adjustment index. The adjustment intervals may be regular, and range from daily up to annually, or may be event-based, such as a change in the prime rate. Because of the interest rate reset feature, floating rate securities provide the Fund with a certain degree of protection against rises in interest rates, although the interest rates of floating rate securities will participate in any declines in interest rates as well.

Private Funds. Each Fund may also invest in private investment funds vehicles, or structures such as ‘‘hedge funds’’ or private equity funds. Private funds may utilize leverage without limit and, to the extent a Fund invests in private funds that utilize leverage, the Fund will indirectly be exposed to the risks associated with that leverage and the values of its shares may be more volatile as a result. If a fund or investment pool in which a Fund invests is not publicly offered or there is no public market for its shares, the Fund may be prohibited by the terms of its investment from selling its shares in the fund or pool, or may not be able to find a buyer for those shares at an acceptable price. Securities issued by private funds are generally issued in private placements and are restricted securities. An investment in a Private fund may be highly volatile and difficult to value. The Fund would bear its pro rata share of the expenses of any Private fund in which it invests.

Real Estate Companies. Each Fund, to varying degrees, may invest in real estate securities, including securities issued by REITs and other issuers in the real estate industry. To the extent that a Fund invests in real estate securities, that Fund’s portfolio will be impacted by the performance of the real estate market generally, and the Fund may be exposed to greater risk and experience higher volatility. Each Fund’s investments in real estate securities will be affected by factors generally affecting the value of real estate and the earnings of companies engaged in the real estate industry. These factors include, among others: (1) changes in general economic and market conditions; (2) risks related to local economic conditions, overbuilding and increased competition; (3) increases in property taxes and operating expenses; (4) changes in zoning laws; (5) casualty and condemnation losses; (6) variations in rental income, neighborhood values or the appeal of property to tenants; (7) the availability of financing; and (8) changes in interest rates. The value of investments in the real estate industry may go through cycles of relative under-performance and over-performance in comparison to the broader securities markets in general. Other factors may contribute to the risk of investing, directly or indirectly, in the commercial real estate industry.

Current Adverse Economic Conditions. The volatility in the broader credit markets over the past several years has caused the global financial markets to become more volatile. The real estate industry has been dramatically impacted as a result. The confluence of the dislocation in the credit markets generally, along with the broad-based stress in the United States real estate industry, has created a difficult operating environment for owners and investors in real estate and investors should be aware that the general risks of investing in real estate may be magnified.

In addition, recent instability in the United States, European and other credit markets has at times made it more difficult for borrowers to obtain financing or refinancing on attractive terms or at all. In particular, because of conditions in the credit markets, borrowers may be subject to increased interest expenses for borrowed money and tightening underwriting standards. There is also a risk that a general lack of liquidity or other adverse events in the credit markets may adversely affect the ability of real estate companies to finance real estate developments and projects or to refinance completed projects.

For example, adverse developments relating to sub-prime mortgages in the United States have adversely affected the willingness of some lenders to extend credit, which may make it more difficult for real estate companies to obtain financing, on attractive terms or at all, so that they may commence or complete real estate development projects, refinance completed projects or purchase real estate. It also may adversely affect the price at which companies can sell real estate, because purchasers may not be able to obtain financing on attractive terms or at all. These developments also may adversely affect the broader economy, which in turn may adversely affect the real estate markets. Such developments could, in turn, reduce the number of real estate funds publicly-traded during the investment period and reduce a Fund's investment opportunities in the real estate industry.

Development Risks. Certain commercial real estate companies engage in the development or construction of real estate properties. To the extent a Fund directly or indirectly invests in such companies, the Fund will be exposed to a variety of risks inherent in real estate development and construction. These include the risk that there will be insufficient tenant or consumer demand to occupy newly developed properties or produce the revenues needed to make the development project successful, the risk that prices of construction materials or construction labor may rise materially during the development, and the risk that other legal, regulatory, economic or other factors beyond the real estate company's control will adversely affect the viability of a development project.

Lack of Insurance. Certain issuers of real estate securities in which a Fund may directly or indirectly invest may fail to carry comprehensive liability, fire, flood, earthquake, extended coverage and rental loss insurance, or the insurance that is in place may be insufficient or subject to various policy specifications, limits and deductibles. Should any type of uninsured loss occur, a real estate company could lose its investment in, and anticipated profits and cash flows from, a number of properties. As a result, the Fund's investment performance may be adversely affected.

Financial Leverage. Many real estate companies utilize a high degree of financial leverage, which increases investment risk and could adversely affect a company's operations and market value in periods of rising interest rates. In addition, the financial covenants associated with borrowings may limit a real estate company's flexibility and

adversely affect its ability to operate effectively.

Environmental Issues. In connection with the ownership (direct or indirect), operation, management, and development of real properties that may contain hazardous or toxic substances, a real estate company may be considered an owner, operator or responsible party of such properties, and may therefore be potentially liable for environmental issues, including removal or remediation costs, governmental fines and liabilities for injuries to persons and property, as well as other costs. The existence of any such material environmental liability could have a material adverse effect on the results of operations and cash flow of any such real estate company and, as a result, the amount available to make distributions on shares of a Fund could be reduced.

There are also special risks associated with the particular commercial real estate sectors in which a Fund may invest. These include:

Retail Properties. Retail properties are affected by the overall health of the economy and may be adversely affected by, among other things, the growth of alternative forms of retailing, bankruptcy, departure or cessation of operations of a tenant, a shift in consumer demand due to demographic changes, changes in spending patterns and lease terminations.

Office Properties. Office properties are affected by the overall health of the economy and other factors such as a downturn in the businesses operated by their tenants, obsolescence and non-competitiveness.

Industrial Properties. Industrial properties are affected by the overall health of the economy and other factors such as downturns in the manufacturing, processing and shipping of goods.

Hotel Properties. The risks of hotel properties include, among other things, the necessity of a high level of continuing capital expenditures, competition, increases in operating costs that may not be offset by increases in revenues, dependence on business and commercial travelers and tourism, increases in fuel costs and other expenses of travel, and adverse effects of general and local economic conditions. Hotel properties tend to be more sensitive to adverse economic conditions and competition than many other commercial properties.

Healthcare Properties. Healthcare properties and healthcare providers are affected by several significant factors, including federal, state and local laws governing licenses, certification, adequacy of care, pharmaceutical distribution, rates, equipment, personnel and other factors regarding operations, continued availability of revenue from government reimbursement programs and competition on a local and regional basis. The failure of any healthcare operator to comply with governmental laws and regulations may affect its ability to operate its facility or receive government reimbursements.

Multifamily Properties. The value and successful operation of a multifamily property may be affected by a number of factors, such as the location of the property, the ability of the management team, the level of mortgage interest rates, the presence of competing properties, adverse economic conditions in the locale, oversupply and rent control laws or other laws affecting such properties.

Shopping Centers. Shopping center properties are dependent upon the successful operations and financial condition of their tenants, particularly certain of their major tenants, and could be adversely affected by bankruptcy of those tenants. In some cases a tenant may lease a significant portion of the space in one center, and the filing of bankruptcy

could cause significant revenue loss, including the loss of revenue from smaller tenants with co-tenancy rights. Like others in the commercial real estate industry, shopping centers are subject to environmental risks and interest rate risk. They also face the need to enter into new leases or renew leases on favorable terms to generate rental revenues. Shopping center properties could be adversely affected by changes in the local markets where their properties are located, as well as by adverse changes in national economic and market conditions.

Self-Storage Properties. The value and successful operation of a self-storage property may be affected by a number of factors, such as the ability of the management team, the location of the property, the presence of competing properties, changes in traffic patterns, and effects of general and local economic conditions with respect to rental rates and occupancy levels.

REITs. Each Fund may invest in REITs, including domestic and foreign REITs. REITs are pooled investment vehicles that invest primarily in either real estate or real estate related loans. In addition to the general risks associated with investments in real estate, investing in REITs will subject a Fund to various risks, including:

Dependence on Tenants. The value of a Fund's investments in REITs and the ability to make distributions to its shareholders depend upon the ability of the tenants of the properties in which such REITs invest to generate enough income in excess of their operating expenses to make their lease payments. Changes beyond the control of a REIT's portfolio companies may adversely affect their tenants' ability to make their lease payments and, in such event, would substantially reduce both their income from operations and ability to make distributions to such REIT's portfolio companies and, consequently, the Fund.

Risks of Investing in Net-Leased Real Estate. Where REITs invest in properties with net leases, in addition to satisfying their rent obligations, tenants in such properties are responsible for the payment of real estate taxes, insurance and ordinary maintenance and repairs. However, under the provisions of future leases with such tenants, the REITs may be required to pay some expenses, such as the costs of environmental liabilities, roof and structural repairs, insurance, certain non-structural repairs and maintenance. If such properties incur significant expenses that must be paid by such REITs under the terms of these leases, the REITs business, financial condition and results of operations will be adversely affected and the amount of cash available to meet expenses and to make distributions to holders of their common stock may be reduced.

Tax Risk. Qualification as a REIT under the Code in any particular year is a complex analysis that depends on a number of factors. There can be no assurance that the entities in which a Fund invests with the expectation that they will be taxed as a REIT will qualify as a REIT. An entity that fails to qualify as a REIT would be subject to a corporate level tax, would not be entitled to a deduction for dividends paid to its shareholders and would not pass through to its shareholders the character of income earned by the entity. If a Fund were to invest in an entity that failed to qualify as a REIT, such failure could significantly reduce the Fund's yield on that investment.

Dividends paid by REITs will not generally qualify for the reduced U.S. federal income tax rates applicable to qualified dividends under the Code. A Fund's investments in REITs may include an additional risk to shareholders. Some or all of a REIT's annual distributions to its investors may constitute a non-taxable return of capital. Any such return of capital will generally reduce a Fund's basis in the REIT investment, but not below zero. To the extent that the distributions from a particular REIT exceed the Fund's basis in such REIT, the Fund will generally recognize gain. In part because REIT distributions often include a non-taxable return of capital, Fund distributions to shareholders may also include a non-taxable return of capital. Shareholders that receive such a distribution will also reduce their tax basis in their shares of such Fund, but not below zero. To the extent that the distribution exceeds a shareholder's basis in the Fund's shares, such shareholder will generally recognize a capital gain.

Key Personnel Risk. Where investments are made in REITs, success may depend to a significant degree upon the contributions of certain of executive officers and other key personnel who may be difficult to replace. There can be no guarantee that all, or any particular one of such key personnel, will remain affiliated with the REIT's adviser. If any of such key personnel were to cease their affiliation with the REIT's adviser, operating results could suffer. Further, separate key person life insurance may not be maintained on such key personnel. The future success of such REITs depends, in large part, upon their adviser's ability to hire and retain highly skilled managerial, operational, and marketing personnel. Competition for such personnel is intense, and there can be no assurance of success in attracting and retaining such skilled personnel. If such key personnel are lost or their services are unable to obtain, the ability to implement investment strategies could be delayed or hindered, and the value of the Fund's investment may decline.

Repurchase Agreements. Repurchase agreements, which may be viewed as a type of secured lending by a Fund, typically involve the acquisition by the Fund of debt securities from a selling financial institution such as a bank, savings and loan association or broker-dealer. The repurchase agreements will provide that the Fund will sell back to the institution, and that the institution will repurchase, the underlying security (''collateral'') at a specified price and at a fixed time in the future, usually not more than seven days from the date of purchase. The collateral will be maintained

in a segregated account and, with respect to repurchase agreements, will be marked to market daily to ensure that the full value of the collateral, as specified in the repurchase agreement, does not decrease below the repurchase price plus accrued interest. If such a decrease occurs, additional collateral will be requested and, when received, added to the account to maintain full collateralization. The Fund will accrue interest from the institution until the date the repurchase occurs. Although this date is deemed by the Fund to be the maturity date of a repurchase agreement, the maturities of the collateral securities are not subject to any limits and may exceed one year.

Reverse Repurchase Agreements. Reverse repurchase agreements involve sales by a Fund of portfolio securities concurrently with an agreement by the Fund to repurchase the same securities at a later date at a fixed price. Reverse repurchase agreements are speculative techniques involving leverage. Reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the market value of the securities the Fund is obligated to repurchase under the agreement may decline below the repurchase price. Reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the buyer of the securities sold might be unable to deliver them when the Fund seeks to repurchase the securities. If the buyer files for bankruptcy or becomes insolvent, the Fund may be delayed or prevented from recovering the security that it sold.

Securities Loans. Each Fund may make secured loans of its portfolio securities, on either a short-term or long-term basis, amounting to not more than one third of its total assets, thereby potentially realizing additional income. The risks in lending portfolio securities, as with other extensions of credit, consist of possible delay in recovery of the securities or possible loss of rights in the collateral should the borrower fail financially. If a borrower defaults, the value of the collateral may decline before the Fund can dispose of it.

Short Sales. Short sales are transactions in which a Fund sells a security it does not own, in anticipation of a decline in the market value of that security. To complete such a transaction, the Fund must borrow the security to make delivery to the buyer. The Fund then is obligated to replace the security borrowed by purchasing it at the market price at or prior to the time of replacement. The price at such time may be more or less than the price at which the security was sold by the Fund. Until the security is replaced, the Fund is required to repay the lender any dividends or interest that accrue during the period of the loan. To borrow the security, the Fund also may be required to pay a premium, which would increase the cost of the security sold. The net proceeds of the short sale will be retained by the broker (or by the Fund's custodian in a special custody account), to the extent necessary to meet margin requirements, until the short position is closed out. The Fund also will incur transaction costs in effecting short sales.

The Fund will incur a loss as a result of the short sale if the price of the security increases between the date of the short sale and the date on which the Fund replaces the borrowed security. The Fund will generally realize a gain if the security declines in price between those dates. The amount of any gain will be decreased, and the amount of any loss increased, by the amount of the premium, dividends, interest or expenses the Fund may be required to pay in connection with a short sale. An increase in the value of a security sold short by the Fund over the price at which it was sold short will result in a loss to the Fund. There can be no assurance that the Fund will be able to close out the position at any particular time or at an acceptable price. The Fund's ability to engage in short sales may from time to time be limited or prohibited because of the inability to borrow certain securities in the market, legal restrictions on short sales or other reasons.

Special Purpose Acquisition Companies. Each Fund may invest in stock, warrants and other securities of special purpose acquisition companies (''SPACs'') or similar special purpose entities that pool funds to seek potential acquisition opportunities. Unless and until an acquisition meeting the SPAC's requirements is completed, a SPAC generally invests its assets (less a portion retained to cover expenses) in U.S. Government securities, money market securities and cash; if an acquisition that meets the requirements for the SPAC is not completed within a pre-established period of time, the invested funds are returned to the entity's shareholders. Because SPACs and similar entities have no operating history or ongoing business other than seeking acquisitions, the value of their securities is particularly dependent on the ability of the entity's management to identify and complete a profitable acquisition. Some SPACs may pursue acquisitions only within certain industries or regions, which may increase the volatility of their prices. In addition, these securities, which are typically traded in the over-the-counter market, may be considered illiquid and/or be subject to restrictions on resale. Each Fund's affiliates may create a SPAC for purchase by the Fund to assist the Fund in purchasing certain assets not otherwise available to the Fund.

Stripped Mortgage Securities. Stripped Mortgage Securities may be issued by Federal Agencies, or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, mortgage banks, commercial

banks, investment banks and special purpose subsidiaries of the foregoing. Stripped Mortgage Securities usually are structured with two classes that receive different proportions of the interest and principal distribution of a pool of mortgage assets. A common type of Stripped Mortgage Security will have one class receiving some of the interest and most of the principal from the mortgage assets, while the other class will receive most of the interest and the remainder of the principal. In the most extreme case, one class will receive all of the interest (the interest-only or ‘‘IO’’ class), while the other class will receive all of the principal (the principal-only or ‘‘PO’’ class). PO classes generate income through the accretion of the deep discount at which such securities are purchased, and, while PO classes do not receive periodic payments of interest, they receive monthly payments associated with scheduled amortization and principal prepayment from the mortgage assets underlying the PO class. The yield to maturity on a PO or an IO class security is extremely sensitive to the rate of principal payments (including prepayments) on the related underlying mortgage assets. A slower than expected rate of principal payments may have an adverse effect on a PO class security’s yield to maturity. If the underlying mortgage assets experience slower than anticipated principal repayment, the Fund may fail to fully recoup its initial investment in these securities. Conversely, a rapid rate of principal payments may have a material adverse effect on an IO class security’s yield to maturity. If the underlying mortgage assets experience greater than anticipated prepayments or principal, the Fund may fail to fully recoup its initial investment in these securities.

Structured Investments. A structured investment is a security having a return tied to an underlying index or other security or asset class. Structured investments generally are individually negotiated agreements and may be traded over-the-counter. Structured investments are organized and operated to restructure the investment characteristics of the underlying security. This restructuring involves the deposit with or purchase by an entity, such as a corporation or trust, or specified instruments (such as commercial bank loans) and the issuance by that entity or one or more classes of securities (‘‘structured securities’’) backed by, or representing interests in, the underlying instruments. The cash flow on the underlying instruments may be apportioned among the newly issued structured securities to create securities with different investment characteristics, such as varying maturities, payment priorities and interest rate provisions, and the extent of such payments made with respect to structured securities is dependent on the extent of the cash flow on the underlying instruments. Because structured securities typically involve no credit enhancement, their credit risk generally will be equivalent to that of the underlying instruments. Investments in structured securities are generally of a class of structured securities that is either subordinated or unsubordinated to the right of payment of another class. Subordinated structured securities typically have higher yields and present greater risks than unsubordinated structured securities. Investments in government and government-related and restructured debt instruments are subject to special risks, including the inability or unwillingness to repay principal and interest, requests to reschedule or restructure outstanding debt, and requests to extend additional loan amounts.

Warrants. Each Fund may invest in warrants, which are instruments that give the Fund the right to purchase certain securities from an issuer at a specific price (the ‘‘strike price’’) for a limited period of time. The strike price of warrants typically is much lower than the current market price of the underlying securities, yet they are subject to similar price fluctuations. As a result, warrants may be more volatile investments than the underlying securities and may offer greater potential for capital appreciation as well as capital loss. Warrants do not entitle a holder to dividends or voting rights with respect to the underlying securities and do not represent any rights in the assets of the issuing company. Also, the value of the warrant does not necessarily change with the value of the underlying securities and a warrant ceases to have value if it is not exercised prior to the expiration date. These factors can make warrants more speculative than other types of investments.

In addition to warrants on securities, each Fund may purchase put warrants and call warrants whose values vary depending on the change in the value of one or more specified securities indices (‘‘index warrants’’). Index warrants are generally issued by banks or other financial institutions and give the holder the right, at any time during the term of the warrant, to receive upon exercise of the warrant a cash payment from the issuer based on the value of the underlying index at the time of exercise. In general, if the value of the underlying index rises above the exercise price of the index warrant, the holder of a call warrant will be entitled to receive a cash payment from the issuer upon exercise based on the difference between the value of the index and the exercise price of the warrant; if the value of the underlying index falls, the holder of a put warrant will be entitled to receive a cash payment from the issuer upon exercise based on the difference between the exercise price of the warrant and the value of the index. The holder of a warrant would not be entitled to any payments from the issuer at any time when, in the case of a call warrant, the exercise price is greater than the value of the underlying index, or, in the case of a put warrant, the exercise price is less than the value of the underlying index. If the Fund were not to exercise an index warrant prior to its expiration, then the Fund would lose the amount of the purchase price paid by it for the warrant.

Each Fund will normally use index warrants in a manner similar to its use of options on securities indices. The risks of the Fund’s use of index warrants are generally similar to those relating to its use of index options. Unlike most index

options, however, index warrants are issued in limited amounts and are not obligations of a regulated clearing agency, but are backed only by the credit of the bank or other institution which issues the warrant. Also, index warrants generally have longer terms than index options. Index warrants are not likely to be as liquid as certain index options backed by a recognized clearing agency. In addition, the terms of index warrants may limit the Fund's ability to exercise the warrants at such time, or in such quantities, as the Fund would otherwise wish to do.

When, As and If Issued Securities. Each Fund may purchase securities on a ''when, as and if issued'' basis under which the issuance of the security depends upon the occurrence of a subsequent event, such as approval of a merger, corporate reorganization, leveraged buyout, or debt restructuring. An increase in the percentage of the Fund's assets committed to the purchase of securities on a ''when, as and if issued'' basis may create investment leverage and increase the volatility of the Fund's NAV. The Fund may also sell securities on a ''when, as and if issued'' basis provided that the issuance of the security will result automatically from the exchange or conversion of a security owned by the Fund at the time of the sale.

When-Issued, Delayed Delivery and Forward Commitment Securities. To reduce the risk of changes in securities prices and interest rates, a Fund may purchase securities on a forward commitment, when-issued or delayed delivery basis. This means that delivery and payment occur a number of days after the date of the commitment to purchase. The payment obligation and the interest rate receivable with respect to such purchases are determined when the Fund enters into the commitment, but the Fund does not make payment until it receives delivery from the counterparty. The Fund may, if it is deemed advisable, sell the securities after it commits to a purchase but before delivery and settlement takes place.

Securities purchased on a forward commitment, when-issued or delayed delivery basis are subject to changes in value based upon the public's perception of the creditworthiness of the issuer and changes (either real or anticipated) in the level of interest rates. Purchasing securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis can present the risk that the yield available in the market when the delivery takes place may be higher than that obtained in the transaction itself. Purchasing securities on a forward commitment, when-issued or delayed delivery basis when the Fund is fully, or almost fully invested, results in a form of leverage and may cause greater fluctuation in the value of the net assets of the Fund. In addition, there is a risk that securities purchased on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis may not be delivered, and that the purchaser of securities sold by the Fund on a forward basis will not honor its purchase obligation. In such cases, the Fund may incur a loss.

Zero-Coupon and Payment-in-Kind Bonds. Each Fund may invest in so-called ''zero-coupon'' bonds and ''payment-in-kind'' bonds. Zero-coupon bonds are issued at a significant discount from their principal amount in lieu of paying interest periodically. Payment-in-kind bonds allow the issuer, at its option, to make current interest payments on the bonds either in cash or in additional bonds. Because zero-coupon and payment-in-kind bonds do not pay current interest in cash, their value is subject to greater fluctuation in response to changes in market interest rates than bonds that pay interest currently. Both zero-coupon and payment-in-kind bonds allow an issuer to avoid the need to generate cash to meet current interest payments. Accordingly, such bonds may involve greater credit risks than bonds paying interest currently in cash. Each Fund is required to accrue interest income on such investments and to distribute such amounts at least annually to shareholders even though the investments do not make any current interest payments. Thus, it may be necessary at times for the Funds to liquidate other investments in order to satisfy its distribution requirements under the Code.

Tactical Credit Fund and International Select Equity Fund

***Bank Obligations*.** Bank obligations in which each Fund may invest include certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances and fixed time deposits. Certificates of deposit are negotiable certificates issued against funds deposited in a commercial bank for a definite period of time and earning a specified return. Bankers' acceptances are negotiable drafts or bills of exchange, normally drawn by an importer or exporter to pay for specific merchandise, which are "accepted" by a bank, meaning, in effect, that the bank unconditionally agrees to pay the face value of the instrument on maturity. Fixed time deposits are bank obligations payable at a stated maturity date and bearing interest at a fixed rate. Fixed time deposits may be withdrawn on demand by the investor but may be subject to early withdrawal penalties which vary depending upon market conditions and the remaining maturity of the obligation.

There are no contractual restrictions on the right to transfer a beneficial interest in a fixed time deposit to a third party, although there is no market for such deposits. Each Fund will not invest in fixed time deposits which: (1) are not subject to prepayment; or (2) provide for withdrawal penalties upon prepayment (other than overnight deposits) if, in the aggregate, more than 15% of its net assets would be invested in such deposits, repurchase agreements maturing in more than seven days and other illiquid assets.

Obligations of foreign banks involve somewhat different investment risks than those affecting obligations of United States banks, including the possibilities that their liquidity could be impaired because of future political and economic developments, that their obligations may be less marketable than comparable obligations of United States banks, that a foreign jurisdiction might impose withholding taxes on interest income payable on those obligations, that foreign deposits may be seized or nationalized, that foreign governmental restrictions such as exchange controls may be adopted which might adversely affect the payment of principal and interest on those obligations and that the selection of those obligations may be more difficult because there may be less publicly available information concerning foreign banks or the accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards, practices and requirements applicable to foreign banks may differ from those applicable to United States banks. Foreign banks are not generally subject to examination by any U.S. Government agency or instrumentality.

Bankers Acceptances. Bankers' acceptances are credit instruments evidencing the obligation of a bank to pay a draft that has been drawn on it by a customer. These instruments reflect the obligation of both the bank and the drawer to pay the face amount of the instrument upon maturity.

Certificates Of Deposit. Certificates of deposit are certificates evidencing the indebtedness of a commercial bank to repay funds deposited with it for a definite period of time (usually from 14 days to one year) at a stated or variable interest rate. Variable rate certificates of deposit provide that the interest rate will fluctuate on designated dates based on changes in a designated base rate (such as the composite rate for certificates of deposit established by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York).

Time Deposits. Time deposits are bank deposits for fixed periods of time. Fixed time deposits may be withdrawn on demand by the investor, but may be subject to early withdrawal penalties which may vary depending upon market conditions and the remaining maturity of the obligation. There are no contractual restrictions on the right to transfer a beneficial interest in a fixed time deposit to a third party, although there is no market for such deposits.

Borrowing. Each Fund may borrow money to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, and as interpreted, modified or otherwise permitted by regulatory authority having jurisdiction, from time to time. This means that, in general, each Fund may borrow money from banks for any purpose on a secured basis in an amount up to 33-1/3% of its total assets. Each Fund may also borrow money for temporary administrative purposes on an unsecured basis in an amount not to exceed 5% of its total assets.

Specifically, provisions of the 1940 Act require each Fund to maintain continuous asset coverage (that is, total assets including borrowings, less liabilities exclusive of borrowings) of 300% of the amount borrowed, with an exception for borrowings not in excess of 5% of the Fund's total assets made for temporary administrative purposes. Any borrowings for temporary administrative purposes in excess of 5% of the Fund's total assets must maintain continuous asset coverage. If the 300% asset coverage should decline as a result of market fluctuations or other reasons, the Fund may be required to sell some of its portfolio holdings within three days to reduce the debt and restore the 300% asset coverage, even though it may be disadvantageous from an investment standpoint to sell securities at that time.

As noted below, each Fund also may enter into certain transactions, including reverse repurchase agreements, mortgage dollar rolls and sale-buybacks, that can be viewed as constituting a form of borrowing or financing transaction by the Fund. To the extent the Fund covers its commitment under a reverse repurchase agreement (or economically similar transaction) by the segregation or "earmarking" of assets determined in accordance with procedures adopted by the Board of Trustees, equal in value to the amount of the Fund's commitment to repurchase, such an agreement will not be considered a "senior security" by the Fund and therefore will not be subject to the 300% asset coverage requirement otherwise applicable to borrowings by the Fund. Borrowing will tend to exaggerate the effect on net asset value ("NAV") of any increase or decrease in the market value of the Fund's portfolio. Money borrowed will be subject to interest costs which may or may not be recovered by appreciation of the securities purchased. The Fund also may be required to maintain minimum average balances in connection with such borrowing

or to pay a commitment or other fee to maintain a line of credit; either of these requirements would increase the cost of borrowing over the stated interest rate.

Each Fund may enter into reverse repurchase agreements, mortgage dollar rolls and economically similar transactions. A reverse repurchase agreement involves the sale of a portfolio-eligible security by the Fund, coupled with its agreement to repurchase the instrument at a specified time and price. Under a reverse repurchase agreement, the Fund continues to receive any principal and interest payments on the underlying security during the term of the agreement. The Fund typically will segregate or "earmark" assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, equal (on a daily mark-to-market basis) to its obligations under reverse repurchase agreements. However, reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the market value of securities retained by the Fund may decline below the repurchase price of the securities sold by the Fund which it is obligated to repurchase. To the extent that positions in reverse repurchase agreements are not covered through the segregation or "earmarking" of liquid assets at least equal to the amount of any forward purchase commitment, such transactions would be subject to the Fund's limitations on borrowings, which would, among other things, restrict the aggregate of such transactions (plus any other borrowings) to 33-1/3% of the Fund's total assets.

A “mortgage dollar roll” is similar to a reverse repurchase agreement in certain respects. In a “dollar roll” transaction, a Fund sells a mortgage-related security, such as a security issued by the Government National Mortgage Association (“GNMA”), to a dealer and simultaneously agrees to repurchase a similar security (but not the same security) in the future at a predetermined price. A dollar roll can be viewed, like a reverse repurchase agreement, as a collateralized borrowing in which the Fund pledges a mortgage-related security to a dealer to obtain cash. Unlike in the case of reverse repurchase agreements, the dealer with which the Fund enters into a dollar roll transaction is not obligated to return the same securities as those originally sold by the Fund, but only securities which are “substantially identical.” To be considered substantially identical, the securities returned to the Fund generally must: (1) be collateralized by the same types of underlying mortgages; (2) be issued by the same agency and be part of the same program; (3) have a similar original stated maturity; (4) have identical net coupon rates; (5) have similar market yields (and therefore price); and (6) satisfy “good delivery” requirements, meaning that the aggregate principal amounts of the securities delivered and received back must be within 0.01% of the initial amount delivered.

The Fund’s obligation under a dollar roll agreement must be covered by segregated or “earmarked” liquid assets equal in value to the securities subject to repurchase by the Fund. As with reverse repurchase agreements, to the extent that positions in dollar roll agreements are not covered by segregated or “earmarked” liquid assets at least equal to the amount of any forward purchase commitment, such transactions would be subject to the Fund’s restrictions on borrowings. Furthermore, because dollar roll transactions may be for terms ranging between one and six months, dollar roll transactions may be deemed “illiquid” and subject to the Fund’s overall limitations on investments in illiquid securities.

Each Fund also may affect simultaneous purchase and sale transactions that are known as “sale-buybacks.” A sale-buyback is similar to a reverse repurchase agreement, except that in a sale-buyback, the counterparty that purchases the security is entitled to receive any principal or interest payments made on the underlying security pending settlement of the Fund’s repurchase of the underlying security. The Fund’s obligation under a sale-buyback typically would be offset by liquid assets equal in value to the amount of the Fund’s forward commitment to repurchase the subject security.

Commercial Paper. Each Fund may invest in commercial paper. Commercial paper consists of short-term (up to 270 days) unsecured promissory notes issued by corporations and other entities in order to finance their current operations.

Common Stock. Common stock represents an equity (ownership) interest in a company or other entity. This ownership interest often gives the Fund the right to vote on measures affecting the company’s organization and operations. Although common stocks generally have had a history of long-term growth in value, their prices are often volatile in the short-term and can be influenced by both general market risk and specific corporate risks. Accordingly, the Fund can lose money through its stock investments.

Convertible Securities. Each Fund may invest in convertible securities, which may offer higher income than the common stocks into which they are convertible. A convertible security is a bond, debenture, note, preferred stock, or

other security that entitles the holder to acquire common stock or other equity securities of the same or a different issuer. A convertible security generally entitles the holder to receive interest paid or accrued until the convertible security matures or is redeemed, converted or exchanged. Before conversion, convertible securities have characteristics similar to non-convertible debt or preferred securities, as applicable. Convertible securities are subordinate in rank to any senior debt obligations of the issuer, and, therefore, an issuer's convertible securities entail more risk than its debt obligations. Convertible securities generally offer lower interest or dividend yields than non-convertible debt securities of similar credit quality because of the potential for capital appreciation. In addition, convertible securities are often lower-rated securities. Convertible securities rank senior to common stock in a corporation's capital structure and, therefore, generally entail less risk than the corporation's common stock, although the extent to which such risk is reduced depends in large measure upon the degree to which the convertible security sells above its value as a fixed income security.

Because of the conversion feature, the price of the convertible security will normally fluctuate in some proportion to changes in the price of the underlying asset, and as such it is subject to risks relating to the activities of the issuer and/or general market and economic conditions. The income component of a convertible security may tend to cushion the security against declines in the price of the underlying asset. However, the income component of convertible securities causes fluctuations based upon changes in interest rates and the credit quality of the issuer.

If the convertible security's "conversion value," which is the market value of the underlying common stock that would be obtained upon the conversion of the convertible security, is substantially below the "investment value," which is the value of a convertible security viewed without regard to its conversion feature (i.e., strictly on the basis of its yield), the price of the convertible security is governed principally by its investment value. If the conversion value of a convertible security increases to a point that approximates or exceeds its investment value, the value of the security will be principally influenced by its conversion value. A convertible security will sell at a premium over its conversion value to the extent investors place value on the right to acquire the underlying common stock while holding an income-producing security.

A convertible security may be subject to redemption at the option of the issuer at a predetermined price. If a convertible security held by the Fund is called for redemption, the Fund would be required to permit the issuer to redeem the security and convert it to underlying common stock, or would sell the convertible security to a third party, which may have an adverse effect on the Fund's ability to achieve its investment objective. The Fund generally would invest in convertible securities for their favorable price characteristics and total return potential and would normally not exercise an option to convert unless the security is called or conversion is forced.

Corporate Debt Securities. Each Fund's investments in U.S. dollar or foreign currency-denominated corporate debt securities of domestic or foreign issuers are limited to corporate debt securities (corporate bonds, debentures, notes and other similar corporate debt instruments, including convertible securities) which meet the minimum ratings criteria set forth for the Fund, or, if unrated, are in the Advisor's opinion comparable in quality to corporate debt securities in which the Fund may invest.

Corporate income producing securities may include forms of preferred or preference stock. The rate of interest on a corporate debt security may be fixed, floating or variable, and may vary inversely with respect to a reference rate. The rate of return or return of principal on some debt obligations may be linked or indexed to the level of exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and a foreign currency or currencies. Debt securities may be acquired with warrants attached.

For a discussion of securities rated below-investment grade, see "Below-Investment Grade Securities" below.

Debt Securities. Debt securities represent money borrowed that obligates the issuer (e.g., a corporation, municipality, government, government agency) to repay the borrowed amount at maturity (when the obligation is due and payable)

and usually to pay the holder interest at specific times.

Depositary Receipts. American Depositary Receipts ("ADRs") as well as other "hybrid" forms of ADRs, including European Depositary Receipts ("EDRs") and Global Depositary Receipts ("GDRs"), are certificates evidencing ownership of shares of a foreign issuer. These certificates are issued by depository banks and generally trade on an established market in the United States or elsewhere. The underlying shares are held in trust by a custodian bank or similar financial institution. The depository bank may not have physical custody of the underlying securities at all times and may charge fees for various services, including forwarding dividends interest and shareholder information regarding corporate actions. ADRs may be available through "sponsored" or "unsponsored" facilities. A sponsored facility is established jointly by the issuer of the security underlying the receipt and a depositary. An unsponsored facility may be established by a depositary without participation by the issuer of the underlying security. Holders of unsponsored depositary receipts generally bear all the costs of the unsponsored facility. The depositary of an unsponsored facility frequently is under no obligation to distribute shareholder communications received from the issuer of the deposited security or to pass through, to the holders of the receipts, voting rights with respect to the deposited securities. ADRs are alternatives to directly purchasing the underlying foreign securities in their national markets and currencies. However, ADRs continue to be subject to many of the risks associated with investing directly in foreign securities. These risks include foreign exchange risk as well as the political and economic risks of the underlying issuer's country.

Derivative Instruments. In pursuing its investment objective, each Fund may, to the extent permitted by its investment objective and policies, purchase and sell (write) both put options and call options on securities, swap agreements, securities indexes, commodity indexes and foreign currencies, and enter into interest rate, foreign currency, index and commodity futures contracts and purchase and sell options on such futures contracts ("futures options") for hedging purposes, to seek to replicate the composition and performance of a particular index, or as part of its overall investment strategies. Each Fund may also purchase and sell foreign currency options for purposes of increasing exposure to a foreign currency or to shift exposure to foreign currency fluctuations from one country to another. Each Fund also may enter into swap agreements with respect to interest rates, commodities and indexes of securities or commodities, and to the extent it may invest in foreign currency-denominated securities, may enter into swap agreements with respect to foreign currencies. Each Fund may invest in structured notes. If other types of financial instruments, including other types of options, futures contracts, or futures options are traded in the future, each Fund may also use those instruments, provided that such instruments are consistent with the Fund's investment objective.

The value of some derivative instruments in which the Fund invests may be particularly sensitive to changes in prevailing interest rates, and, like the other investments of the Fund, the ability of the Fund to successfully utilize these instruments may depend in part upon the ability of the Advisor to forecast interest rates and other economic factors correctly. If the Advisor incorrectly forecasts such factors and has taken positions in derivative instruments contrary to prevailing market trends, the Fund could be exposed to the risk of loss.

The Fund might not employ any of the strategies described below, and no assurance can be given that any strategy used will succeed. If the Advisor incorrectly forecasts interest rates, market values or other economic factors in using a derivatives strategy for the Fund, the Fund might have been in a better position if it had not entered into the transaction at all. Also, suitable derivative transactions may not be available in all circumstances. The use of these strategies involves certain special risks, including a possible imperfect correlation, or even no correlation, between price movements of derivative instruments and price movements of related investments. While some strategies involving derivative instruments can reduce the risk of loss, they can also reduce the opportunity for gain or even result in losses by offsetting favorable price movements in related investments or otherwise, due to the possible inability of the Fund to purchase or sell a portfolio security at a time that otherwise would be favorable, the possible need to sell a portfolio security at a disadvantageous time because the Fund is required to maintain asset coverage, offsetting positions in connection with transactions in derivative instruments or the possible inability of the Fund to close out or to liquidate its derivatives positions. In addition, the Fund's use of such instruments may cause the Fund to realize higher amounts of short-term capital gains (generally taxed at ordinary income tax rates) than if it had not used such instruments. If the Fund gains exposure to an asset class using derivative instruments backed by a collateral portfolio of fixed income instruments, changes in the value of the fixed income instruments may result in greater or lesser exposure to that asset class than would have resulted from a direct investment in securities comprising that asset class.

Options on Securities and Indexes: Each Fund may, to the extent specified herein or in the Prospectus, purchase and sell both put and call options on fixed income or other securities or indexes in standardized contracts traded on foreign or domestic securities exchanges, boards of trade, or similar entities, or quoted on the National Association of Securities Dealers Automatic Quotation System ("NASDAQ") or on an over-the-counter market, and agreements, sometimes called cash puts, which may accompany the purchase of a new issue of bonds from a dealer.

An option on a security (or index) is a contract that gives the holder of the option, in return for a premium, the right to buy from (in the case of a call) or sell to (in the case of a put) the writer of the option the security underlying the option (or the cash value of the index) at a specified exercise price at any time during the term of the option. The writer of an option on a security has the obligation upon exercise of the option to deliver the underlying security upon payment of the exercise price or to pay the exercise price upon delivery of the underlying security. Upon exercise, the writer of an option on an index is obligated to pay the difference between the cash value of the index and the exercise price multiplied by the specified multiplier for the index option. (An index is designed to reflect features of a particular financial or securities market, a specific group of financial instruments or securities or certain economic indicators.)

Each Fund will write call options and put options only if they are “covered.” In the case of a call option on a security, the option is “covered” if the Fund owns the security underlying the call or has an absolute and immediate right to acquire that security without additional cash consideration (or, if additional cash consideration is required, cash or other assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, in such amount are segregated or “earmarked”) upon conversion or exchange of other securities held by the Fund. For a call option on an index, the option is covered if the Fund maintains with its custodian assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, in an amount equal to the contract value of the index. A call option is also covered if the Fund holds a call on the same security or index as the call written where the exercise price of the call held is (i) equal to or less than the exercise price of the call written, or greater than the exercise price of the call written, provided the difference is maintained by the Fund in segregated or “earmarked” assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees. A put option on a security or an index is “covered” if the Fund segregates or “earmarks” assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees equal to the exercise price. A put option is also covered if the Fund holds a put on the same security or index as the put written where the exercise price of the put held is (i) equal to or greater than the exercise price of the put written, or (ii) less than the exercise price of the put written, provided the difference is maintained by the Fund in segregated or “earmarked” assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees.

If an option written by the Fund expires unexercised, the Fund realizes a capital gain equal to the premium received at the time the option was written. If an option purchased by the Fund expires unexercised, the Fund realizes a capital loss equal to the premium paid. Prior to the earlier of exercise or expiration, an exchange traded option may be closed out by an offsetting purchase or sale of an option of the same series (type, exchange, underlying security or index, exercise price and expiration). There can be no assurance, however, that a closing purchase or sale transaction can be effected when the Fund desires.

Each Fund may sell put or call options it has previously purchased, which could result in a net gain or loss depending on whether the amount realized on the sale is more or less than the premium and other transaction costs paid on the put or call option which is sold. Prior to exercise or expiration, an option may be closed out by an offsetting purchase or sale of an option of the same series. The Fund will realize a capital gain from a closing purchase transaction if the cost of the closing option is less than the premium received from writing the option, or, if it is more, the Fund will realize a capital loss. If the premium received from a closing sale transaction is more than the premium paid to purchase the option, the Fund will realize a capital gain or, if it is less, the Fund will realize a capital loss. The principal factors affecting the market value of a put or a call option include supply and demand, interest rates, the current market price of the underlying security or index in relation to the exercise price of the option, the volatility of the underlying security or index, and the time remaining until the expiration date.

The premium paid for a put or call option purchased by the Fund is an asset of the Fund. The premium received for an option written by the Fund is recorded as a deferred credit. The value of an option purchased or written is marked-to-market daily and is valued at the closing price on the exchange on which it is traded or, if not traded on an exchange or no closing price is available, at the mean between the last bid and asked prices.

Each Fund may write covered straddles consisting of a combination of a call and a put written on the same underlying security. A straddle will be covered when sufficient assets are deposited to meet such Fund's immediate obligations. The Fund may use the same liquid assets to cover both the call and put options where the exercise price of the call and put are the same or the exercise price of the call is higher than that of the put. In such cases, the Fund will also segregate or "earmark" liquid assets equivalent to the amount, if any, by which the put is "in the money."

Risks Associated with Options on Securities and Indexes: There are several risks associated with transactions in options on securities and on indexes. For example, there are significant differences between the securities and options markets that could result in an imperfect correlation between these markets, causing a given transaction not to achieve its objectives. A decision as to whether, when and how to use options involves the exercise of skill and judgment, and even a well-conceived transaction may be unsuccessful to some degree because of market behavior or unexpected events.

The writer of an option has no control over the time when it may be required to fulfill its obligation as a writer of the option. Once an option writer has received an exercise notice, it cannot effect a closing purchase transaction in order to terminate its obligation under the option and must deliver the underlying security at the exercise price. If a put or call option purchased by the Fund is not sold when it has remaining value, and if the market price of the underlying security remains equal to or greater than the exercise price (in the case of a put), or remains less than or equal to the exercise price (in the case of a call), the Fund will lose its entire investment in the option. Also, where a put or call option on a particular security is purchased to hedge against price movements in a related security, the price of the put or call option may move more or less than the price of the related security.

There can be no assurance that a liquid market will exist when the Fund seeks to close out an option position. If the Fund were unable to close out an option that it had purchased on a security, it would have to exercise the option in order to realize any profit or the option may expire worthless. If the Fund were unable to close out a covered call option that it had written on a security, it would not be able to sell the underlying security unless the option expired without exercise. As the writer of a covered call option, the Fund forgoes, during the option's life, the opportunity to profit from increases in the market value of the security covering the call option above the sum of the premium and the exercise price of the call.

If trading were suspended in an option purchased by the Fund, the Fund would not be able to close out the option. If restrictions on exercise were imposed, the Fund might be unable to exercise an option it has purchased. Except to the extent that a call option on an index written by the Fund is covered by an option on the same index purchased by the Fund, movements in the index may result in a loss to the Fund; however, such losses may be mitigated by changes in the value of the Fund's securities during the period the option was outstanding.

To the extent that the Fund writes a call option on a security it holds in its portfolio and intends to use such security as the sole means of "covering" its obligation under the call option, the Fund has, in return for the premium on the option, given up the opportunity to profit from a price increase in the underlying security above the exercise price during the option period, but, as long as its obligation under such call option continues, has retained the risk of loss should the price of the underlying security decline. If the Fund were unable to close out such a call option, the Fund would not be able to sell the underlying security unless the option expired without exercise.

Foreign Currency Options: Funds that invest in foreign currency-denominated securities may buy or sell put and call options on foreign currencies. Each Fund may buy or sell put and call options on foreign currencies either on exchanges or in the over-the-counter market. A put option on a foreign currency gives the purchaser of the option the right to sell a foreign currency at the exercise price until the option expires. A call option on a foreign currency gives the purchaser of the option the right to purchase the currency at the exercise price until the option expires.

Currency options traded on U.S. or other exchanges may be subject to position limits which may limit the ability of the Fund to reduce foreign currency risk using such options. Over-the-counter options differ from traded options in that over-the-counter options are two-party contracts with price and other terms negotiated between buyer and seller and generally do not have as much market liquidity as exchange-traded options.

Futures Contracts and Options on Futures Contracts: A futures contract is an agreement between two parties to buy and sell a security or commodity for a set price on a future date. These contracts are traded on exchanges, so that, in most cases, either party can close out its position on the exchange for cash, without delivering the security or commodity. An option on a futures contract gives the holder of the option the right to buy or sell a position in a futures contract from or to the writer of the option, at a specified price and on or before a specified expiration date.

Each Fund may invest in futures contracts and options thereon (“futures options”) with respect to, but not limited to, interest rates, commodities and security or commodity indexes. To the extent that the Fund may invest in foreign currency-denominated securities, it may also invest in foreign currency futures contracts and options thereon.

An interest rate, commodity, foreign currency or index futures contract provides for the future sale by one party and purchase by another party of a specified quantity of a financial instrument, commodity, foreign currency or the cash value of an index at a specified price and time. A futures contract on an index is an agreement pursuant to which two parties agree to take or make delivery of an amount of cash equal to the difference between the value of the index at the close of the last trading day of the contract and the price at which the index contract was originally written.

Although the value of an index might be a function of the value of certain specified securities, no physical delivery of these securities is made. A public market exists in futures contracts covering a number of indexes as well as financial instruments and foreign currencies and it is expected that other futures contracts will be developed and traded in the future. Each Fund may also invest in commodity futures contracts and options thereon. A commodity futures contract is an agreement between two parties, in which one party agrees to buy a commodity, such as an energy, agricultural or metal commodity from the other party at a later date at a price and quantity agreed-upon when the contract is made.

Each Fund may purchase and write call and put futures options. Futures options possess many of the same characteristics as options on securities and indexes (discussed above). A futures option gives the holder the right, in return for the premium paid, to assume a long position (call) or short position (put) in a futures contract at a specified exercise price at any time during the period of the option. Upon exercise of a call option, the holder acquires a long position in the futures contract and the writer is assigned the opposite short position. In the case of a put option, the opposite is true. A call option is "in the money" if the value of the futures contract that is the subject of the option exceeds the exercise price. A put option is "in the money" if the exercise price exceeds the value of the futures contract that is the subject of the option.

Pursuant to a claim for exclusion from the definition of "commodity pool operator" filed by the Trust with the National Futures Association ("NFA"), the Trust does not fall within the definition of "commodity pool operator" under the U.S. Commodity Exchange Act, as amended ("CEA"), in respect of the Fund, and thus, is not subject to registration or regulation as such under the CEA in respect of the Fund.

***Limitations on Use of Futures and Futures Options*:** Each Fund will only enter into futures contracts and futures options which are standardized and traded on a U.S. or foreign exchange, board of trade, or similar entity or quoted on an automated quotation system.

Additionally, each Fund will limit its trading in "commodity interests," as that term is defined under applicable CFTC Rules, and which generally includes commodity futures, futures options and swaps, such that, aside from commodity futures, commodity options contracts or swaps that, in each case, are used solely for bona fide hedging purposes within the meaning and intent of applicable CFTC Rules, (i) the aggregate initial margin and premiums required to establish positions in commodity interests will not exceed five percent of the liquidation value of the Fund's portfolio after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such contracts it has entered into, or (ii) the aggregate net notional value of commodity interest positions does not exceed 100 percent of the liquidation value of the Fund's portfolio after taking into account unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such contracts it has entered into, in each case, as further described in CFTC Rule 4.5(c)(2).

When a purchase or sale of a futures contract is made by the Fund, it is required to deposit with the custodian (or broker, if legally permitted) a specified amount of assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees ("initial margin"). The margin required for a futures contract is set by the exchange on which the contract is traded and may be modified during the term of the contract. Margin

requirements on foreign exchanges may be different than U.S. exchanges. The initial margin is in the nature of a performance bond or good faith deposit on the futures contract which is returned to the Fund upon termination of the contract, assuming all contractual obligations have been satisfied. The Fund expects to earn interest income on its initial margin deposits. A futures contract held by the Fund is valued daily at the official settlement price of the exchange on which it is traded. Each day the Fund pays or receives cash, called "variation margin," equal to the daily change in value of the futures contract. This process is known as "marking-to-market." Variation margin does not represent a borrowing or loan by the Fund but is instead a settlement between the Fund and the broker of the amount one would owe the other if the futures contract expired. In computing daily NAV, the Fund will mark-to-market its open futures positions.

Each Fund is also required to deposit and maintain margin with respect to put and call options on futures contracts written by it. Such margin deposits will vary depending on the nature of the underlying futures contract (and the related initial margin requirements), the current market value of the option and other futures positions held by the Fund.

Although some futures contracts call for making or taking delivery of the underlying securities or commodities, generally these obligations are closed out prior to delivery by offsetting purchases or sales of matching futures contracts (same exchange, underlying security or index and delivery month). Closing out a futures contract sale is effected by purchasing a futures contract for the same aggregate amount of the specific type of financial instrument or commodity with the same delivery date. If an offsetting purchase price is less than the original sale price, the Fund realizes a capital gain, or if it is more, the Fund realizes a capital loss. Conversely, if an offsetting sale price is more than the original purchase price, the Fund realizes a capital gain, or if it is less, the Fund realizes a capital loss. The transaction costs must also be included in these calculations.

Each Fund may write covered straddles consisting of a call and a put written on the same underlying futures contract. A straddle will be covered when sufficient assets are deposited to meet the Fund's immediate obligations. The Fund may use the same liquid assets to cover both the call and put options where the exercise price of the call and put are the same, or the exercise price of the call is higher than that of the put. In such cases, the Fund will also segregate or "earmark" liquid assets equivalent to the amount, if any, by which the put is "in the money."

When purchasing a futures contract, the Fund will maintain with its custodian (and mark-to-market on a daily basis) assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, that, when added to the amounts deposited with a futures commission merchant as margin, are equal to the market value of the futures contract. Alternatively, the Fund may "cover" its position by purchasing a put option on the same futures contract with a strike price as high as or higher than the price of the contract held by it.

When selling a futures contract, the Fund will maintain with its custodian (and mark-to-market on a daily basis) assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees that are equal to the market value of the futures contract. Alternatively, the Fund may "cover" its position by owning the instruments underlying the futures contract (or, in the case of an index futures contract, a portfolio with a volatility substantially similar to that of the index on which the futures contract is based), or by holding a call option permitting the Fund to purchase the same futures contract at a price no higher than the price of the contract written by it (or at a higher price if the difference is maintained in liquid assets with the Trust's custodian).

With respect to futures contracts that are not legally required to "cash settle," the Fund may cover the open position by setting aside or "earmarking" liquid assets in an amount equal to the market value of the futures contract. With respect to futures that are required to "cash settle," however, the Fund is permitted to set aside or "earmark" liquid assets in an amount equal to the Fund's daily marked-to-market (net) obligation, if any, (in other words, the Fund's daily net liability, if any) rather than the market value of the futures contract. By setting aside assets equal to only its net obligation under cash-settled futures, the Fund will have the ability to employ leverage to a greater extent than if it were required to segregate assets equal to the full market value of the futures contract.

When selling a call option on a futures contract, the Fund will maintain with its custodian (and mark-to-market on a daily basis) assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, that, when added to the amounts deposited with a futures commission merchant as margin, equal the total market value of the futures contract underlying the call option. Alternatively, the Fund may cover its position by entering into a long position in the same futures contract at a price no higher than the strike price of the call option, by owning the instruments underlying the futures contract, or by holding a separate call option permitting the Fund to purchase the same futures contract at a price not higher than the strike price of the call option sold by it.

When selling a put option on a futures contract, the Fund will maintain with its custodian (and mark-to-market on a daily basis) assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, that equal the purchase price of the futures contract, less any margin on deposit. Alternatively, the Fund may

cover the position either by entering into a short position in the same futures contract, or by owning a separate put option permitting it to sell the same futures contract so long as the strike price of the purchased put option is the same or higher than the strike price of the put option sold by the Fund.

To the extent that securities with maturities greater than one year are used to segregate or “earmark” assets to cover the Fund’s obligations under futures contracts and related options, such use will not eliminate the risk of a form of leverage, which may tend to exaggerate the effect on NAV of any increase or decrease in the market value of the Fund’s portfolio and may require liquidation of portfolio positions when it is not advantageous to do so. However, any potential risk of leverage resulting from the use of securities with maturities greater than one year may be mitigated by the overall duration limit on the Fund’s portfolio securities. Thus, the use of a longer-term security may require the Fund to hold offsetting short-term securities to balance the Fund’s portfolio such that the Fund’s duration does not exceed the maximum permitted for the Fund in the Prospectus.

The requirements for qualification as a regulated investment company (a "RIC") provided under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended ("IRC") also may limit the extent to which the Fund may enter into futures, futures options or forward contracts.

Risks Associated with Futures and Futures Options: There are several risks associated with the use of futures contracts and futures options. A purchase or sale of a futures contract may result in losses in excess of the margin deposits relating to the futures contract. There can be no guarantee that there will be a correlation between price movements in the hedging vehicle and in the Fund securities being hedged. In addition, there are significant differences between the securities and futures markets that could result in an imperfect correlation between the markets, causing a given hedge not to achieve its objectives. The degree of imperfection of correlation depends on circumstances such as variations in speculative market demand for futures and futures options on securities, including technical influences in futures trading and futures options, and differences between the financial instruments being hedged and the instruments underlying the standard contracts available for trading in such respects as interest rate levels, maturities and creditworthiness of issuers. A decision as to whether, when and how to hedge involves the exercise of skill and judgment, and even a well-conceived hedge may be unsuccessful to some degree because of market behavior or unexpected interest rate trends.

Futures contracts on U.S. Government securities historically have reacted to an increase or decrease in interest rates in a manner similar to that in which the underlying U.S. Government securities reacted. To the extent that each Fund enters into such futures contracts the value of such futures will not vary in direct proportion to the value of the Fund's holdings. Thus, the anticipated spread between the price of the futures contract and the hedged security may be distorted due to differences in the nature of the markets. The spread also may be distorted by differences in initial and variation margin requirements, the liquidity of such markets and the participation of speculators in such markets.

Futures exchanges may limit the amount of fluctuation permitted in certain futures contract prices during a single trading day. The daily limit establishes the maximum amount that the price of a futures contract may vary either up or down from the previous day's settlement price at the end of the current trading session. Once the daily limit has been reached in a futures contract subject to the limit, no more trades may be made on that day at a price beyond that limit. The daily limit governs only price movements during a particular trading day and therefore does not limit potential losses because the limit may work to prevent the liquidation of unfavorable positions. For example, futures prices have occasionally moved to the daily limit for several consecutive trading days with little or no trading, thereby preventing prompt liquidation of positions and subjecting some holders of futures contracts to substantial losses.

There can be no assurance that a liquid market will exist at a time when the Fund seeks to close out a future or a future's option position, and that the Fund would remain obligated to meet margin requirements until the position is closed. In addition, many of the contracts discussed above are relatively new instruments without a significant trading history. As a result, there can be no assurance that an active secondary market will develop or continue to exist.

***Risks Associated with Commodity Futures Contracts*:** There are several additional risks associated with transactions in commodity futures contracts.

Storage: Unlike the financial futures markets, in the commodity futures markets there are costs of physical storage associated with purchasing the underlying commodity. The price of the commodity futures contract will reflect the storage costs of purchasing the physical commodity, including the time value of money invested in the physical commodity. To the extent that the storage costs for an underlying commodity change while the Fund is invested in futures contracts on that commodity, the value of the futures contract may change proportionately.

Reinvestment: In the commodity futures markets, producers of the underlying commodity may decide to hedge the price risk of selling the commodity by selling futures contracts today to lock in the price of the commodity at delivery tomorrow. In order to induce speculators to purchase the other side of the same futures contract, the commodity producer generally must sell the futures contract at a lower price than the expected future spot price.

Conversely, if most hedgers in the futures market are purchasing futures contracts to hedge against a rise in prices, then speculators will only sell the other side of the futures contract at a higher futures price than the expected future spot price of the commodity. The changing nature of the hedgers and speculators in the commodity markets will influence whether futures prices are above or below the expected future spot price, which can have significant implications for the Fund. If the nature of hedgers and speculators in futures markets has shifted when it is time for the Fund to reinvest the proceeds of a maturing contract in a new futures contract, it might reinvest at higher or lower futures prices, or choose to pursue other investments.

Certain restrictions imposed on each Fund by the IRC may limit the Fund's ability to invest in commodity futures contracts.

Tax Risk: Each Fund intends to qualify annually to be treated as a RIC under the IRC. To qualify as a RIC, each Fund must invest in assets which produce specific types of income ("Qualifying Income"). Whether the income from certain derivatives, swaps, commodity-linked derivatives and other commodity/natural resource-related securities is Qualifying Income is unclear. If the Fund does invest in these types of securities and the income is determined not to be Qualifying Income, it may cause the Fund to fail to qualify as a RIC under the IRC. See "Taxation of the Fund" below for additional information related to these restrictions.

Other Economic Factors: The commodities which underlie commodity futures contracts may be subject to additional economic and non-economic variables, such as drought, floods, weather, livestock disease, embargoes, tariffs, and international economic, political and regulatory developments. These factors may have a larger impact on commodity prices and commodity-linked instruments, including futures contracts, than on traditional securities.

Certain commodities are also subject to limited pricing flexibility because of supply and demand factors. Others are subject to broad price fluctuations as a result of the volatility of the prices for certain raw materials and the instability of supplies of other materials. These additional variables may create additional investment risks which subject the Fund's investments to greater volatility than investments in traditional securities.

***Additional Risks of Options on Securities, Futures Contracts, Options on Futures Contracts and Forward Currency Exchange Contracts and Options Thereon*:** Options on securities, futures contracts, options on futures contracts, forward currency exchange contracts and options on forward currency exchange contracts may be traded on foreign exchanges. Such transactions may not be regulated as effectively as similar transactions in the United States, may not involve a clearing mechanism and related guarantees and are subject to the risk of governmental actions affecting trading in, or the prices of, foreign securities. The value of such positions also could be adversely affected by: (i) other complex foreign political, legal and economic factors, (ii) lesser availability than in the United States of data on which to make trading decisions, (iii) delays in the Trust's ability to act upon economic events occurring in foreign markets during non-business hours in the United States, (iv) the imposition of different exercise and settlement terms and procedures and margin requirements than in the United States and (v) lesser trading volume.

***Swap Agreements and Options on Swap Agreements*:** Each Fund may engage in swap transactions, including, but not limited to, swap agreements on interest rates, security or commodity indexes, specific securities and commodities and credit and event-linked swaps. To the extent the Fund may invest in foreign currency-denominated securities, it may also invest in currency exchange rate swap agreements. Each Fund may also enter into options on swap agreements ("swap options").

Each Fund may enter into swap transactions for any legal purpose consistent with its investment objective and policies, such as attempting to obtain or preserve a particular return or spread at a lower cost than obtaining a return or spread through purchases and/or sales of instruments in other markets, to protect against currency fluctuations, as a duration management technique, to protect against any increase in the price of securities the Fund anticipates purchasing at a later date or to gain exposure to certain markets in a more cost efficient manner.

OTC Swap agreements are bilateral contracts entered into primarily by institutional investors for periods ranging from a few weeks to more than one year. In a standard "swap" transaction, two parties agree to exchange the returns (or differentials in rates of return) earned or realized on particular predetermined investments or instruments. The gross returns to be exchanged or "swapped" between the parties are generally calculated with respect to a "notional amount," i.e., the return on or change in value of a particular dollar amount invested at a particular interest rate, in a particular foreign currency or in a "basket" of securities or commodities representing a particular index. A "quanto" or "differential" swap combines both an interest rate and a currency transaction. Other forms of swap agreements include interest rate caps, under which, in return for a premium, one party agrees to make payments to the other to the extent that interest rates exceed a specified rate, or "cap"; interest rate floors, under which, in return for a premium, one party agrees to make payments to the other to the extent that interest rates fall below a specified rate, or "floor"; and interest rate collars, under which a party sells a cap and purchases a floor or vice versa in an attempt to protect itself against interest rate movements exceeding given minimum or maximum levels. Consistent with each Fund's investment objective and general investment policies, the Fund may invest in commodity swap agreements. For example, an investment in a commodity swap agreement may involve the exchange of floating-rate interest payments for the total return on a commodity index. In a total return commodity swap, the Fund will receive the price appreciation of a commodity index, a portion of the index or a single commodity in exchange for paying an agreed-upon fee. If the commodity swap is for one period, the Fund may pay a fixed fee, established at the outset of the swap. However, if the term of the commodity swap is more than one period, with interim swap payments, the Fund may pay an adjustable or floating fee. With a "floating" rate, the fee may be pegged to a base rate, such as the London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR"), and is adjusted each period. Therefore, if interest rates increase over the term of the swap contract, the Fund may be required to pay a higher fee at each swap reset date.

Each Fund may also enter into swap options. A swap option is a contract that gives a counterparty the right (but not the obligation) in return for payment of a premium, to enter into a new swap agreement or to shorten, extend, cancel or otherwise modify an existing swap agreement, at some designated future time on specified terms. Each Fund may write (sell) and purchase put and call swap options.

Depending on the terms of the particular option agreement, the Fund will generally incur a greater degree of risk when it writes a swap option than it will incur when it purchases a swap option. When the Fund purchases a swap option, it risks losing only the amount of the premium it has paid should it decide to let the option expire unexercised. However, when the Fund writes a swap option, upon exercise of the option the Fund will become obligated according to the terms of the underlying agreement.

Most types of swap agreements entered into by the Fund will calculate the obligations of the parties to the agreement on a "net basis." Consequently, the Fund's current obligations (or rights) under a swap agreement will generally be equal only to the net amount to be paid or received under the agreement based on the relative values of the positions held by each party to the agreement (the "net amount"). The Fund's current obligations under a swap agreement will be accrued daily (offset against any amounts owed to the Fund) and any accrued but unpaid net amounts owed to a swap counterparty will be covered by the segregation or "earmarking" of assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, to avoid any potential leveraging of the Fund's portfolio. Obligations under swap agreements so covered will not be construed to be "senior securities" for purposes of the Fund's investment restriction concerning senior securities.

Each Fund may also enter into credit default swap agreements. The credit default swap agreement may reference one or more debt securities or obligations that are not currently held by the Fund. The protection "buyer" in a credit default contract is generally obligated to pay the protection "seller" an upfront or a periodic stream of payments over the term of the contract provided that no credit event, such as a default, on a reference obligation has occurred. If a credit event occurs, the seller generally must pay the buyer the "par value" (full notional value) of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity described in the swap, or the seller may be required to deliver the related net cash amount, if the swap is cash settled. The Fund may be either the buyer or seller in the transaction. If the Fund is a buyer and no credit event occurs, the Fund may recover nothing if the swap is held through its termination date. However, if a credit event occurs, the buyer may receive the full notional value of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity whose value may have significantly decreased. As a seller, the Fund generally receives an upfront payment or a fixed rate of income throughout the term of the swap provided that there is no credit event. As the seller, the Fund would effectively add leverage to its portfolio because, in addition to its total net assets, it would be subject to investment exposure on the notional amount of the swap.

The spread of a credit default swap is the annual amount the protection buyer must pay the protection seller over the length of the contract, expressed as a percentage of the notional amount. When spreads rise, market perceived credit risk rises and when spreads fall, market perceived credit risk falls. Wider credit spreads and decreasing market values, when compared to the notional amount of the swap, represent a deterioration of the credit soundness of the issuer of the reference obligation and a greater likelihood or risk of default or other credit event occurring as defined under the

terms of the agreement. For credit default swap agreements on asset-backed securities and credit indices, the quoted market prices and resulting values, as well as the annual payment rate, serve as an indication of the current status of the payment/performance risk.

Credit default swap agreements sold by the Fund may involve greater risks than if the Fund had invested in the reference obligation directly since, in addition to general market risks, credit default swaps are subject to illiquidity risk, and with respect to OTC credit default swaps, counterparty risk and credit risk. The Fund will enter into uncleared credit default swap agreements only with counterparties that meet certain standards of creditworthiness. A buyer generally also will lose its investment and recover nothing should no credit event occur and the swap is held to its termination date. If a credit event were to occur, the value of any deliverable obligation received by the seller, coupled with the upfront or periodic payments previously received, may be less than the full notional value it pays to the buyer, resulting in a loss of value to the seller. The Fund's obligations under a credit default swap agreement will be accrued daily (offset against any amounts owing to the Fund). In connection with credit default swaps in which the Fund is the buyer or the seller, if the Fund covers its position through asset segregation, the Fund will segregate or "earmark" cash or liquid assets with a value at least equal to the Fund's exposure (any accrued but unpaid net amounts owed by the Fund to any counterparty), on a marked- to-market basis (when the Fund is the buyer), or the full notional amount of the swap (minus any amounts owed to the Fund) (when the Fund is the seller). Such segregation or "earmarking" seeks to ensure that the Fund has assets available to satisfy its obligations with respect to the transaction and could have the effect of limiting any potential leveraging of the Fund's portfolio. Such segregation or "earmarking" will not limit the Fund's exposure to loss.

The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (the "Dodd-Frank Act") and related regulatory developments will require the clearing and exchange-trading of many standardized OTC derivative instruments that the CFTC and SEC recently defined as "swaps" including non-deliverable foreign exchange forwards, OTC foreign exchange options and swap options. Mandatory exchange-trading and clearing will take place on a phased-in basis based on type of market participant and CFTC approval of contracts for central clearing. Mandatory clearing of interest rate swaps and certain credit default swaps on indexes was phased in during 2013 based on the nature of different swap participants. Given the relatively recent nature of these changes and the fact that many market participants remain in the process of adjusting to the new requirements, it is difficult to assess that impact of these changes on the Fund's swaps-related activities. The Advisor will continue to monitor developments in this area, particularly to the extent regulatory changes affect the Fund's ability to enter into swap agreements.

Whether the Fund's use of swap agreements or swap options will be successful in furthering its investment objective will depend on the Advisor's ability to predict correctly whether certain types of investments are likely to produce greater returns than other investments. Moreover, the Fund bears the risk of loss of the amount expected to be received under a swap agreement in the event of the default or bankruptcy of a swap agreement counterparty. The Fund will enter into OTC swap agreements only with counterparties that meet certain standards of creditworthiness. Certain restrictions imposed on the Fund by the Internal Revenue Code may limit the Fund's ability to use swap agreements. It is possible that developments in the swaps market, including additional government regulation, could adversely affect the Fund's ability to terminate existing swap agreements or to realize amounts to be received under such agreements.

Swaps are highly specialized instruments that require investment techniques, risk analyses, and tax planning different from those associated with traditional investments. The use of a swap requires an understanding not only of the reference asset, reference rate, or index but also of the swap itself, without the benefit of observing the performance of the swap under all possible market conditions. Because OTC swap agreements are two-party contracts that may be subject to contractual restrictions on transferability and termination and because they may have remaining terms of greater than seven days, swap agreements may be considered to be illiquid and subject to the Fund's limitation on

investments in illiquid securities. However, the Trust has adopted procedures pursuant to which the Advisor may determine swaps to be liquid under certain circumstances. To the extent that a swap is not liquid, it may not be possible to initiate a transaction or liquidate a position at an advantageous time or price, which may result in significant losses.

Like most other investments, swap agreements are subject to the risk that the market value of the instrument will change in a way detrimental to the Fund's interest. The Fund bears the risk that the Advisor will not accurately forecast future market trends or the values of assets, reference rates, indexes, or other economic factors in establishing swap positions for the Fund. If the Advisor attempts to use a swap as a hedge against, or as a substitute for, a portfolio investment, the Fund will be exposed to the risk that the swap will have or will develop imperfect or no correlation with the portfolio investment. This could cause substantial losses for the Fund. While hedging strategies involving swap instruments can reduce the risk of loss, they can also reduce the opportunity for gain or even result in losses by offsetting favorable price movements in other Fund investments. Many swaps are complex and often valued subjectively.

***Correlation Risk*:** In certain cases, the value of derivatives may not correlate perfectly, or at all, with the value of the assets, reference rates or indexes they are designed to closely track. In this regard, certain funds seek to achieve their investment objectives, in part, by investing in derivatives positions that are designed to closely track the performance (or inverse performance) of an index on a daily basis. However, the overall investment strategies of the Fund is not designed or expected to produce returns which replicate the performance (or inverse performance) of the particular index, and the degree of variation could be substantial, particularly over longer periods. There are a number of factors which may prevent a mutual fund, or derivatives or other strategies used by the Fund, from achieving desired correlation (or inverse correlation) with an index. These may include, but are not limited to: (i) the impact of fund fees, expenses and transaction costs, including borrowing and brokerage costs/bid-ask spreads, which are not reflected in index returns; (ii) differences in the timing of daily calculations of the value of an index and the timing of the valuation of derivatives, securities and other assets held by the Fund and the determination of the NAV of fund shares; (iii) disruptions or illiquidity in the markets for derivative instruments or securities in which the Fund invests; (iv) the Fund having exposure to or holding less than all of the securities in the underlying index and/or having exposure to or holding securities not included in the underlying index; (v) large or unexpected movements of assets into and out of the Fund (due to share purchases or redemptions, for example), potentially resulting in the Fund being over- or under-exposed to the index; (vi) the impact of accounting standards or changes thereto; (vii) changes to the applicable index that are not disseminated in advance; and (viii) a possible need to conform the Fund's portfolio holdings to comply with investment restrictions or policies or regulatory or tax law requirements.

***Risk of Potential Government Regulation of Derivatives*:** It is possible that additional government regulation of various types of derivative instruments, including futures, options and swap agreements, may limit or prevent the Fund from using such instruments, potentially to the detriment of the Fund. It is impossible to fully predict the effects of past, present or future legislation and regulation in this area, but the effects could be substantial and adverse. It is possible that legislative and regulatory activity could limit or restrict the ability of the Fund to use certain instruments as a part of its investment strategies. Limits or restrictions applicable to the counterparties with which the Fund engages in derivative transactions could also prevent the Fund from using certain instruments.

There is a possibility of future regulatory changes altering, perhaps to a material extent, the nature of an investment in the Fund or the ability of the Fund to continue to implement its investment strategy. The futures, options and swap markets are subject to comprehensive statutes, regulations, and margin requirements. In addition, the SEC, CFTC and the exchanges are authorized to take extraordinary actions in the event of a market emergency, including, for example, the implementation or reduction of speculative position limits, the implementation of higher margin requirements, the establishment of daily price limits and the suspension of trading. The regulation of futures, options and swaps transactions in the U.S. is a rapidly changing area of law and is subject to modification by government and judicial action.

***Tax Risk*:** Each Fund intends to qualify annually to be treated as a RIC under the IRC. To qualify as a RIC under the IRC, the Fund must invest in assets which produce the types of income specified in the IRC and the Treasury Regulations ("Qualifying Income"). Whether the income from certain derivatives, swaps, commodity-linked derivatives and other commodity/natural resource-related securities is Qualifying Income is unclear. If the Fund does invest in these types of securities and the income is determined to not be Qualifying Income, it may cause the Fund to fail to qualify as a RIC under the IRC.

***Structured Notes*:** Structured notes are derivative debt securities, the interest rate or principal of which is determined by an unrelated indicator. Indexed securities include structured notes as well as securities other than debt securities, the interest rate or principal of which is determined by an unrelated indicator. Indexed securities may include a multiplier that multiplies the indexed element by a specified factor and, therefore, the value of such securities may be very volatile. The terms of the structured and indexed securities may provide that in certain circumstances no principal is due at maturity and therefore, may result in a loss of invested capital. Structured and indexed securities may be positively or negatively indexed, so that appreciation of the reference index may produce an increase or a decrease in the interest rate or the value of the structured or indexed security at maturity may be calculated as a specified multiple of the change in the value of the reference; therefore, the value of such security may be very volatile. Structured and indexed securities may entail a greater degree of market risk than other types of debt securities because the investor bears the risk of the reference. Structured or indexed securities may also be more volatile, less liquid and more difficult to accurately price than less complex securities or more traditional debt securities. To the extent the Fund invests in these securities, however, the Advisor analyzes these securities in its overall assessment of the effective duration of the Fund’s portfolio in an effort to monitor its interest rate risk.

Dollar Rolls. Each Fund may enter into dollar roll agreements, which are similar to reverse repurchase agreements. Dollar rolls are transactions in which securities are sold by the Fund for delivery in the current month and the Fund simultaneously contracts to repurchase substantially similar securities on a specified future date. Any difference between the sale price and the purchase price is netted against the interest income foregone on the securities sold to arrive at an implied borrowing rate. Alternatively, the sale and purchase transactions can be executed at the same price, with the Fund being paid a fee as consideration for entering into the commitment to purchase. Dollar rolls may be renewed prior to cash settlement and initially may involve only a firm commitment agreement by the Fund to buy a security. If the broker-dealer to which the Fund sells the security becomes insolvent, the Fund's right to repurchase the security may be restricted. At the time the Fund enters into a dollar roll, it will place in a segregated custodial account asset such as U.S. Government securities or other liquid, high grade debt securities consistent with the Fund's investment restrictions having a value equal to the repurchase price (including accrued interest) and will subsequently monitor the account to ensure that such equivalent value is maintained.

Emerging Markets. Each Fund may invest in the securities of issuers domiciled in various countries with emerging capital markets. Specifically, a country with an emerging capital market is any country that the World Bank, the International Finance Corporation, the United Nations or its authorities has determined to have a low or middle income economy. Countries with emerging markets can be found in regions such as Asia, Latin America, Eastern Europe and Africa.

Investments in the securities of issuers domiciled in countries with emerging capital markets involve certain additional risks that do not generally apply to investments in securities of issuers in more developed capital markets, such as (i) low or non-existent trading volume, resulting in a lack of liquidity and increased volatility in prices for such securities, as compared to securities of comparable issuers in more developed capital markets; (ii) uncertain national policies and social, political and economic instability, increasing the potential for expropriation of assets, confiscatory taxation, high rates of inflation or unfavorable diplomatic developments; (iii) possible fluctuations in exchange rates, differing legal systems and the existence or possible imposition of exchange controls, custodial restrictions or other foreign or U.S. Governmental laws or restrictions applicable to such investments; (iv) national policies that may limit the Fund's investment opportunities such as restrictions on investment in issuers or industries deemed sensitive to national interests; and (v) the lack or relatively early development of legal structures governing private and foreign investments and private property. In addition to withholding taxes on investment income, some countries with emerging markets may impose differential capital gains taxes on foreign investors.

Political and economic structures in emerging market countries may be undergoing significant evolution and rapid development, and these countries may lack the social, political and economic stability characteristic of more developed countries. In such a dynamic environment, there can be no assurance that any or all of these capital markets will continue to present viable investment opportunities for the Fund. In the past, governments of such nations have expropriated substantial amounts of private property, and most claims of the property owners have never been fully settled. There is no assurance that such expropriations will not reoccur. In such an event, it is possible that the Fund could lose the entire value of its investments in the affected market. As a result, the risks described above, including the risks of nationalization or expropriation of assets, may be heightened. In addition, unanticipated political or social developments may affect the value of investments in these countries and the availability to the Fund of additional investments. The small size and inexperience of the securities markets in certain of these countries and the limited volume of trading in securities in these countries may make investments in the countries illiquid and more volatile

than investments in Japan or most Western European countries.

Also, there may be less publicly available information about issuers in emerging markets than would be available about issuers in more developed capital markets, and such issuers may not be subject to accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards and requirements comparable to those to which U.S. companies are subject. In certain countries with emerging capital markets, reporting standards vary widely. As a result, traditional investment measurements used in the United States, such as price/earnings ratios, may not be applicable. Emerging market securities may be substantially less liquid and more volatile than those of mature markets, and company shares may be held by a limited number of persons. This may adversely affect the timing and pricing of the Fund’s acquisition or disposal of securities.

Practices in relation to settlement of securities transactions in emerging markets involve higher risks than those in developed markets, in part because the Fund will need to use brokers and counterparties that are less well capitalized, and custody and registration of assets in some countries may be unreliable. The possibility of fraud, negligence, undue influence being exerted by the issuer or refusal to recognize ownership exists in some emerging markets, and, along with other factors, could result in ownership registration being completely lost. The Fund would absorb any loss resulting from such registration problems and may have no successful claim for compensation.

Investments in non-dollar denominated securities including securities from issuers located in emerging market countries may be on either a currency hedged or unhedged basis, and the Fund may hold from time to time various foreign currencies pending investment or conversion into U.S. dollars. Some of these instruments may have the characteristics of futures contracts. In addition, the Fund may engage in foreign currency exchange transactions to seek to protect against changes in the level of future exchange rates which would adversely affect the Fund's performance. These investments and transactions involving foreign securities, currencies, options (including options that relate to foreign currencies), futures, hedging and cross-hedging are described below and under "Derivatives" and "Foreign Currency and Related Transactions."

Restrictions on Certain Investments: A number of publicly traded closed-end investment companies have been organized to facilitate indirect foreign investment in developing countries, and certain of such countries, such as Thailand, South Korea, Chile and Brazil, have specifically authorized such funds. There also are investment opportunities in certain of such countries in pooled vehicles that resemble open-end investment companies. Shares of certain investment companies may at times be acquired only at market prices representing premiums to their NAVs. If the Fund acquires shares of other investment companies, shareholders would bear both their proportionate share of expenses of the Fund (including management and advisory fees) and, indirectly, the expenses of such other investment companies.

***Brady Bonds*:** Each Fund may invest in Brady Bonds. The Fund's emerging market debt securities may include emerging market governmental debt obligations commonly referred to as Brady Bonds. Brady Bonds are securities created through the exchange of existing commercial bank loans to sovereign entities for new obligations in connection with debt restructurings under a debt restructuring plan introduced by former U.S. Secretary of the Treasury, Nicholas F. Brady (the "Brady Plan"). Brady Plan debt restructurings have been implemented in a number of countries, including: Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Bulgaria, Costa Rica, the Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Jordan, Mexico, Niger, Nigeria, Panama, Peru, the Philippines, Poland, Uruguay and Venezuela.

Brady Bonds may be collateralized or uncollateralized, are issued in various currencies (primarily the U.S. dollar) and are actively traded in the over-the-counter secondary market. Brady Bonds are not considered to be U.S. Government securities. U.S. dollar-denominated, collateralized Brady Bonds, which may be fixed rate par bonds or floating rate discount bonds, are generally collateralized in full as to principal by U.S. Treasury zero-coupon bonds having the same maturity as the Brady Bonds. Interest payments on these Brady Bonds generally are collateralized on a one-year or longer rolling-forward basis by cash or securities in an amount that, in the case of fixed rate bonds, is equal to at least one year of interest payments or, in the case of floating rate bonds, initially is equal to at least one year's interest payments based on the applicable interest rate at that time and is adjusted at regular intervals thereafter. Certain Brady

Bonds are entitled to “value recovery payments” in certain circumstances, which in effect constitute supplemental interest payments but generally are not collateralized. For example, some Mexican and Venezuelan Brady Bonds include attached value recovery options, which increase interest payments if oil revenues rise. Brady Bonds are often viewed as having three or four valuation components: (i) the collateralized repayment of principal at final maturity; (ii) the collateralized interest payments; (iii) the uncollateralized interest payments; and (iv) any uncollateralized repayment of principal at maturity (the uncollateralized amounts constitute the “residual risk”).

Most Mexican Brady Bonds issued to date have principal repayments at final maturity fully collateralized by U.S. Treasury zero-coupon bonds (or comparable collateral denominated in other currencies) and interest coupon payments collateralized on an 18-month rolling-forward basis by funds held in escrow by an agent for the bondholders. A significant portion of the Venezuelan Brady Bonds and the Argentine Brady Bonds issued to date have repayments at final maturity collateralized by U.S. Treasury zero- coupon bonds (or comparable collateral denominated in other currencies) and/or interest coupon payments collateralized on a 14-month (for Venezuela) or 12-month (for Argentina) rolling-forward basis by securities held by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York as collateral agent.

Brady Bonds involve various risk factors described above associated with investing in foreign securities, including the history of defaults with respect to commercial bank loans by public and private entities of countries issuing Brady Bonds. In light of the residual risk of Brady Bonds and, among other factors, the history of defaults, investments in Brady Bonds are considered speculative. There can be no assurance that Brady Bonds in which the Fund may invest will not be subject to restructuring arrangements or to requests for new credit, which may cause the Fund to suffer a loss of interest or principal on any of its holdings.

Equity-Linked Securities. Each Fund may invest in equity-linked securities. Equity-linked securities are privately issued securities whose investment results are designed to correspond generally to the performance of a specified stock index or "basket" of stocks, or sometimes a single stock. To the extent that the Fund invests in an equity-linked security whose return corresponds to the performance of a foreign securities index or one or more foreign stocks, investing in equity-linked securities will involve risks similar to the risks of investing in foreign equity securities. See "Foreign Securities" below. In addition, the Fund bears the risk that the issuer of an equity- linked security may default on its obligations under the security. Equity-linked securities are often used for many of the same purposes as, and share many of the same risks with, derivative instruments such as index futures on stock indexes, zero-strike options and warrants and swap agreements. See "Derivative Instruments" above. Equity-linked securities may be considered illiquid and thus subject to the Fund's restriction on investments in illiquid securities.

Event-Linked Exposure. Each Fund may obtain event-linked exposure by investing in "event-linked bonds" or "event-linked swaps," or implement "event-linked strategies." Event-linked exposure results in gains that typically are contingent on the non-occurrence of a specific "trigger" event, such as a hurricane, earthquake or other physical or weather-related phenomena. Some event-linked bonds are commonly referred to as "catastrophe bonds." They may be issued by government agencies, insurance companies, reinsurers, special purpose corporations or other on-shore or off-shore entities (such special purpose entities are created to accomplish a narrow and well-defined objective, such as the issuance of a note in connection with a reinsurance transaction). If a trigger event causes losses exceeding a specific amount in the geographic region and time period specified in a bond, the Fund, when investing in the bond may lose a portion or all of its principal invested in the bond. If no trigger event occurs, the Fund will recover its principal plus interest. For some event-linked bonds, the trigger event or losses may be based on company-wide losses, index-portfolio losses, industry indices or readings of scientific instruments rather than specified actual losses. Often the event-linked bonds provide for extensions of maturity that are mandatory, or optional at the discretion of the issuer, in order to process and audit loss claims in those cases where a trigger event has, or possibly has, occurred. An extension of maturity may increase volatility. In addition to the specified trigger events, event-linked bonds may also expose the Fund to certain unanticipated risks including but not limited to issuer risk, credit risk, counterparty risk, adverse regulatory or jurisdictional interpretations and adverse tax consequences.

Event-linked bonds are a relatively new type of financial instrument. As such, there is no significant trading history of these securities, and there can be no assurance that a liquid market in these instruments will develop. See “Illiquid Securities” below. Lack of a liquid market may impose the risk of higher transaction costs and the possibility that the Fund may be forced to liquidate positions when it would not be advantageous to do so. Event-linked bonds are typically rated, and the Fund will only invest in catastrophe bonds that meet the credit quality requirements for the Fund.

Fixed Income Securities With Buy-Back Features. Fixed income securities with buy-back features enable the Fund to recover principal upon tendering the securities to the issuer or a third party. Letters of credit issued by domestic or foreign banks often support these buy-back features. In evaluating a foreign bank’s credit, the Advisor considers whether adequate public information about the bank is available and whether the bank may be subject to unfavorable political or economic developments, currency controls or other governmental restrictions that could adversely affect the bank’s ability to honor its commitment under the letter of credit. Buy- back features include standby commitments, put bonds and demand features.

***Standby Commitments*:** Each Fund may acquire standby commitments from broker-dealers, banks or other financial intermediaries to enhance the liquidity of portfolio securities. A standby commitment entitles the Fund to same day settlement at amortized cost plus accrued interest, if any, at the time of exercise. The amount payable by the issuer of the standby commitment during the time that the commitment is exercisable generally approximates the market value of the securities underlying the commitment. Standby commitments are subject to the risk that the issuer of a commitment may not be in a position to pay for the securities at the time that the commitment is exercised.

Ordinarily, the Fund will not transfer a standby commitment to a third party, although the Fund may sell securities subject to a standby commitment at any time. The Fund may purchase standby commitments separate from or in conjunction with the purchase of the securities subject to the commitments. In the latter case, the Fund may pay a higher price for the securities acquired in consideration for the commitment.

***Put Bonds*:** A put bond (also referred to as a tender option or third party bond) is a bond created by coupling an intermediate or long- term fixed rate bond with an agreement giving the holder the option of tendering the bond to receive its par value. As consideration for providing this tender option, the sponsor of the bond (usually a bank, broker- dealer or other financial intermediary) receives periodic fees that equal the difference between the bond's fixed coupon rate and the rate (determined by a remarketing or similar agent) that would cause the bond, coupled with the tender option, to trade at par. By paying the tender offer fees, the Fund in effect holds a demand obligation that bears interest at the prevailing short-term rate. Any investments in tender option bonds by the Fund will be accounted for subject to Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 140 and amendments thereto.

In selecting put bonds for each Fund, the Advisor takes into consideration the creditworthiness of the issuers of the underlying bonds and the creditworthiness of the providers of the tender option features. A sponsor may withdraw the tender option feature if the issuer of the underlying bond defaults on interest or principal payments, the bond's rating is downgraded or, in the case of a municipal bond, the bond loses its tax-exempt status.

***Demand Features*:** Many variable rate securities carry demand features that permit the holder to demand repayment of the principal amount of the underlying securities plus accrued interest, if any, upon a specified number of days' notice to the issuer or its agent. A demand feature may be exercisable at any time or at specified intervals. Variable rate securities with demand features are treated as having a maturity equal to the time remaining before the holder can next demand payment of principal. The issuer of a demand feature instrument may have a corresponding right to prepay the outstanding principal of the instrument plus accrued interest, if any, upon notice comparable to that required for the holder to demand payment.

Foreign Currency and Related Transactions. Each Fund may invest in foreign currency- denominated securities and may purchase and sell foreign currency options and foreign currency futures contracts and related options (see "Derivative Instruments") and may engage in foreign currency transactions either on a spot (cash) basis at the rate prevailing in the currency exchange market at the time or through forward currency contracts ("forwards") with terms generally of less than one year. Each Fund may engage in these transactions in order to protect against uncertainty in

the level of future foreign exchange rates in the purchase and sale of securities. Each Fund may also use foreign currency options and foreign currency forward contracts to increase exposure to a foreign currency or to shift exposure to foreign currency fluctuations from one country to another.

A forward involves an obligation to purchase or sell a specific currency at a future date, which may be any fixed number of days from the date of the contract agreed upon by the parties, at a price set at the time of the contract. These contracts may be bought or sold to protect the Fund against a possible loss resulting from an adverse change in the relationship between foreign currencies and the U.S. dollar or to increase exposure to a particular foreign currency. Open positions in forwards used for non-hedging purposes will be covered by the segregation or “earmarking” of assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees and are marked-to-market daily. Although forwards are intended to minimize the risk of loss due to a decline in the value of the hedged currencies, at the same time, they tend to limit any potential gain which might result should the value of such currencies increase.

Forwards will be used primarily to adjust the foreign exchange exposure of each Fund with a view to protecting the outlook, and the Fund might be expected to enter into such contracts under the following circumstances:

1. When the Advisor desires to lock in the U.S. dollar price on the purchase or sale of a security denominated in a foreign currency.

2. If a particular currency is expected to decrease against another currency, each Fund may sell the currency expected to decrease and purchase a currency which is expected to increase against the currency sold in an amount approximately equal to some or all of the Fund's portfolio holdings denominated in the currency sold.

3. If the Advisor wants to eliminate substantially all of the risk of owning a particular currency, and/or if the Advisor thinks that the Fund can benefit from price appreciation in a given country's bonds but does not want to hold the currency, it may employ a direct hedge back into the U.S. dollar. In either case, the Fund would enter into a forward contract to sell the currency in which a portfolio security is denominated and purchase U.S. dollars at an exchange rate established at the time it initiated the contract. The cost of the direct hedge transaction may offset most, if not all, of the yield advantage offered by the foreign security, but the Fund would hope to benefit from an increase (if any) in value of the bond.

4. The Advisor might choose to use a proxy hedge, which may be less costly than a direct hedge. In this case, the Fund, having purchased a security, will sell a currency whose value is believed to be closely linked to the currency in which the security is denominated. Interest rates prevailing in the country whose currency was sold would be expected to be closer to those in the U.S. and lower than those of securities denominated in the currency of the original holding. This type of hedging entails greater risk than a direct hedge because it is dependent on a stable relationship between the two currencies paired as proxies and the relationships can be very unstable at times.

***Costs of Hedging*:** When the Fund purchases a foreign bond with a higher interest rate than is available on U.S. bonds of a similar maturity, the additional yield on the foreign bond could be substantially reduced or lost if the Fund were to enter into a direct hedge by selling the foreign currency and purchasing the U.S. dollar. This is what is known as the "cost" of hedging. Proxy hedging attempts to reduce this cost through an indirect hedge back to the U.S. dollar.

It is important to note that hedging costs are treated as capital transactions and are not, therefore, deducted from the Fund's dividend distribution and are not reflected in its yield. Instead such costs will, over time, be reflected in the Fund's NAV per share.

The forecasting of currency market movement is extremely difficult, and whether any hedging strategy will be successful is highly uncertain. Moreover, it is impossible to forecast with precision the market value of portfolio securities at the expiration of a foreign currency forward contract. Accordingly, the Fund may be required to buy or sell additional currency on the spot market (and bear the expense of such transaction) if the prediction of the Advisor regarding the movement of foreign currency or securities markets prove inaccurate. In addition, the use of

cross-hedging transactions may involve special risks and may leave the Fund in a less advantageous position than if such a hedge had not been established. Because foreign currency forward contracts are privately negotiated transactions, there can be no assurance that the Fund will have flexibility to rollover a foreign currency forward contract upon its expiration if it desires to do so. Additionally, there can be no assurance that the other party to the contract will perform its services thereunder.

Each Fund may hold a portion of its assets in bank deposits denominated in foreign currencies, so as to facilitate investment in foreign securities as well as protect against currency fluctuations and the need to convert such assets into U.S. dollars (thereby also reducing transaction costs). To the extent these monies are converted back into U.S. dollars, the value of the assets so maintained will be affected favorably or unfavorably by changes in foreign currency exchange rates and exchange control regulations.

***Tax Consequences of Hedging*:** Under applicable tax law, each Fund may be required to limit its gains from hedging in foreign currency forwards, futures and options. The extent to which these limits apply is subject to tax regulations that, to date, have not been issued. Hedging may also result in the application of the mark-to-market and straddle provisions of the IRC. Those provisions could result in an increase (or decrease) in the amount of taxable dividends paid by the Fund and could affect whether dividends paid by the Fund are classified as capital gains or ordinary income.

Foreign Currency Exchange-Related Securities.

***Foreign Currency Warrants*:** Foreign currency warrants such as Currency Exchange Warrants ("CEWs") are warrants which entitle the holder to receive from their issuer an amount of cash (generally, for warrants issued in the United States, in U.S. dollars) which is calculated pursuant to a predetermined formula and based on the exchange rate between a specified foreign currency and the U.S. dollar as of the exercise date of the warrant. Foreign currency warrants generally are exercisable upon their issuance and expire as of a specified date and time. Foreign currency warrants have been issued in connection with U.S. dollar-denominated debt offerings by major corporate issuers in an attempt to reduce the foreign currency exchange risk which, from the point of view of prospective purchasers of the securities, is inherent in the international fixed-income marketplace.

Foreign currency warrants may attempt to reduce the foreign exchange risk assumed by purchasers of a security by, for example, providing for a supplemental payment in the event that the U.S. dollar depreciates against the value of a major foreign currency such as the Japanese yen or the euro. The formula used to determine the amount payable upon exercise of a foreign currency warrant may make the warrant worthless unless the applicable foreign currency exchange rate moves in a particular direction (e.g., unless the U.S. dollar appreciates or depreciates against the particular foreign currency to which the warrant is linked or indexed).

Foreign currency warrants are severable from the debt obligations with which they may be offered and may be listed on exchanges. Foreign currency warrants may be exercisable only in certain minimum amounts, and an investor wishing to exercise warrants who possesses less than the minimum number required for exercise may be required either to sell the warrants or to purchase additional warrants, thereby incurring additional transaction costs. In the case of any exercise of warrants, there may be a time delay between the time a holder of warrants gives instructions to exercise and the time the exchange rate relating to exercise is determined, during which time the exchange rate could change significantly, thereby affecting both the market and cash settlement values of the warrants being exercised. The expiration date of the warrants may be accelerated if the warrants should be delisted from an exchange or if their trading should be suspended permanently, which would result in the loss of any remaining "time value" of the warrants (i.e., the difference between the current market value and the exercise value of the warrants), and, in the case the warrants were "out-of-the-money," in a total loss of the purchase price of the warrants.

Warrants are generally unsecured obligations of their issuers and are not standardized foreign currency options issued by the Options Clearing Corporation ("OCC"). Unlike foreign currency options issued by OCC, the terms of foreign exchange warrants generally will not be amended in the event of governmental or regulatory actions affecting exchange rates or in the event of the imposition of other regulatory controls affecting the international currency markets. The initial public offering price of foreign currency warrants is generally considerably in excess of the price that a commercial user of foreign currencies might pay in the interbank market for a comparable option involving significantly larger amounts of foreign currencies. Foreign currency warrants are subject to significant foreign exchange risk, including risks arising from complex political or economic factors.

Principal Exchange Rate Linked Securities: Principal exchange rate linked securities ("PERLs") are debt obligations the principal on which is payable at maturity in an amount that may vary based on the exchange rate between the U.S.

dollar and a particular foreign currency at or about that time. The return on “standard” PERLs is enhanced if the foreign currency to which the security is linked appreciates against the U.S. dollar and is adversely affected by increases in the foreign exchange value of the U.S. dollar; “reverse” PERLs are like the “standard” securities, except that their return is enhanced by increases in the value of the U.S. dollar and adversely impacted by increases in the value of foreign currency. Interest payments on the securities are generally made in U.S. dollars at rates that reflect the degree of foreign currency risk assumed or given up by the purchaser of the notes (i.e., at relatively higher interest rates if the purchaser has assumed some of the foreign exchange risk, or relatively lower interest rates if the issuer has assumed some of the foreign exchange risk, based on the expectations of the current market). PERLs may in limited cases be subject to acceleration of maturity (generally, not without the consent of the holders of the securities), which may have an adverse impact on the value of the principal payment to be made at maturity.

***Performance Indexed Paper*:** Performance indexed paper (“PIPs”) is U.S. dollar-denominated commercial paper the yield of which is linked to certain foreign exchange rate movements. The yield to the investor on PIPs is established at maturity as a function of spot exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and a designated currency as of or about that time (generally, the index maturity two days prior to maturity). The yield to the investor will be within a range stipulated at the time of purchase of the obligation, generally with a guaranteed minimum rate of return that is below, and a potential maximum rate of return that is above, market yields on U.S. dollar-denominated commercial paper, with both the minimum and maximum rates of return on the investment corresponding to the minimum and maximum values of the spot exchange rate two business days prior to maturity.

Foreign Securities and Emerging Markets. Each Fund may invest in foreign securities, including securities from issuers located in emerging market countries. Investing in foreign securities involves risks not typically associated with investing in securities of companies organized and operated in the United States that can increase the chances that the Fund will lose money. In addition to equity securities, foreign investments of each Fund may include: (a) debt obligations issued or guaranteed by foreign sovereign governments or their agencies, authorities, instrumentalities or political subdivisions, including a foreign state, province or municipality; (b) debt obligations of supranational organizations; (c) debt obligations of foreign banks and bank holding companies; (d) debt obligations of domestic banks and corporations issued in foreign currencies; (e) debt obligations denominated in the Euro; and (f) foreign corporate debt securities and commercial paper. Such securities may include loan participations and assignments, convertible securities and zero-coupon securities.

To determine a stock's country of origin, each Fund's definition is where the underlying company is tax domiciled.

***Currency Risk and Exchange Risk*:** Because foreign securities generally are denominated and pay dividends or interest in foreign currencies, the value of the Fund (if it invests in foreign securities as measured in U.S. dollars) will be affected favorably or unfavorably by changes in exchange rates. Generally, when the U.S. dollar rises in value against a foreign currency, a security denominated in that currency loses value because the currency is worth fewer U.S. dollars. Conversely, when the U.S. dollar decreases in value against a foreign currency, a security denominated in that currency gains value because the currency is worth more U.S. dollars. This risk, generally known as "currency risk," means that a stronger U.S. dollar will reduce returns for U.S. investors while a weak U.S. dollar will increase those returns.

Foreign Market Risk: A fund that may invest in foreign securities offers the potential for more diversification than a fund that invests only in the United States because securities traded on foreign markets have often (though not always) performed differently from securities traded in the United States. However, such investments often involve risks not present in U.S. investments that can increase the chances that the Fund will lose money. In particular, the Fund is subject to the risk that, because there are generally fewer investors on foreign exchanges and a smaller number of shares traded each day, it may be difficult for the Fund to buy and sell securities on those exchanges. In addition, prices of foreign securities may fluctuate more than prices of securities traded in the United States.

Investments in foreign markets may also be adversely affected by governmental actions such as the imposition of punitive taxes. In addition, the governments of certain countries may prohibit or impose substantial restrictions on foreign investing in their capital markets or in certain industries. Any of these actions could severely affect security prices, impair the Fund's ability to purchase or sell foreign securities or transfer the Fund's assets or income back into the United States or otherwise adversely affect its operations. Other potential foreign market risks include exchange controls, difficulties in pricing securities, defaults on foreign government securities, difficulties in enforcing favorable legal judgments in foreign courts and political and social conditions, such as diplomatic relations, confiscatory taxation, expropriation, limitation on the removal of funds or assets or imposition of (or change in) exchange control regulations. Legal remedies available to investors in certain foreign countries may be less extensive than those available to investors in the United States or other foreign countries. In addition, changes in government administrations or economic or monetary policies in the United States or abroad could result in appreciation or

depreciation of portfolio securities and could favorably or adversely affect the Fund's operations.

***Public Availability of Information*:** In general, less information is publicly available with respect to foreign issuers than is available with respect to U.S. companies. Most foreign companies are also not subject to the uniform accounting and financial reporting requirements applicable to issuers in the United States. While the volume of transactions effected on foreign stock exchanges has increased in recent years, it remains appreciably below that of the New York Stock Exchange (the "Exchange"). Accordingly, the Fund's foreign investments may be less liquid and their prices may be more volatile than comparable investments in securities in U.S. companies. In addition, there is generally less government supervision and regulation of securities exchanges, brokers and issuers in foreign countries than in the United States.

Settlement Risk: Settlement and clearance procedures in certain foreign markets differ significantly from those in the United States. Foreign settlement procedures and trade regulations also may involve certain risks (such as delays in payment for or delivery of securities) not typically generated by the settlement of U.S. investments.

Communications between the United States and emerging market countries may be unreliable, increasing the risk of delayed settlements or losses of security certificates in markets that still rely on physical settlement. Settlements in certain foreign countries at times have not kept pace with the number of securities transactions; these problems may make it difficult for the Fund to carry out transactions. If the Fund cannot settle or is delayed in settling a purchase of securities, it may miss attractive investment opportunities and certain of its assets may be uninvested with no return earned thereon for some period. If the Fund cannot settle or is delayed in settling a sale of securities, it may lose money if the value of the security then declines or, if it has contracted to sell the security to another party, the Fund could be liable to that party for any losses incurred. Dividends or interest on, or proceeds from the sale of, foreign securities may be subject to foreign taxes on income from sources in such countries.

Governmental Supervision and Regulation/Accounting Standards: Many foreign governments supervise and regulate stock exchanges, brokers and the sale of securities less than does the United States. Some countries may not have laws to protect investors comparable to the U.S. securities laws. For example, some foreign countries may have no laws or rules against insider trading. Insider trading occurs when a person buys or sells a company's securities based on nonpublic information about that company. In addition, the U.S. Government has from time to time in the past imposed restrictions, through penalties and otherwise, on foreign investments by U.S. investors such as the Fund.

Accounting standards in other countries are not necessarily the same as in the United States. If the accounting standards in another country do not require as much detail as U.S. accounting standards, it may be harder for Fund management to completely and accurately determine a company's financial condition. Also, brokerage commissions and other costs of buying or selling securities often are higher in foreign countries than they are in the United States. This reduces the amount the Fund can earn on its investments.

***Certain Risks of Holding Fund Assets Outside the United States*:** Each Fund generally holds foreign securities and cash in foreign banks and securities depositories. Some foreign banks and securities depositories may be recently organized or new to the foreign custody business. In addition, there may be limited or no regulatory oversight over their operations. Also, the laws of certain countries may put limits on the Fund's ability to recover its assets if a foreign bank or depository or issuer of a security or any of their agents goes bankrupt. In addition, it is often more expensive for the Fund to buy, sell and hold securities in certain foreign markets than in the United States. The increased expense of investing in foreign markets reduces the amount the Fund can earn on its investments and typically results in a higher operating expense ratio for the Fund as compared to investment companies that invest only in the United States.

***Foreign Economy Risk*:** The economies of certain foreign markets often do not compare favorably with that of the United States with respect to such issues as growth of gross national product, reinvestment of capital, resources and

balance of payments position. Certain such economies may rely heavily on particular industries or foreign capital and are more vulnerable to diplomatic developments, the imposition of economic sanctions against a particular country or countries, changes in international trading patterns, trade barriers and other protectionist or retaliatory measures.

***Sovereign Debt*:** Each Fund may invest in sovereign debt. Investment in sovereign debt can involve a high degree of risk. The governmental entity that controls the repayment of sovereign debt may not be able or willing to repay the principal and/or interest when due in accordance with the terms of such debt. A governmental entity's willingness or ability to repay principal and interest due in a timely manner may be affected by, among other factors, its cash flow situation, the extent of its foreign reserves, the availability of sufficient foreign exchange on the date a payment is due, the relative size of the debt service burden to the economy as a whole, the governmental entity's policy towards the International Monetary Fund and the political constraints to which a governmental entity may be subject.

Governmental entities may also be dependent on expected disbursements from foreign governments, multilateral agencies and others abroad to reduce principal and interest arrearages on their debt. The commitment on the part of these governments, agencies and others to make such disbursements may be conditioned on the implementation of economic reforms and/or economic performance and the timely service of such debtor's obligations. Failure to implement such reforms, achieve such levels of economic performance or repay principal or interest when due may result in the cancellation of such third parties' commitments to lend funds to the governmental entity, which may further impair such debtor's ability or willingness to timely service its debts. Consequently, governmental entities may default on their sovereign debt.

Holders of sovereign debt may be requested to participate in the rescheduling of such debt and to extend further loans to governmental entities. In the event of a default by a governmental entity, there may be few or no effective legal remedies for collecting on such debt.

***Risks of Investing in Asia-Pacific Countries*:** In addition to the risks of foreign investing and the risks of investing in developing markets, the developing market Asia- Pacific countries in which each Fund may invest are subject to certain additional or specific risks. In many of these markets, there is a high concentration of market capitalization and trading volume in a small number of issuers representing a limited number of industries, as well as a high concentration of investors and financial intermediaries. Many of these markets also may be affected by developments with respect to more established markets in the region such as in Japan and Hong Kong. Brokers in developing market Asia-Pacific countries typically are fewer in number and less well capitalized than brokers in the United States. These factors, combined with the U.S. regulatory requirements for open-end investment companies and the restrictions on foreign investment discussed below, result in potentially fewer investment opportunities for the Fund and may have an adverse impact on the investment performance of the Fund.

Many of the developing market Asia-Pacific countries may be subject to a greater degree of economic, political and social instability than is the case in the United States and Western European countries. Such instability may result from, among other things: (i) authoritarian governments or military involvement in political and economic decision-making, including changes in government through extra-constitutional means; (ii) popular unrest associated with demands for improved political, economic and social conditions; (iii) internal insurgencies; (iv) hostile relations with neighboring countries; and (v) ethnic, religious and racial disaffection. In addition, the governments of many of such countries, such as Indonesia, have a substantial role in regulating and supervising the economy. Another risk common to most such countries is that the economy is heavily export oriented and, accordingly, is dependent upon international trade. The existence of overburdened infrastructure and obsolete financial systems also presents risks in certain countries, as do environmental problems. Certain economies also depend to a significant degree upon exports of primary commodities and, therefore, are vulnerable to changes in commodity prices that, in turn, may be affected by a variety of factors.

The legal systems in certain developing market Asia-Pacific countries also may have an adverse impact on the Fund. For example, while the potential liability of a shareholder in a U.S. corporation with respect to acts of the corporation is generally limited to the amount of the shareholder’s investment, the notion of limited liability is less clear in certain emerging market Asia-Pacific countries. Similarly, the rights of investors in developing market Asia- Pacific companies may be more limited than those of shareholders of U.S. corporations. It may be difficult or impossible to obtain and/or enforce a judgment in a developing market Asia-Pacific country.

Governments of many developing market Asia-Pacific countries have exercised and continue to exercise substantial influence over many aspects of the private sector. In certain cases, the government owns or controls many companies, including the largest in the country. Accordingly, government actions in the future could have a significant effect on economic conditions in developing market Asia-Pacific countries, which could affect private sector companies and a Fund itself, as well as the value of securities in the Fund’s portfolio. In addition, economic statistics of developing market Asia-Pacific countries may be less reliable than economic statistics of more developed nations.

In addition to the relative lack of publicly available information about developing market Asia-Pacific issuers and the possibility that such issuers may not be subject to the same accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards as U.S. companies, inflation accounting rules in some developing market Asia-Pacific countries require companies that keep accounting records in the local currency, for both tax and accounting purposes, to restate certain assets and liabilities on the company's balance sheet in order to express items in terms of currency of constant purchasing power. Inflation accounting may indirectly generate losses or profits for certain developing market Asia-Pacific companies. Satisfactory custodial services for investment securities may not be available in some developing Asia-Pacific countries, which may result in the Fund incurring additional costs and delays in providing transportation and custody services for such securities outside such countries. Certain developing Asia-Pacific countries, such as the Philippines, India and Turkey, are especially large debtors to commercial banks and foreign governments. The Advisor may determine that, notwithstanding otherwise favorable investment criteria, it may not be practicable or appropriate to invest in a particular developing Asia-Pacific country. Each Fund may invest in countries in which foreign investors, including the Advisor, have had no or limited prior experience.

***Restrictions on Foreign Investments in Asia-Pacific Countries*:** Some developing Asia-Pacific countries prohibit or impose substantial restrictions on investments in their capital markets, particularly their equity markets, by foreign entities such as the Fund. As illustrations, certain countries may require governmental approval prior to investments by foreign persons or limit the amount of investment by foreign persons in a particular company or limit the investment by foreign persons to only a specific class of securities of a company which may have less advantageous terms (including price and shareholder rights) than securities of the company available for purchase by nationals.

There can be no assurance that the Fund will be able to obtain required governmental approvals in a timely manner. In addition, changes to restrictions on foreign ownership of securities subsequent to the Fund's purchase of such securities may have an adverse effect on the value of such shares. Certain countries may restrict investment opportunities in issuers or industries deemed important to national interests.

The manner in which foreign investors may invest in companies in certain developing Asia-Pacific countries, as well as limitations on such investments, also may have an adverse impact on the operations of the Fund. For example, the Fund may be required in certain of such countries to invest initially through a local broker or other entity and then have the shares purchased re-registered in the name of the Fund. Re-registration may in some instances not be able to occur on a timely basis, resulting in a delay during which the Fund may be denied certain of its rights as an investor, including rights as to dividends or to be made aware of certain corporate actions. There also may be instances where the Fund places a purchase order but is subsequently informed, at the time of re-registration, that the permissible allocation of the investment to foreign investors has been filled, depriving the Fund of the ability to make its desired investment at that time.

Substantial limitations may exist in certain countries with respect to the Fund's ability to repatriate investment income, capital or the proceeds of sales of securities by foreign investors. The Fund could be adversely affected by delays in, or a refusal to grant, any required governmental approval for repatriation of capital, as well as by the application to the Fund of any restrictions on investments. It is possible that certain countries may impose currency controls or other restrictions relating to their currencies or to securities of issuers in those countries. To the extent that such restrictions have the effect of making certain investments illiquid, securities may not be available for sale to meet redemptions. Depending on a variety of financial factors, the percentage of the Fund's portfolio subject to currency controls may increase. In the event other countries impose similar controls, the portion of the Fund's assets that may be used to meet redemptions may be further decreased. Even where there is no outright restriction on repatriation of capital, the mechanics of repatriation may affect certain aspects of the operations of the Fund (for example, if funds may be withdrawn only in certain currencies and/or only at an exchange rate established by the government).

In certain countries, banks or other financial institutions may be among the leading companies or have actively traded securities available for investment. The 1940 Act restricts the Fund's investments in any equity securities of an issuer that, in its most recent fiscal year, derived more than 15% of its revenues from "securities related activities," as defined by the rules thereunder. These provisions may restrict the Fund's investments in certain foreign banks and other financial institutions.

Political and economic structures in emerging market countries may be undergoing significant evolution and rapid development, and these countries may lack the social, political and economic stability characteristic of more developed countries. Some of these countries may have in the past failed to recognize private property rights and have at times nationalized or expropriated the assets of private companies. As a result, the risks described above, including the risks of nationalization or expropriation of assets, may be heightened. In addition, unanticipated political or social developments may affect the value of investments in these countries and the availability to the Fund of additional investments in emerging market countries. The small size and inexperience of the securities markets in certain of these countries and the limited volume of trading in securities in these countries may make investments in the countries illiquid and more volatile than investments in Japan or most Western European countries. There may be little financial or accounting information available with respect to issuers located in certain emerging market countries, and it may be difficult to assess the value or prospects of an investment in such issuers.

The expense ratios of funds investing significantly in foreign securities can be expected to be higher than those of funds investing primarily in domestic securities. The costs attributable to investing abroad are usually higher for several reasons, such as the higher cost of custody of foreign securities, higher commissions paid on comparable transactions on foreign markets and additional costs arising from delays in settlements of transactions involving foreign securities.

***Risks of Investments in Russia*:** Each Fund may invest a portion of its assets in securities issued by companies located in Russia. Because of the recent formation of the Russian securities markets as well as the underdeveloped state of Russia's banking system, settlement, clearing and registration of securities transactions are subject to significant risks. Ownership of shares is defined according to entries in the company's share register and normally evidenced by extracts from the register. These extracts are not negotiable instruments and are not effective evidence of securities ownership. The registrars are not necessarily subject to effective state supervision nor are they licensed with any governmental entity. Also, there is no central registration system for shareholders and it is possible for the Fund to lose its registration through fraud, negligence or mere oversight. While the Fund will endeavor to ensure that its interest continues to be appropriately recorded either itself or through a custodian or other agent inspecting the share register and by obtaining extracts of share registers through regular confirmations, these extracts have no legal enforceability and it is possible that subsequent illegal amendment or other fraudulent act may deprive the Fund of its ownership rights or improperly dilute its interest. In addition, while applicable Russian regulations impose liability on registrars for losses resulting from their errors, it may be difficult for the Fund to enforce any rights it may have against the registrar or issuer of the securities in the event of loss of share registration. While the Fund intends to invest directly in Russian companies that use an independent registrar, there can be no assurance that such investments will not result in a loss to the Fund.

***P-notes*:** Each Fund may invest in participatory notes (commonly known as P-notes), which are offshore derivative instruments issued to foreign institutional investors and their sub-accounts against underlying Indian securities listed on the Indian bourses. These securities are not registered with the Securities and Exchange Board of India.

Participatory notes are similar to ADRs and the risks of investing in participatory notes are similar to those discussed below with respect to securities of foreign issuers in general.

Guaranteed Investment Contracts. Each Fund may invest in guaranteed investment contracts ("GIC"). A GIC is a general obligation of an insurance company. A GIC is generally structured as a deferred annuity under which the purchaser agrees to pay a given amount of money to an insurer (either in a lump sum or in installments) and the insurer promises to pay interest at a guaranteed rate (either fixed or variable) for the life of the contract. Some GICs provide that the insurer may periodically pay discretionary excess interest over and above the guaranteed rate. At the GIC's maturity, the purchaser generally is given the option of receiving payment or an annuity. Certain GICs may have features that permit redemption by the issuer at a discount from par value.

Generally, GICs are not assignable or transferable without the permission of the issuer. As a result, the acquisition of GICs is subject to the limitations applicable to the Fund's acquisition of illiquid and restricted securities. The holder of a GIC is dependent on the creditworthiness of the issuer as to whether the issuer is able to meet its obligations.

Hybrid Instruments. A hybrid instrument is a type of potentially high-risk derivative that combines a traditional stock, bond or commodity with an option or forward contract. Generally, the principal amount, amount payable upon maturity or redemption or interest rate of a hybrid is tied (positively or negatively) to the price of some commodity, currency or securities index or another interest rate or some other economic factor (each a "benchmark"). The interest rate or (unlike most fixed income securities) the principal amount payable at maturity of a hybrid security may be increased or decreased, depending on changes in the value of the benchmark. An example of a hybrid could be a bond issued by an oil company that pays a small base level of interest with additional interest that accrues in correlation to the extent to which oil prices exceed a certain predetermined level. Such a hybrid instrument would be a combination of a bond and a call option on oil.

Hybrids can be used as an efficient means of pursuing a variety of investment goals, including currency hedging, duration management and increased total return. Hybrids may not bear interest or pay dividends. The value of a hybrid or its interest rate may be a multiple of a benchmark and, as a result, may be leveraged and move (up or down) more steeply and rapidly than the benchmark. These benchmarks may be sensitive to economic and political events, such as commodity shortages and currency devaluations, which cannot be readily foreseen by the purchaser of a hybrid. Under certain conditions, the redemption value of a hybrid could be zero. Thus, an investment in a hybrid may entail significant market risks that are not associated with a similar investment in a traditional, U.S. dollar-denominated bond that has a fixed principal amount and pays a fixed rate or floating rate of interest. The purchase of hybrids also exposes the Fund to the credit risk of the issuer of the hybrids. These risks may cause significant fluctuations in the NAV of the Fund.

Certain hybrid instruments may provide exposure to the commodities markets. These are derivative securities with one or more commodity-linked components that have payment features similar to commodity futures contracts, commodity options, or similar instruments. Commodity-linked hybrid instruments may be either equity or debt securities, leveraged or unleveraged, and are considered hybrid instruments because they have both security and commodity-like characteristics. A portion of the value of these instruments may be derived from the value of a commodity, futures contract, index or other economic variable. The Fund will only invest in commodity-linked hybrid instruments that qualify under applicable rules of the CFTC for an exemption from the provisions of the CEA.

Certain issuers of structured products such as hybrid instruments may be deemed to be investment companies as defined in the 1940 Act. As a result, the Fund's investments in these products may be subject to limits applicable to investments in investment companies and may be subject to restrictions contained in the 1940 Act.

***Tax Risk*:** Each Fund intends to qualify annually to be treated as a RIC under the IRC. To qualify as a RIC, the Fund must invest in assets which produce Qualifying Income. Whether the income from certain derivatives, swaps, commodity-linked derivatives and other commodity/natural resource-related securities is Qualifying Income is unclear. If the Fund invests in these types of securities and the income from these securities is determined to not be Qualifying Income, it may cause the Fund to fail to qualify as a RIC under the IRC. See "Taxation of the Fund" below for additional information related to these restrictions.

Illiquid Securities. Each Fund may not knowingly invest more than 15% of its net assets in illiquid securities. Illiquid securities are securities that cannot be disposed of within seven days at approximately the value at which they are being carried on the Fund's books. The Board of Trustees has the ultimate responsibility for determining whether specific securities are liquid or illiquid. The Board of Trustees has delegated the function of making day to day determinations of liquidity to the Advisor pursuant to guidelines approved by the Board of Trustees. The Advisor will monitor the liquidity of securities held by the Fund and report periodically on such decisions to the Board of Trustees. If the limitations on illiquid securities are exceeded, other than by a change in market values, the condition will be reported by the Advisor to the Board of Trustees. Illiquid securities would generally include repurchase agreements with notice/termination dates in excess of seven days and certain securities which are subject to trading restrictions because they are not registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "1933 Act"). External market conditions may impact the liquidity of portfolio securities and may cause the Fund to sell or divest certain illiquid securities in order to comply with its limitation on holding illiquid securities, which may result in realized losses to the Fund.

Inflation-Protected Debt Securities. Each Fund may invest in inflation-protected debt securities or inflation-indexed bonds, which are fixed income securities whose value is periodically adjusted according to the rate of inflation. Two structures are common. The U.S. Treasury and some other issuers utilize a structure that accrues inflation into the principal value of the bond. Most other issuers pay out the Consumer Price Index ("CPI") accruals as part of a semi-annual coupon.

Treasury Inflation Protected Securities (“TIPS”) have maturities of approximately five, ten or thirty years, although it is possible that securities with other maturities will be issued in the future. The U.S. Treasury securities pay interest on a semi-annual basis equal to a fixed percentage of the inflation-adjusted principal amount. For example, if the Fund purchased TIPS with a par value of $1,000 and a 3% real rate of return coupon (payable 1.5% semi- annually), and the rate of inflation over the first six months was 1%, the mid-year par value of the bond would be $1,010 and the first semi-annual interest payment would be $15.15 ($1,010 times 1.5%). If inflation during the second half of the year resulted in the whole year’s inflation equaling 3%, the end-of-year par value of the bond would be $1,030 and the second semi-annual interest payment would be $15.45 ($1,030 times 1.5%).

If the periodic adjustment rate measuring inflation falls, the principal value of inflation-indexed bonds will be adjusted downward, and consequently the interest payable on these securities (calculated with respect to a smaller principal amount) will be reduced. Repayment of the original bond principal upon maturity (as adjusted for inflation) is guaranteed in the case of TIPS, even during a period of deflation. However, the current market value of the bonds is not guaranteed and will fluctuate. The Fund may also invest in other inflation-related bonds which may or may not provide a similar guarantee. If a guarantee of principal is not provided, the adjusted principal value of the bond repaid at maturity may be less than the original principal amount.

The value of inflation-indexed bonds is expected to change in response to changes in real interest rates. Real interest rates in turn are tied to the relationship between nominal interest rates and the rate of inflation. Therefore, if the rate of inflation rises at a faster rate than nominal interest rates, real interest rates might decline, leading to an increase in value of inflation-indexed bonds. In contrast, if nominal interest rates increase at a faster rate than inflation, real interest rates might rise, leading to a decrease in value of inflation-indexed bonds.

While these securities are expected to be protected from long-term inflationary trends, short-term increases in inflation may lead to a decline in value. If interest rates rise due to reasons other than inflation (for example, due to changes in currency exchange rates), investors in these securities may not be protected to the extent that the increase is not reflected in the bond's inflation measure.

The periodic adjustment of U.S. inflation-indexed bonds is tied to the Consumer Price Index for Urban Consumers ("CPI-U"), which is calculated monthly by the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics. The CPI-U is a measurement of changes in the cost of living, made up of components such as housing, food, transportation and energy. Inflation-indexed bonds issued by a foreign government are generally adjusted to reflect a comparable inflation index calculated by that government. There can be no assurance that the CPI-U or any foreign inflation index will accurately measure the real rate of inflation in the prices of goods and services. Moreover, there can be no assurance that the rate of inflation in a foreign country will be correlated to the rate of inflation in the United States.

Any increase in the principal amount of an inflation-indexed bond will be considered taxable ordinary income, even though investors do not receive their principal until maturity.

Smaller Capitalization Companies. Each Fund may invest in smaller capitalization companies which are generally companies with market capitalization up to $2 billion. The risk that stocks of smaller capitalization companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than stocks of larger, more established companies. Small capitalization companies may have limited product lines or financial resources, or may be dependent upon a small or inexperienced management group, and their securities may trade less frequently and in lower volume than the securities of larger companies, which could lead to higher transaction costs. Generally, the smaller the company size, the greater the risk.

Investment Company Securities and Exchange-Traded Funds. Each Fund may invest in investment company securities issued by open-end and closed-end investment companies, including exchange- traded funds ("ETFs"). Such investments are subject to limitations prescribed by the 1940 Act unless an SEC exemption is applicable or as may be permitted by rules under the 1940 Act or SEC staff interpretations thereof. The 1940 Act limitations currently provide, in part, that the Fund may not purchase shares of an investment company if (a) such a purchase would cause the Fund to own in the aggregate more than 3% of the total outstanding voting stock of the investment company or (b) such a purchase would cause the Fund to have more than 5% of its total assets invested in the investment company or (c) more than 10% of the Fund's total assets would be invested in the aggregate in all investment companies. As a shareholder in an investment company, the Fund would bear its pro-rata portion of the investment company's expenses, including advisory fees, in addition to its own expenses. Although the 1940 Act restricts investments by registered investment companies in the securities of other investment companies, registered investment companies are permitted to invest in certain ETFs beyond the limits set forth in Section 12(d)(1), subject to certain terms and conditions set forth in an SEC exemptive order issued to such ETFs, including that such investment companies enter into an agreement with such ETF. Set forth below is additional information about the manner in which ETFs generally operate and the risks associated with an investment in ETFs.

The Fund generally expects to purchase shares of ETFs through broker-dealers in transactions on a securities exchange, and in such cases the Fund will pay customary brokerage commissions for each purchase and sale. Shares of an ETF may also be acquired by depositing a specified portfolio of the ETF's underlying securities, as well as a cash payment generally equal to accumulated dividends of the securities (net of expenses) up to the time of deposit, with the ETF's custodian, in exchange for which the ETF will issue a quantity of new shares sometimes referred to as a "creation unit." Similarly, shares of an ETF purchased on an exchange may be accumulated until they represent a creation unit, and the creation unit may be redeemed in kind for a portfolio of the underlying securities (based on the ETF's NAV) together with a cash payment generally equal to accumulated dividends as of the date of redemption. The Fund may redeem creation units for the underlying securities (and any applicable cash), and may assemble a portfolio of the underlying securities (and any required cash) to purchase creation units, if the Advisor believes it is in the Fund's interest to do so. The Fund's ability to redeem creation units may be limited by the 1940 Act, which provides that an ETF will not be obligated to redeem shares held by the Fund in an amount exceeding one percent of such ETF's total outstanding securities during any period of less than 30 days.

***Termination Risk*:** There is a risk that ETFs in which each Fund invests may terminate due to extraordinary events. For example, any of the service providers to ETFs, such as the trustee or sponsor, may close or otherwise fail to perform their obligations to the ETF, and the ETF may not be able to find a substitute service provider. Also, an ETF may be dependent upon licenses to use the various indices as a basis for determining their compositions and/or otherwise to use certain trade names. If these licenses are terminated, an ETF may also terminate or experience a disruption in its activities. In addition, an ETF may terminate if its net assets fall below a certain amount.

Although the Advisor believes that, in the event of the termination of an ETF, the Fund will be able to invest instead in shares of an alternate ETF tracking the same market index or another index covering the same general market, there can be no assurance that shares of an alternate ETF would be available for investment at that time.

Investments In Commodity/Natural Resource-Related Securities. As discussed under "Investment Limitations" below, neither Fund invests directly in commodities. However, the Fund may from time to time invest in securities of companies whose business is related to commodities and natural resources or in registered investment companies or other companies that invest directly or indirectly in commodities and natural resources. For example, the Fund may invest in companies whose business is related to mining of precious or other metals (e.g., gold, silver, etc.) or RICs that invest in securities of mining companies and related instruments (including, without limitation, the underlying commodities). Investments in equity securities of companies involved in mining or related precious metals industries, and the value of the investment companies and other companies that invest in precious metals and other commodities are subject to a number of risks. For example, the prices of precious metals or other commodities can move sharply, up or down, in response to cyclical economic conditions, political events or the monetary policies of various countries, any of which may adversely affect the value of companies whose business is related to such commodities, or the value of investment companies and other companies investing in such business or commodities. Furthermore, such companies are subject to risks related to fluctuations of prices and perceptions of value in the commodity markets generally.

***Tax Risk*:** Each Fund intends to qualify annually to be treated as a RIC under the IRC. To qualify as a RIC, the Fund must invest in assets which produce Qualifying Income. Whether the income from certain derivatives, swaps, commodity-linked derivatives and other commodity/natural resource-related securities is Qualifying Income is unclear. If the Fund invests in these types of securities and the income is determined to not be Qualifying Income, it may cause the Fund to fail to qualify as a RIC under the IRC.

Loan Participations. Each Fund may purchase participations in commercial loans. Such indebtedness may be secured or unsecured. Loan participations typically represent direct participation in a loan to a corporate borrower and generally are offered by banks or other financial institutions or lending syndicates. The Fund may participate in such syndications, or can buy part of a loan, becoming a part lender. When purchasing loan participations, the Fund assumes the credit risk associated with the corporate borrower and may assume the credit risk associated with an interposed bank or other financial intermediary. The participation interests in which the Fund intends to invest may not be rated by any nationally recognized statistical ratings organization ("NRSRO").

A loan is often administered by an agent bank acting as agent for all holders. The agent bank administers the terms of the loan, as specified in the loan agreement. In addition, the agent bank is normally responsible for the collection of principal and interest payments from the corporate borrower and the apportionment of these payments to the credit of all institutions which are parties to the loan agreement. Unless, under the terms of the loan or other indebtedness, the Fund has direct recourse against the corporate borrower, the Fund may have to rely on the agent bank or other financial intermediary to apply appropriate credit remedies against a corporate borrower. A financial institution's employment as agent bank might be terminated in the event that it fails to observe a requisite standard of care or becomes insolvent. A successor agent bank would generally be appointed to replace the terminated agent bank, and assets held by the agent bank under the loan agreement should remain available to holders of such indebtedness. However, if assets held by the agent bank for the benefit of the Fund were determined to be subject to the claims of the agent bank's general creditors, the Fund might incur certain costs and delays in realizing payment on a loan or loan participation and could suffer a loss of principal and/or interest. In situations involving other interposed financial institutions (e.g., an insurance company or governmental agency) similar risks may arise.

Purchasers of loans and other forms of direct indebtedness depend primarily upon the creditworthiness of the corporate borrower for payment of principal and interest. If the Fund does not receive scheduled interest or principal payments on such indebtedness, the Fund's share price and yield could be adversely affected. Loans that are fully secured offer the Fund more protection than an unsecured loan in the event of non-payment of scheduled interest or principal. However, there is no assurance that the liquidation of collateral from a secured loan would satisfy the corporate borrower's obligation, or that the collateral can be liquidated.

The Fund may invest in loan participations with credit quality comparable to that of the issuers of the Fund's securities investments. Indebtedness of companies whose creditworthiness is poor involves substantially greater risks and may be highly speculative. Some companies may never pay off their indebtedness or may pay only a small fraction of the amount owed. Consequently, when investing in indebtedness of companies with poor credit, the Fund bears a substantial risk of losing the entire amount invested.

The Fund limits the amount of its total assets that it will invest in any one issuer or in issuers within the same industry (see "Investment Limitations"). For purposes of these limits, the Fund generally will treat the corporate borrower as the "issuer" of indebtedness held by the Fund. In the case of loan participations where a bank or other lending institution serves as a financial intermediary between the Fund and the corporate borrower, if the participation does not shift to the Fund the direct debtor-creditor relationship with the corporate borrower, SEC interpretations require the Fund to treat both the lending bank or other lending institution and the corporate borrower as "issuers" for the purpose of determining whether the Fund has invested more than 5% of its assets in a single issuer. Treating a financial intermediary as an issuer of indebtedness may restrict the Fund's ability to invest in indebtedness related to a single financial intermediary, or a group of intermediaries engaged in the same industry, even if the underlying borrowers represent many different companies and industries.

Loans and other types of direct indebtedness may not be readily marketable and may be subject to restrictions on resale. In some cases, negotiations involved in disposing of indebtedness may require weeks to complete.

Consequently, some indebtedness may be difficult or impossible to dispose of readily at what the Advisor believes to be a fair price. In addition, valuation of illiquid indebtedness involves a greater degree of judgment in determining the Fund's NAV than if that value were based on available market quotations and could result in significant variations in the Fund's daily share price. At the same time, some loan interests are traded among certain financial institutions and accordingly may be deemed liquid. As the market for different types of indebtedness develops, the liquidity of these instruments is expected to improve. In addition, the Fund currently intends to treat indebtedness for which there is no readily available market as illiquid for purposes of the Fund's limitation on illiquid investments.

Investments in loan participations are considered to be debt obligations for purposes of the Trust's investment restriction relating to the lending of funds or assets by the Fund.

Investments in loans through a direct assignment of the financial institution's interests with respect to the loan may involve additional risks to the Fund. For example, if a loan is foreclosed, the Fund could become part owner of any collateral and would bear the costs and liabilities associated with owning and disposing of the collateral. In addition, it is conceivable that under emerging legal theories of lender liability, the Fund could be held liable as co-lender. It is unclear whether loans and other forms of direct indebtedness offer securities law protections against fraud and misrepresentation. In the absence of definitive regulatory guidance, the Fund relies on the Advisor's research in an attempt to avoid situations where fraud or misrepresentation could adversely affect the Fund.

Money Market Funds. Each Fund may invest in the securities of money market mutual funds. Such investments are subject to limitations prescribed by the 1940 Act, the rules thereunder and applicable SEC staff interpretations thereof, or applicable exemptive relief granted by the SEC. (See "Investment Company Securities and Exchange-Traded Funds" above.)

Mortgage-Related Securities and Asset-Backed Securities. Mortgage-related securities are interests in pools of residential or commercial mortgage loans, including mortgage loans made by savings and loan institutions, mortgage bankers, commercial banks and others. Pools of mortgage loans are assembled as securities for sale to investors by various governmental, government-related and private organizations. See "Mortgage Pass-Through Securities." Each Fund may also invest in debt securities which are secured with collateral consisting of mortgage-related securities (see "Collateralized Mortgage Obligations").

Mortgage Pass-Through Securities: Interests in pools of mortgage-related securities differ from other forms of debt securities, which normally provide for periodic payment of interest in fixed amounts with principal payments at maturity or specified call dates. Instead, these securities provide a monthly payment which consists of both interest and principal payments. In effect, these payments are a "pass-through" of the monthly payments made by the individual borrowers on their residential or commercial mortgage loans, net of any fees paid to the issuer or guarantor of such securities. Additional payments are caused by repayments of principal resulting from the sale of the underlying property, refinancing or foreclosure, net of fees or costs which may be incurred. Some mortgage- related securities (such as securities issued by GNMA) are described as "modified pass-through." These securities entitle the holder to receive all interest and principal payments owed on the mortgage pool, net of certain fees, at the scheduled payment dates regardless of whether or not the mortgagor actually makes the payment.

The rate of pre-payments on underlying mortgages will affect the price and volatility of a mortgage-related security, and may have the effect of shortening or extending the effective duration of the security relative to what was anticipated at the time of purchase. To the extent that unanticipated rates of pre-payment on underlying mortgages increase the effective duration of a mortgage-related security, the volatility of such security can be expected to increase.

The residential mortgage market in the United States recently has experienced difficulties that may adversely affect the performance and market value of certain of the Fund's mortgage-related investments. Delinquencies and losses on residential mortgage loans (especially subprime and second-lien mortgage loans) generally have increased recently and may continue to increase, and a decline in or flattening of housing values (as has recently been experienced and may continue to be experienced in many housing markets) may exacerbate such delinquencies and losses. Borrowers with adjustable rate mortgage loans are more sensitive to changes in interest rates, which affect their monthly mortgage payments, and may be unable to secure replacement mortgages at comparably low interest rates. Also, a number of residential mortgage loan originators have experienced serious financial difficulties or bankruptcy. Owing largely to the foregoing, reduced investor demand for mortgage loans and mortgage-related securities and increased investor yield requirements have caused limited liquidity in the secondary market for certain mortgage-related securities, which can adversely affect the market value of mortgage-related securities. It is possible that such limited liquidity in such secondary markets could continue or worsen.

***Agency Mortgage-Related Securities*:** The principal governmental guarantor of mortgage-related securities is GNMA. GNMA is a wholly owned U.S. Government corporation within the Department of Housing and Urban Development. GNMA is authorized to guarantee, with the full faith and credit of the U.S. Government, the timely payment of principal and interest on securities issued by institutions approved by GNMA (such as savings and loan institutions, commercial banks and mortgage bankers) and backed by pools of mortgages insured by the Federal Housing Administration (the "FHA"), or guaranteed by the Department of Veterans Affairs (the "VA").

Government-related guarantors (*i.e.*, not backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Government) include the Federal National Mortgage Association ("FNMA") and the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation ("FHLMC"). FNMA is a government-sponsored corporation. FNMA purchases conventional (*i.e.*, not insured or guaranteed by any government agency) residential mortgages from a list of approved seller/servicers which include state and federally chartered savings and loan associations, mutual savings banks, commercial banks and credit unions and mortgage bankers. Pass-through securities issued by FNMA are guaranteed as to timely payment of principal and interest by FNMA, but are not backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Government. FHLMC was created by Congress in 1970 for the purpose of increasing the availability of mortgage credit for residential housing. It is a government-sponsored corporation that issues Participation Certificates ("PCs"), which are pass-through securities, each representing an undivided interest in a pool of residential mortgages. FHLMC guarantees the timely payment of interest and ultimate collection of principal, but PCs are not backed by the full faith and credit of the U.S. Government.

On September 6, 2008, the Federal Housing Finance Agency ("FHFA") placed FNMA and FHLMC into conservatorship. As the conservator, FHFA succeeded to all rights, titles, powers and privileges of FNMA and FHLMC and of any stockholder, officer or director of FNMA and FHLMC with respect to FNMA and FHLMC and the assets of FNMA and FHLMC. FHFA selected a new chief executive officer and chairman of the board of directors for each of FNMA and FHLMC.

In connection with the conservatorship, the U.S. Treasury entered into a Senior Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement with each of FNMA and FHLMC pursuant to which the U.S. Treasury will purchase up to an aggregate of $100 billion of each of FNMA and FHLMC to maintain a positive net worth in each enterprise. This agreement contains various covenants that severely limit each enterprise's operations. In exchange for entering into these agreements, the U.S. Treasury received $1 billion of each enterprise's senior preferred stock and warrants to purchase 79.9% of each enterprise's common stock. On February 18, 2009, the U.S. Treasury announced that it was doubling the size of its commitment to each enterprise under the Senior Preferred Stock Program to $200 billion. The U.S. Treasury's obligations under the Senior Preferred Stock Program are for an indefinite period of time for a maximum amount of $200 billion per enterprise.

FNMA and FHLMC are continuing to operate as going concerns while in conservatorship and each remain liable for all of its obligations, including its guaranty obligations, associated with its mortgage-backed securities. The Senior Preferred Stock Purchase Agreement is intended to enhance each of FNMA's and FHLMC's ability to meet its obligations. The FHFA has indicated that the conservatorship of each enterprise will end when the director of FHFA determines that FHFA's plan to restore the enterprise to a safe and solvent condition has been completed.

Under the Federal Housing Finance Regulatory Reform Act of 2008 (the "Reform Act"), which was included as part of the Housing and Economic Recovery Act of 2008, FHFA, as conservator or receiver, has the power to repudiate any contract entered into by FNMA or FHLMC prior to FHFA's appointment as conservator or receiver, as applicable, if FHFA determines, in its sole discretion, that performance of the contract is burdensome and that repudiation of the contract promotes the orderly administration of FNMA's or FHLMC's affairs. The Reform Act requires FHFA to exercise its right to repudiate any contract within a reasonable period of time after its appointment as conservator or receiver.

FHFA, in its capacity as conservator, has indicated that it has no intention to repudiate the guaranty obligations of FNMA or FHLMC because FHFA views repudiation as incompatible with the goals of the conservatorship.

However, in the event that FHFA, as conservator or if it is later appointed as receiver for FNMA or FHLMC, were to repudiate any such guaranty obligation, the conservatorship or receivership estate, as applicable, would be liable for actual direct compensatory damages in accordance with the provisions of the Reform Act. Any such liability could be satisfied only to the extent of FNMA's or FHLMC's assets available therefor.

In the event of repudiation, the payments of interest to holders of FNMA or FHLMC mortgage-backed securities would be reduced if payments on the mortgage loans represented in the mortgage loan groups related to such mortgage-backed securities are not made by the borrowers or advanced by the servicer. Any actual direct compensatory damages for repudiating these guaranty obligations may not be sufficient to offset any shortfalls experienced by such mortgage-backed security holders.

Further, in its capacity as conservator or receiver, FHFA has the right to transfer or sell any asset or liability of FNMA or FHLMC without any approval, assignment or consent. Although FHFA has stated that it has no present intention to do so, if FHFA, as conservator or receiver, were to transfer any such guaranty obligation to another party, holders of FNMA or FHLMC mortgage-backed securities would have to rely on that party for satisfaction of the guaranty obligation and would be exposed to the credit risk of that party.

In addition, certain rights provided to holders of mortgage-backed securities issued by FNMA and FHLMC under the operative documents related to such securities may not be enforced against FHFA, or enforcement of such rights may be delayed, during the conservatorship or any future receivership. The operative documents for FNMA and FHLMC mortgage-backed securities may provide (or with respect to securities issued prior to the date of the appointment of the conservator may have provided) that upon the occurrence of an event of default on the part of FNMA or FHLMC, in its capacity as guarantor, which includes the appointment of a conservator or receiver, holders of such mortgage-backed securities have the right to replace FNMA or FHLMC as trustee if the requisite percentage of mortgage-backed securities holders consent. The Reform Act prevents mortgage-backed security holders from enforcing such rights if the event of default arises solely because a conservator or receiver has been appointed. The Reform Act also provides that no person may exercise any right or power to terminate, accelerate or declare an event of default under certain contracts to which FNMA or FHLMC is a party, or obtain possession of or exercise control over any property of FNMA or FHLMC, or affect any contractual rights of FNMA or FHLMC, without the approval of FHFA, as conservator or receiver, for a period of 45 or 90 days following the appointment of FHFA as conservator or receiver, respectively.

In addition, in a February 2011 report to Congress from the Treasury Department and the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Obama administration provided a plan to reform America's housing finance market. The plan would reduce the role of and eventually eliminate FNMA and FHLMC. Notably, the plan does not propose similar significant changes to GNMA, which guarantees payments on mortgage-related securities backed by federally insured or guaranteed loans such as those issued by the Federal Housing Association or guaranteed by the Department of Veterans Affairs. The report also identified three proposals for Congress and the administration to consider for the long-term structure of the housing finance markets after the elimination of FNMA and FHLMC, including implementing: (i) a privatized system of housing finance that limits government insurance to very limited groups of creditworthy low- and moderate-income borrowers; (ii) a privatized system with a government backstop mechanism that would allow the government to insure a larger share of the housing finance market during a future housing crisis; and (iii) a privatized system where the government would offer reinsurance to holders of certain highly-rated mortgage-related securities insured by private insurers and would pay out under the reinsurance arrangements only if the private mortgage insurers were insolvent.

***Privately Issued Mortgage-Related Securities*:** Commercial banks, savings and loan institutions, private mortgage insurance companies, mortgage bankers and other secondary market issuers also create pass-through pools of conventional residential mortgage loans. Such issuers may be the originators and/or servicers of the underlying mortgage loans as well as the guarantors of the mortgage-related securities. Pools created by such non-governmental issuers generally offer a higher rate of interest than government and government-related pools because there are no direct or indirect government or agency guarantees of payments in the former pools.

However, timely payment of interest and principal of these pools may be supported by various forms of insurance or guarantees, including individual loan, title, pool and hazard insurance and letters of credit, which may be issued by governmental entities or private insurers. Such insurance and guarantees and the creditworthiness of the issuers thereof will be considered in determining whether a mortgage-related security meets the Trust's investment quality standards. There can be no assurance that the private insurers or guarantors can meet their obligations under the insurance policies or guarantee arrangements. The Fund may buy mortgage-related securities without insurance or guarantees if, through an examination of the loan experience and practices of the originators/servicers and poolers, the

Advisor determines that the securities meet the Trust's quality standards.

Securities issued by certain private organizations may not be readily marketable. The Fund will not purchase mortgage-related securities or any other assets which in the opinion of the Advisor are illiquid if, as a result, more than 15% of the value of the Fund's net assets will be illiquid.

Privately issued mortgage-related securities are not subject to the same underwriting requirements for the underlying mortgages that are applicable to those mortgage-related securities that have a government or government-sponsored entity guarantee. As a result, the mortgage loans underlying privately issued mortgage-related securities may, and frequently do, have less favorable collateral, credit risk or other underwriting characteristics than government or government-sponsored mortgage-related securities and have wider variances in a number of terms including interest rate, term, size, purpose and borrower characteristics. Mortgage pools underlying privately issued mortgage-related securities more frequently include second mortgages, high loan-to-value ratio mortgages and manufactured housing loans, in addition to commercial mortgages and other types of mortgages where a government or government sponsored entity guarantee is not available. The coupon rates and maturities of the underlying mortgage loans in a privately- issued mortgage-related securities pool may vary to a greater extent than those included in a government guaranteed pool, and the pool may include subprime mortgage loans. Subprime loans are loans made to borrowers with weakened credit histories or with a lower capacity to make timely payments on their loans. For these reasons, the loans underlying these securities have had in many cases higher default rates than those loans that meet government underwriting requirements.

The risk of non-payment is greater for mortgage-related securities that are backed by loans that were originated under weak underwriting standards, including loans made to borrowers with limited means to make repayment. A level of risk exists for all loans, although, historically, the poorest performing loans have been those classified as subprime. Other types of privately issued mortgage-related securities, such as those classified as pay-option adjustable rate or Alt-A have also performed poorly. Even loans classified as prime have experienced higher levels of delinquencies and defaults. The substantial decline in real property values across the U.S. has exacerbated the level of losses that investors in privately issued mortgage-related securities have experienced. It is not certain when these trends may reverse. Market factors that may adversely affect mortgage loan repayment include adverse economic conditions, unemployment, a decline in the value of real property, or an increase in interest rates.

Privately issued mortgage-related securities are not traded on an exchange and there may be a limited market for the securities, especially when there is a perceived weakness in the mortgage and real estate market sectors. Without an active trading market, mortgage-related securities held in the Fund's portfolio may be particularly difficult to value because of the complexities involved in assessing the value of the underlying mortgage loans.

The Fund may purchase privately issued mortgage-related securities that are originated, packaged and serviced by third party entities. It is possible these third parties could have interests that are in conflict with the holders of mortgage-related securities, and such holders (such as the Fund) could have rights against the third parties or their affiliates. For example, if a loan originator, servicer or its affiliates engaged in negligence or willful misconduct in carrying out its duties, then a holder of the mortgage-related security could seek recourse against the originator/servicer or its affiliates, as applicable. Also, as a loan originator/servicer, the originator/servicer or its affiliates may make certain representations and warranties regarding the quality of the mortgages and properties underlying a mortgage-related security. If one or more of those representations or warranties is false, then the holders of the mortgage-related securities (such as the Fund) could trigger an obligation of the originator/servicer or its affiliates, as applicable, to repurchase the mortgages from the issuing trust. Notwithstanding the foregoing, many of the third parties that are legally bound by trust and other documents have failed to perform their respective duties, as stipulated in such trust and other documents, and investors have had limited success in enforcing terms.

Mortgage-related securities that are issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities, are not subject to the Fund's industry concentration restrictions, set forth below under "Investment Limitations," by virtue of the exclusion from that test available to all U.S. Government securities. In the case of privately issued mortgage-related securities, the Fund takes the position that mortgage-related securities do not represent interests in any particular "industry" or group of industries. Therefore, the Fund may invest more or less than 25% of its total assets in privately issued mortgage-related securities. The assets underlying such securities may be represented by a portfolio of residential or commercial mortgages (including both whole mortgage loans and mortgage participation interests that may be senior or junior in terms of priority of repayment) or portfolios of mortgage pass-through securities issued or guaranteed by GNMA, FNMA or FHLMC. Mortgage loans underlying a mortgage-related security may in turn be insured or guaranteed by the FHA or the VA. In the case of privately issued mortgage- related securities whose underlying assets are neither U.S. Government securities nor U.S. Government-insured mortgages, to the extent that real properties securing such assets may be located in the same geographical region, the security may be subject to a greater risk of default than other comparable securities in the event of adverse economic, political or business developments that may affect such region and, ultimately, the ability of residential homeowners to make payments of principal and interest on the underlying mortgages.

Collateralized Mortgage Obligations (“CMOs”): A CMO is a debt obligation of a legal entity that is collateralized by mortgages and divided into classes. Similar to a bond, interest and prepaid principal is paid, in most cases, on a monthly basis. CMOs may be collateralized by whole mortgage loans or private mortgage bonds, but are more typically collateralized by portfolios of mortgage pass-through securities guaranteed by GNMA, FHLMC, or FNMA, and their income streams.

CMOs are structured into multiple classes, often referred to as “tranches,” with each class bearing a different stated maturity and entitled to a different schedule for payments of principal and interest, including pre-payments. Actual maturity and average life will depend upon the pre-payment experience of the collateral. In the case of certain CMOs (known as “sequential pay” CMOs), payments of principal received from the pool of underlying mortgages, including pre-payments, are applied to the classes of CMOs in the order of their respective final distribution dates.

Thus, no payment of principal will be made to any class of sequential pay CMOs until all other classes having an earlier final distribution date have been paid in full.

In a typical CMO transaction, a corporation (“issuer”) issues multiple series (*e.g.*, A, B, C, Z) of CMO bonds (“Bonds”). Proceeds of the Bond offering are used to purchase mortgages or mortgage pass-through certificates (“Collateral”). The Collateral is pledged to a third party trustee as security for the Bonds. Principal and interest payments from the Collateral are used to pay principal on the Bonds in the order A, B, C, Z. The Series A, B, and C Bonds all bear current interest. Interest on the Series Z Bond is accrued and added to principal and a like amount is paid as principal on the Series A, B, or C Bond currently being paid off. When the Series A, B, and C Bonds are paid in full, interest and principal on the Series Z Bond begins to be paid currently. CMOs may be less liquid and may exhibit greater price volatility than other types of mortgage-backed or asset- backed securities.

As CMOs have evolved, some classes of CMO bonds have become more common. For example, the Fund may invest in parallel-pay and planned amortization class (“PAC”) CMOs and multi-class pass through certificates. Parallel-pay CMOs and multi-class pass-through certificates are structured to provide payments of principal on each payment date to more than one class. These simultaneous payments are taken into account in calculating the stated maturity date or final distribution date of each class, which, as with other CMO and multi-class pass-through structures, must be retired by its stated maturity date or final distribution date but may be retired earlier. PACs generally require payments of a specified amount of principal on each payment date. PACs are parallel-pay CMOs with the required principal amount on such securities having the highest priority after interest has been paid to all classes. Any CMO or multi-class pass through structure that includes PAC securities must also have support tranches—known as support bonds, companion bonds or non-PAC bonds—which lend or absorb principal cash flows to allow the PAC securities to maintain their stated maturities and final distribution dates within a range of actual prepayment experience. These support tranches are subject to a higher level of maturity risk compared to other mortgage-related securities, and usually provide a higher yield to compensate investors. If principal cash flows are received in amounts outside a pre-determined range such that the support bonds cannot lend or absorb sufficient cash flows to the PAC securities as intended, the PAC securities are subject to heightened maturity risk.

***Commercial Mortgage-Backed Securities*:** Commercial mortgage-backed securities include securities that reflect an interest in, and are secured by, mortgage loans on commercial real property. Many of the risks of investing in commercial mortgage-backed securities reflect the risks of investing in the real estate securing the underlying mortgage loans. These risks reflect the effects of local and other economic conditions on real estate markets, the ability of tenants to make loan payments, and the ability of a property to attract and retain tenants. Commercial mortgage-backed securities may be less liquid and exhibit greater price volatility than other types of mortgage- or asset- backed securities.

***Other Mortgage-Related Securities*:** Other mortgage-related securities include securities other than those described above that directly or indirectly represent a participation in, or are secured by and payable from, mortgage loans on real property, including mortgage dollar rolls, CMO residuals or stripped mortgage-backed securities ("SMBS"). Other mortgage-related securities may be equity or debt securities issued by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, homebuilders, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks, partnerships, trusts and special purpose entities of the foregoing.

***CMO Residuals*:** CMO residuals are mortgage securities issued by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans, including savings and loan associations, homebuilders, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks and special purpose entities of the foregoing.

The cash flow generated by the mortgage assets underlying a series of CMOs is applied first to make required payments of principal and interest on the CMOs and second to pay the related administrative expenses and any management fee of the issuer. The residual in a CMO structure generally represents the interest in any excess cash flow remaining after making the foregoing payments. Each payment of such excess cash flow to a holder of the related CMO residual represents income and/or a return of capital. The amount of residual cash flow resulting from a CMO will depend on, among other things, the characteristics of the mortgage assets, the coupon rate of each class of CMO, prevailing interest rates, the amount of administrative expenses and the pre-payment experience on the mortgage assets. In particular, the yield to maturity on CMO residuals is extremely sensitive to pre-payments on the related underlying mortgage assets, in the same manner as an interest-only ("IO") class of stripped mortgage-backed securities. See "Other Mortgage-Related Securities—Stripped Mortgage-Backed Securities." In addition, if a series of a CMO includes a class that bears interest at an adjustable rate, the yield to maturity on the related CMO residual will also be extremely sensitive to changes in the level of the index upon which interest rate adjustments are based. As described below with respect to stripped mortgage-backed securities, in certain circumstances the Fund may fail to recoup fully its initial investment in a CMO residual.

CMO residuals are generally purchased and sold by institutional investors through several investment banking firms acting as brokers or dealers. Transactions in CMO residuals are generally completed only after careful review of the characteristics of the securities in question. In addition, CMO residuals may, or pursuant to an exemption therefrom, may not have been registered under the 1933 Act. CMO residuals, whether or not registered under the 1933 Act, may be subject to certain restrictions on transferability, and may be deemed "illiquid" and subject to the Fund's limitations on investment in illiquid securities.

***Adjustable Rate Mortgage-Backed Securities*:** Adjustable rate mortgage-backed securities ("ARMBSs") have interest rates that reset at periodic intervals. Acquiring ARMBSs permits the Fund to participate in increases in prevailing current interest rates through periodic adjustments in the coupons of mortgages underlying the pool on which ARMBSs are based. Such ARMBSs generally have higher current yield and lower price fluctuations than is the case with more traditional fixed income debt securities of comparable rating and maturity. In addition, when prepayments of principal are made on the underlying mortgages during periods of rising interest rates, the Fund can reinvest the proceeds of such prepayments at rates higher than those at which they were previously invested.

Mortgages underlying most ARMBSs, however, have limits on the allowable annual or lifetime increases that can be made in the interest rate that the mortgagor pays. Therefore, if current interest rates rise above such limits over the period of the limitation, the Fund, when holding an ARMBS, does not benefit from further increases in interest rates. Moreover, when interest rates are in excess of coupon rates (*i.e.*, the rates being paid by mortgagors) of the mortgages, ARMBSs behave more like fixed income securities and less like adjustable rate securities and are subject to the risks associated with fixed income securities. In addition, during periods of rising interest rates, increases in the coupon rate of adjustable rate mortgages generally lag current market interest rates slightly, thereby creating the potential for capital depreciation on such securities.

***Stripped Mortgage-Backed Securities*:** SMBS are derivative multi-class mortgage securities. SMBS may be issued by agencies or instrumentalities of the U.S. Government, or by private originators of, or investors in, mortgage loans,

including savings and loan associations, mortgage banks, commercial banks, investment banks and special purpose entities of the foregoing. SMBS are usually structured with two classes that receive different proportions of the interest and principal distributions on a pool of mortgage assets. A common type of SMBS will have one class receiving some of the interest and most of the principal from the mortgage assets, while the other class will receive most of the interest and the remainder of the principal. In the most extreme case, one class will receive all of the interest (the "IO" class), while the other class will receive all of the principal (the principal-only or "PO" class). The yield to maturity on an IO class is extremely sensitive to the rate of principal payments (including pre- payments) on the related underlying mortgage assets, and a rapid rate of principal payments may have a material adverse effect on the Fund's yield to maturity from these securities. If the underlying mortgage assets experience greater than anticipated pre-payments of principal, the Fund may fail to recoup some or all of its initial investment in these securities even if the security is in one of the highest rating categories.

***Asset-Backed Securities*:** Asset-backed securities ("ABS") are bonds backed by pools of loans or other receivables. ABS are created from many types of assets, including auto loans, credit card receivables, home equity loans, and student loans. ABS are issued through special purpose vehicles that are bankruptcy remote from the issuer of the collateral. The credit quality of an ABS transaction depends on the performance of the underlying assets. To protect ABS investors from the possibility that some borrowers could miss payments or even default on their loans, ABS include various forms of credit enhancement. Some ABS, particularly home equity loan transactions, are subject to interest-rate risk and prepayment risk. A change in interest rates can affect the pace of payments on the underlying loans, which in turn, affects total return on the securities. ABS also carry credit or default risk. If many borrowers on the underlying loans default, losses could exceed the credit enhancement level and result in losses to investors in an ABS transaction. Finally, ABS have structure risk due to a unique characteristic known as early amortization, or early payout, risk. Built into the structure of most ABS are triggers for early payout, designed to protect investors from losses. These triggers are unique to each transaction and can include: a big rise in defaults on the underlying loans, a sharp drop in the credit enhancement level, or even the bankruptcy of the originator. Once early amortization begins, all incoming loan payments (after expenses are paid) are used to pay investors as quickly as possible based upon a predetermined priority of payment.

Consistent with its investment objectives and policies, the Fund also may invest in other types of asset-backed securities.

Below-Investment Grade Securities. Subject to the limitations set forth in the Prospectus, each Fund may invest in "below-investment grade" or "high yield" fixed income securities commonly known to investors as "high yield bonds" or "junk bonds." High yield bonds are issued by a company whose credit rating (based on an NRSRO) evaluation of the likelihood of repayment) necessitates offering a higher coupon and yield on its issues when selling them to investors who may otherwise be hesitant in purchasing the debt of such a company. While generally providing greater income and opportunity for gain, below-investment grade debt securities are generally subject to greater risks than fixed income securities which have higher credit ratings, including a higher risk of default, and their yields will fluctuate over time. High yield bonds generally will be in the lower rating categories of NRSROs (rated "Ba" or lower by Moody's or "BB" or lower by S&P and Fitch or will be unrated. The credit rating of a high yield bond does not necessarily address its market value risk, and ratings may from time to time change, positively or negatively, to reflect developments regarding the issuer's financial condition. High yield bonds are considered to be speculative with respect to the capacity of the issuer to timely repay principal and pay interest or dividends in accordance with the terms of the obligation and may have more credit risk than higher rated securities.

While the market values of high yield bonds tend to react less to fluctuations in interest rates than do those of higher rated securities, the values of high yield bonds often reflect individual corporate developments and have a high sensitivity to economic changes to a greater extent than do higher rated securities. Issuers of high yield bonds are often in the growth stage of their development and/or involved in a reorganization or takeover. The companies are often highly leveraged (have a significant amount of debt relative to shareholders' equity) and may not have available to them more traditional financing methods, thereby increasing the risk associated with acquiring these types of securities. In some cases, obligations with respect to high yield bonds are subordinated to the prior repayment of senior indebtedness, which will potentially limit the Fund's ability to fully recover principal or to receive interest payments when senior securities are in default. Thus, investors in high yield bonds have a lower degree of protection with respect to principal and interest payments than do investors in higher rated securities.

During an economic downturn, a substantial period of rising interest rates or a recession, highly leveraged issuers of high yield bonds may experience financial distress possibly resulting in insufficient revenues to meet their principal and interest payment obligations, to meet projected business goals and to obtain additional financing. An economic downturn could also disrupt the market for lower-rated securities and adversely affect the value of outstanding securities, the Fund's NAV and the ability of the issuers to repay principal and interest. If the issuer of a security held by the Fund has defaulted, the Fund may not receive full interest and principal payments due to it and could incur additional expenses if it chose to seek recovery of its investment.

The secondary markets for high yield bonds are not as liquid as the secondary markets for higher rated securities. The secondary markets for high yield bonds are concentrated in relatively few market makers and participants in the markets are mostly institutional investors, including insurance companies, banks, other financial institutions and mutual funds. In addition, the trading volume for high yield bonds is generally lower than that for higher rated securities and the secondary markets could contract under adverse market or economic conditions independent of any

specific adverse changes in the condition of a particular issuer. Under certain economic and/or market conditions, the Fund may have difficulty disposing of certain high yield bonds due to the limited number of investors in that sector of the market. An illiquid secondary market may adversely affect the market price of the high yield security, which may result in increased difficulty selling the particular issue and obtaining accurate market quotations on the issue when valuing the Fund's assets. Market quotations on high yield bonds are available only from a limited number of dealers, and such quotations may not be the actual prices available for a purchase or sale.

The high yield markets may react strongly to adverse news about an issuer or the economy, or to the perception or expectation of adverse news, whether or not it is based on fundamental analysis. Additionally, prices for high yield bonds may be affected by legislative and regulatory developments. These developments could adversely affect the Fund's NAV and investment practices, the secondary market for high yield bonds, the financial condition of issuers of these securities and the value and liquidity of outstanding high yield bonds, especially in a thinly traded market. For example, Federal legislation requiring the divestiture by federally insured savings and loan associations of their investments in high yield bonds and limiting the deductibility of interest by certain corporate issuers of high yield bonds adversely affected the market in the past.

When the secondary market for high yield bonds becomes more illiquid, or in the absence of readily available market quotations for such securities, the relative lack of reliable objective data makes it more difficult to value the Fund's securities and judgment plays a more important role in determining such valuations. Increased illiquidity in the junk bond market, in combination with the relative youth and growth of the market for such securities, also may affect the ability of the Fund to dispose of such securities at a desirable price. Additionally, if the secondary markets for high yield bonds contract due to adverse economic conditions or for other reasons, some of the Fund's liquid securities may become illiquid and the proportion of the Fund's assets invested in illiquid securities may significantly increase.

The rating assigned by a rating agency evaluates the safety of a below-investment grade security's principal and interest payments but does not address market value risk. Because such ratings of NRSROs may not always reflect current conditions and events, in addition to using NRSROs and other sources, the Advisor performs its own analysis of the issuers whose below-investment grade securities are held by the Fund. Because of this, the Fund's performance may depend more on the Advisor's own credit analysis than in the case of mutual funds investing in higher-rated securities. For a description of these ratings, see "Appendix A - Description of Securities Ratings."

In selecting below-investment grade securities, the Advisor considers factors such as those relating to the creditworthiness of issuers, the ratings and performance of the securities, the protections afforded the securities and the diversity of the Fund. The Advisor continuously monitors the issuers of below-investment grade securities held by the Fund for their ability to make required principal and interest payments, as well as in an effort to control the liquidity of the Fund so that it can meet redemption requests. If a security's rating is reduced below the minimum credit rating that is permitted for the Fund, the Advisor will consider whether the Fund should continue to hold the security.

In the event that the Fund investing in high yield bonds experiences an unexpected level of net redemptions, the Fund could be forced to sell its holdings without regard to the investment merits, thereby decreasing the assets upon which the Fund's rate of return is based.

The costs attributable to investing in the high yield markets are usually higher for several reasons, such as higher investment research costs and higher commission costs.

Participation Interests. Each Fund may invest in participation interests in fixed income securities. A participation interest provides the certificate holder with a specified interest in an issue of fixed income securities.

Some participation interests give the holders differing interests in the underlying securities, depending upon the type or class of certificate purchased. For example, coupon strip certificates give the holder the right to receive a specific portion of interest payments on the underlying securities; principal strip certificates give the holder the right to receive principal payments and the portion of interest not payable to coupon strip certificate holders. Holders of certificates of participation in interest payments may be entitled to receive a fixed rate of interest, a variable rate that is periodically reset to reflect the current market rate or an auction rate that is periodically reset at auction. Asset- backed residuals represent interests in any excess cash flow remaining after required payments of principal and interest have been made.

More complex participation interests involve special risk considerations. Since these instruments have only recently been developed, there can be no assurance that any market will develop or be maintained for the instruments. Generally, the fixed income securities that are deposited in trust for the holders of these interests are the sole source of payments on the interests; holders cannot look to the sponsor or trustee of the trust or to the issuers of the securities held in trust or to any of their affiliates for payment.

Participation interests purchased at a discount may experience price volatility. Certain types of interests are sensitive to fluctuations in market interest rates and to prepayments on the underlying securities. A rapid rate of prepayment can result in the failure to recover the holder's initial investment.

The extent to which the yield to maturity of a participation interest is sensitive to prepayments depends, in part, upon whether the interest was purchased at a discount or premium, and if so, the size of that discount or premium. Generally, if a participation interest is purchased at a premium and principal distributions occur at a rate faster than that anticipated at the time of purchase, the holder's actual yield to maturity will be lower than that assumed at the time of purchase. Conversely, if a participation interest is purchased at a discount and principal distributions occur at a rate faster than that assumed at the time of purchase, the investor's actual yield to maturity will be higher than that assumed at the time of purchase.

Participation interests in pools of fixed income securities backed by certain types of debt obligations involve special risk considerations. The issuers of securities backed by automobile and truck receivables typically file financing statements evidencing security interests in the receivables, and the servicers of those obligations take and retain custody of the obligations. If the servicers, in contravention of their duty to the holders of the securities backed by the receivables, were to sell the obligations, the third party purchasers could acquire an interest superior to the interest of the security holders. Also, most states require that a security interest in a vehicle must be noted on the certificate of title and the certificate of title may not be amended to reflect the assignment of the lender's security interest. Therefore, the recovery of the collateral in some cases may not be available to support payments on the securities. Securities backed by credit card receivables are generally unsecured, and both Federal and state consumer protection laws may allow set-offs against certain amounts owed.

Preferred Stock. Each Fund may invest in preferred stocks. Preferred stock has a preference over common stock in liquidation (and generally dividends as well) but is subordinated to the liabilities of the issuer in all respects. As a general rule, the market value of preferred stock with a fixed dividend rate and no conversion element varies inversely with interest rates and perceived credit risk, while the market price of convertible preferred stock generally also reflects some element of conversion value. Because preferred stock is junior to debt securities and other obligations of the issuer, deterioration in the credit quality of the issuer will cause greater changes in the value of a preferred stock than in a more senior debt security with similar stated yield characteristics. Unlike interest payments on debt securities, preferred stock dividends are payable only if declared by the issuer's board of directors. Preferred stock also may be subject to optional or mandatory redemption provisions.

Real Estate Securities and Related Derivatives. Each Fund may gain exposure to the real estate sector by investing in real estate-linked derivatives, real estate investment trusts ("REITs") and common, preferred and convertible securities of issuers in real estate-related industries. Each of these types of investments are subject to risks similar to those associated with direct ownership of real estate, including loss to casualty or condemnation, increases in property taxes and operating expenses, zoning law amendments, changes in interest rates, overbuilding and increased competition, variations in market value and possible environmental liabilities. Each Fund may also invest in rights or warrants to purchase income-producing common and preferred shares of issuers in real estate-related industries. It is anticipated that substantially all of the equity securities of issuers in real estate- related industries in which the Fund intends to invest will be traded on a national securities exchange or in the over- the-counter market.

REITs are pooled investment vehicles that own and typically operate income-producing real estate. If a REIT meets certain requirements, including distributing to shareholders substantially all of its taxable income (other than net capital gains), then it is not taxed on the income distributed to shareholders. REITs are subject to management fees and other expenses, and so the Fund, when investing in REITs, will bear its proportionate share of the costs of the REITs' operations.

There are three general categories of REITs: Equity REITs, Mortgage REITs and Hybrid REITs. Equity REITs invest primarily in direct fee ownership or leasehold ownership of real property; they derive most of their income from rents. Mortgage REITs invest mostly in mortgages on real estate, which may secure construction, development or long- term loans, and the main source of their income is mortgage interest payments. Hybrid REITs hold both ownership and mortgage interests in real estate.

Along with the risks common to different types of real estate-related securities, REITs, no matter the type, involve additional risk factors. These include poor performance by the REIT's manager, changes to the tax laws and failure by the REIT to qualify for tax-free distribution of income or exemption under the 1940 Act. Furthermore, REITs are not diversified and are heavily dependent on cash flow. REITs can be listed and traded on national securities exchanges or can be traded privately between individual owners.

Repurchase Agreements. Each Fund may invest in repurchase agreements. A repurchase agreement is a transaction in which the Fund purchases a security from a bank or recognized securities dealer and simultaneously commits to resell that security to a bank or dealer at an agreed upon date and price reflecting a market rate of interest, unrelated to the coupon rate or the maturity of the purchased security. While it is not possible to eliminate all risks from these transactions (particularly the possibility of a decline in the market value of the underlying securities, as well as delays and costs to the Fund if the other party to the repurchase agreement defaults), it is the policy of the Fund to limit repurchase transactions to primary dealers and banks whose creditworthiness has been reviewed and found satisfactory by the Advisor. Repurchase agreements maturing in more than seven days are considered illiquid for purposes of the Fund's investment limitations.

Restricted Securities. Restricted securities are securities that may not be sold to the public without registration under the 1933 Act or an exemption from registration. Each Fund is subject to an investment limitation on the purchase of illiquid securities. Restricted securities, including securities eligible for re-sale pursuant to Rule 144A under the 1933 Act, that are determined to be liquid are not subject to this limitation. This determination is to be made by the Advisor pursuant to guidelines adopted by the Board of Trustees. Under these guidelines, the Advisor will consider the frequency of trades and quotes for the security, the number of dealers in, and potential purchasers for, the securities, dealer undertakings to make a market in the security and the nature of the security and of the marketplace trades. In purchasing such restricted securities, each Fund intends to purchase securities that are exempt from registration under Rule 144A.

Reverse Repurchase Agreements. Each Fund may enter into reverse repurchase agreements in accordance with its investment restrictions. Pursuant to such agreements, the Fund would sell portfolio securities to financial institutions such as banks and broker-dealers, and agree to repurchase them at a mutually agreed-upon date and price. At the time the Fund enters into a reverse repurchase agreement, it will place in a segregated custodial account asset such as U.S. Government securities or other liquid, high grade debt securities, generally rated in one of the three highest ratings categories, consistent with the Fund's investment restrictions having a value at least equal to the repurchase price (including accrued interest) and will subsequently monitor the account to ensure that such equivalent value is maintained. Reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the market value of the securities sold by the Fund may decline below the price at which it is obligated to repurchase the securities.

Reverse repurchase agreements are considered to be borrowings by the Fund under the 1940 Act. The Fund will not engage in reverse repurchase transactions if such transactions, combined with any other borrowings, exceed 33- 1/3% of its assets.

Securities Lending. For the purpose of achieving income, each Fund may lend its portfolio securities to brokers, dealers and other financial institutions, provided: (i) the loan is secured continuously by collateral consisting of U.S. Government securities, cash or cash equivalents (negotiable certificates of deposits, bankers' acceptances or letters of credit) maintained on a daily mark-to-market basis in an amount at least equal to the current market value of the securities loaned; (ii) the Fund may at any time call the loan and obtain the return of the securities loaned; (iii) the Fund will receive any interest or dividends paid on the loaned securities; and (iv) the aggregate market value of securities loaned will not at any time exceed 33-1/3% of the total assets of the Fund. The Fund's performance will continue to reflect the receipt of either interest through investment of cash collateral by the Fund in permissible investments, or a fee, if the collateral is U.S. Government securities. Securities lending involves the risk of loss of rights in the collateral or delay in recovery of the collateral should the borrower fail to return the securities loaned or become insolvent. The Fund may pay lending fees to the party arranging the loan.

Short Sales. Each Fund may make short sales of securities as part of its overall portfolio management strategy involving the use of derivative instruments, to gain exposure to or adjust exposure to various market sectors, and to offset potential declines in long positions in similar securities or otherwise take advantage of market conditions. A short sale is a transaction in which the Fund sells a security it does not own in anticipation that the market price of that security will decline.

When the Fund makes a short sale, it must borrow the security sold short and deliver it to the broker-dealer through which it made the short sale as collateral for its obligation to deliver the security upon conclusion of the sale. The Fund may have to pay a fee to borrow particular securities and is often obligated to pay over any accrued interest and dividends on such borrowed securities.

If the price of the security sold short increases between the time of the short sale and the time that the Fund replaces the borrowed security, the Fund will incur a loss; conversely, if the price declines, the Fund will realize a capital gain. Any gain will be decreased, and any loss increased, by the transaction costs described above. The successful use of short selling may be adversely affected by imperfect correlation between movements in the price of the security sold short and the securities being hedged.

To the extent that the Fund engages in short sales, it will provide collateral to the broker-dealer and (except in the case of short sales "against the box") will maintain additional asset coverage in the form of segregated or "earmarked" assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees. The Fund does not intend to enter into short sales (other than those "against the box") if immediately after such sale the aggregate of the value of all collateral plus the amount of the segregated or "earmarked" assets exceeds one-third of the value of its assets. This percentage may be varied by action of the Trustees. A short sale is "against the box" to the extent that the Fund contemporaneously owns, or has the right to obtain at no added cost, securities identical to those sold short. The Fund will engage in short selling to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act and rules and interpretations thereunder.

U.S. Government Obligations. Each Fund may invest in debt securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities. Although all obligations of such agencies and instrumentalities are not direct obligations of the U.S. Treasury, the U.S. Government generally directly or indirectly backs payment of the interest and principal on these obligations. This support can range from securities supported by the full faith and credit of the United States (for example, GNMA securities) to securities that are supported solely or primarily by the creditworthiness of the issuer, such as securities of the FNMA, the FHLMC, the Tennessee Valley Authority, Federal Farm Credit Banks and Federal Home Loan Banks. In the case of obligations not backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, the Fund must look principally to the agency or instrumentality issuing or guaranteeing the obligation for ultimate repayment and may not be able to assert a claim against the United States itself in the event the agency or instrumentality does not meet its commitments. Whether backed by full faith and credit of the U.S. Treasury or not, U.S. Government obligations are not guaranteed against price movements due to fluctuating interest rates.

***Variable and Floating Rate Securities*.** Variable and floating rate securities provide for a periodic adjustment in the interest rate paid on the obligations. The terms of such obligations must provide that interest rates are adjusted periodically based upon an interest rate adjustment index as provided in the respective obligations. The adjustment intervals may be regular, and range from daily up to annually, or may be event based, such as based on a change in the prime rate.

Each Fund may invest in floating rate debt instruments ("floaters") and engage in credit spread trades. The interest rate on a floater is a variable rate which is tied to another interest rate, such as a money-market index or Treasury bill rate. The interest rate on a floater resets periodically, typically every six months. While, because of the interest rate reset feature, floaters provide the Fund with a certain degree of protection against rises in interest rates, the Fund will participate in any declines in interest rates as well. A credit spread trade is an investment position relating to a difference in the prices or interest rates of two securities or currencies, where the value of the investment position is determined by movements in the difference between the prices or interest rates, as the case may be, of the respective securities or currencies.

The Fund may also invest in inverse floating rate debt instruments ("inverse floaters"). The interest rate on an inverse floater resets in the opposite direction from the market rate of interest to which the inverse floater is indexed. An inverse floating rate security may exhibit greater price volatility than a fixed rate obligation of similar credit quality. See "Mortgage-Related and Other Asset-Backed Securities" for a discussion of IOs and POs.

Rights Offerings and Warrants to Purchase Securities. Each Fund may participate in rights offerings and may purchase warrants, which are privileges issued by corporations enabling the owners to subscribe to and purchase a specified number of shares of the corporation at a specified price during a specified period of time.

Subscription rights normally have a short life span to expiration. The purchase of rights or warrants involves the risk that the Fund could lose the purchase value of a right or warrant if the right to subscribe to additional shares is not exercised prior to the rights' and warrants' expiration. Also, the purchase of rights and/or warrants involves the risk that the effective price paid for the right and/or warrant added to the subscription price of the related security may exceed the value of the subscribed security's market price such as when there is no movement in the level of the underlying security. Buying a warrant does not make the Fund a shareholder of the underlying stock. The warrant holder has no voting or dividend rights with respect to the underlying stock. A warrant does not carry any right to assets of the issuer, and for this reason investment in warrants may be more speculative than other equity-based investments.

When-Issued, Delayed Delivery and Forward Commitment Transactions. Each Fund may purchase or sell securities on a when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment basis. When such purchases are outstanding, the Fund will segregate or "earmark" until the settlement date assets determined to be liquid by the Advisor in accordance with procedures established by the Board of Trustees, in an amount sufficient to meet the purchase price. Typically, no income accrues on securities the Fund has committed to purchase prior to the time delivery of the securities is made, although the Fund may earn income on securities it has segregated or "earmarked."

When purchasing a security on a when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment basis, the Fund assumes the rights and risks of ownership of the security, including the risk of price and yield fluctuations, and takes such fluctuations into account when determining its NAV. Because the Fund is not required to pay for the security until the delivery date, these risks are in addition to the risks associated with the Fund's other investments. If the Fund remains substantially fully invested at a time when when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment purchases are outstanding, the purchases may result in a form of leverage.

When the Fund has sold a security on a when-issued, delayed delivery, or forward commitment basis, it does not participate in future gains or losses with respect to the security. If the other party to a transaction fails to deliver or pay for the securities, the Fund could miss a favorable price or yield opportunity or could suffer a loss. The Fund may dispose of or renegotiate a transaction after it is entered into, and may sell when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment securities before they are delivered, which may result in a capital gain or loss. There is no percentage limitation on the extent to which the Fund may purchase or sell securities on a when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment basis.

Zero Coupon Bonds. Each Fund may invest in zero coupon bonds of governmental or private issuers that generally pay no interest to their holders prior to maturity. Since zero coupon bonds do not make regular interest payments, they allow an issuer to avoid the need to generate cash to meet current interest payments and may involve greater credit risks than bonds paying interest currently. Tax laws requiring the distribution of accrued discount on the bonds, even though no cash equivalent thereto has been paid, may cause the Fund to liquidate investments in order to make the required distributions. The IRC requires that the Fund accrue interest into income on zero coupon bonds for each taxable year, even though no cash has been paid on the bonds, and generally requires the Fund to distribute such income (net of deductible expenses, if any) to avoid being subject to tax and to continue to maintain its status as a RIC under the IRC. Because no cash is generally received at the time of accrual, the Fund may be required to sell investments (even if such sales are not advantageous) to obtain sufficient cash to satisfy the federal tax distribution requirements applicable to the Fund under the IRC. See “Taxation of the Fund” below for additional information.

Temporary Defensive Positions. Each Fund may, without limit, invest in U.S. Government securities, commercial paper and other money market instruments, money market funds, cash or cash equivalents in response to adverse market conditions, as a temporary defensive position. The result of this action may be that the Fund will be unable to achieve its investment objective.

Investment Restrictions

Additional Fundamental Investment Policies

Except as noted with respect to any Fund, the Trust has adopted the following restrictions as additional fundamental policies of its Funds, which means that they may not be changed without the approval of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of that Fund. Under the 1940 Act, a "vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities" of the Trust or of a particular Fund means the affirmative vote of the lesser of (l) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of the Trust or of such Fund, or (2) 67% or more of the shares of the Trust or of such Fund present at a meeting of shareholders if more than 50% of the outstanding shares of the Trust or of such Fund are represented at the meeting in person or by proxy.

China Fund. The China Fund may not:

1. Hold 25% or more of its gross assets in any single industry.

2. Purchase any security (other than obligations of the U.S. government or its agencies or instrumentalities) if as a result of such purchase (i) as to 75% of the total assets (taken at their then current value), more than 5% of the total assets (taken at their then current value) would then be invested in the securities of a single issuer, (ii) as to the remaining 25% of the total assets (taken at their then current value), more than 10% of the total assets (taken at their then current value) would then be invested in the securities of a single issuer (except that the Fund may invest up to 25% of its total assets in obligations of the Taiwan government or its agencies or instrumentalities), (iii) more than 10% of the outstanding equity securities of any issuer (at the time of purchase) would be beneficially held by the Fund or (iv) 25% or more of the Fund's assets (taken at their then current value) would be invested in a single industry.

3. Purchase any security on margin, except such short-term credits as are necessary for the clearance of purchases or sales of securities.

4. Effect a short sale of any security, except in connection with an underwriting in which the Fund is a participant. e. Issue senior securities, except that the Fund may invest in currency forward contracts to hedge against currency fluctuations if Taiwan law is changed to so permit.

5. Borrow money within Taiwan, however, subject to the provisions of the 1940 Act, the Fund may borrow from financial institutions outside Taiwan for temporary purposes (that, is, the borrowing must be repaid within 60 days) in amounts not exceeding 5% (taken at the lower of cost or current value) of its total assets (excluding amount borrowed) and may also pledge assets to secure such borrowings).

6. Make loans to other persons (other than bank deposits or by investment in debt securities or entry into repurchase agreements), except that the Fund may lend its securities to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act, the rules or regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom, as such statutes, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.

7. Invest (i) in securities of Taiwan issuers the issuance of which has not been approved by or registered with the Taiwan SEC for offering to the public or (ii) in unregistered securities of U.S. issuers that must be registered before being publicly offered under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

8. Buy or sell real estate or real estate mortgage loans.

9. Apply the assets of the Fund to purchase beneficial certificates issued by the former manager in other funds managed by the former manager.

10. Underwrite the issue or sale of any securities.

11. Invest in securities issued by any person (except the Taiwan government) who beneficially owns more than 5% of, or takes any significant active role in the management of, the Fund's investment advisor.

The BDC Income Fund and Real Estate Income Fund. The Funds may not:

1. Borrow money, except to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act, including rules, regulations and any exemptive orders obtained thereunder.

2. Issue senior securities, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, including the rules, regulations and any exemptive orders obtained thereunder.

3. Make loans to other parties if, as a result, the aggregate value of such loans would exceed one-third of the Fund's total assets. For the purposes of this limitation, a Fund is not considered to make loans by entering into repurchase agreements, lending securities or acquiring any debt securities.

4. Underwrite securities of other issuers, except insofar as the Fund may be deemed an underwriter under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the ‘‘Securities Act’’), in connection with the disposition of its portfolio securities. A Fund may invest in restricted securities (those that must be registered under the Securities Act before they may be offered or sold to the public) to the extent permitted by the 1940 Act.

5. Purchase or sell real estate or interests in real estate. This limitation is not applicable to investments in securities that are secured by or represent interests in real estate. This limitation does not preclude the Fund from investing in mortgage-related securities, such as commercial mortgage-backed securities (‘‘CMBS’’). Nor does this limitation preclude the Fund from investing in companies engaged in the real estate business or that have a significant portion of their assets in real estate, including real estate investment trusts (‘‘REITs’’).

6. Purchase or sell commodities or commodity contracts, including commodity futures contracts, unless acquired as a result of ownership of securities or other investments, except that a Fund may invest in securities or other instruments backed by or linked to commodities, in companies that are engaged in a commodities business or have a significant portion of their assets in commodities or in commodity pools.

The Tactical Credit Fund. The Fund has adopted the investment limitations set forth below. Except with respect to the asset coverage requirement under Section 18(f)(1) of the 1940 Act with respect to borrowing, if any percentage restriction on investment or utilization of assets is adhered to at the time an investment is made, a later change in percentage resulting from a change in the market values of the Fund or its assets or redemptions of shares will not be considered a violation of the limitation. The asset coverage requirement under Section 18(f)(1) of the 1940 Act with respect to borrowings is an ongoing requirement. The following non-fundamental policies apply to the Fund and the Board of Trustees may change them without shareholder approval unless shareholder approval is required by the 1940 Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. The Fund will not:

1. Purchase securities of any one issuer if, as a result, more than 5% of the Fund’s total assets would be invested in securities of that issuer or the Fund would own more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of that issuer, except that (a) up to 25% of the Fund’s total assets may be invested without regard to this limitation; and (b) this limitation does not apply to securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies and instrumentalities (“U.S. Government obligations”) or to securities issued by other investment companies. Repurchase agreements fully collateralized by U.S. Government obligations will be treated as U.S. Government obligations.

2. Invest 25% or more of the value of the Fund’s assets in securities of issuers in any one industry or group of industries. This restriction does not apply to obligations issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities or to securities issued by other investment companies.

3. Issue senior securities or borrow money, except as permitted under the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, and then not in excess of 33-1/3% of the Fund’s total assets (including the amount of the senior securities issued but reduced by any liabilities not constituting senior securities) at the time of the issuance or borrowing, except that the Fund may borrow up to an additional 5% of its total assets (not including the amount borrowed) for temporary purposes such as clearance of portfolio transactions and share redemptions. For purposes of these restrictions, the purchase or sale of securities on a when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment basis, the purchase and sale of options and futures contracts and collateral arrangements with respect thereto are not deemed to be the issuance of a senior security, a borrowing or a pledge of assets.

4. Pledge, mortgage or hypothecate its assets except to secure indebtedness permitted to be incurred by the Fund. (For the purpose of this restriction, the deposit in escrow of securities in connection with the writing of put and call options, collateralized loans of securities by and collateral arrangements with respect to margin for future contracts

by the Fund are not deemed to be pledges or hypothecations).

5. Underwrite any issue of securities, except to the extent that the Fund may be considered to be acting as underwriter in connection with the disposition of any portfolio security.

6. Purchase or sell real estate or interests therein, although the Fund may purchase securities of issuers which engage in real estate operations and securities secured by real estate or interests therein, including real estate investment trusts.

7. Purchase or sell physical commodities, unless acquired as a result of owning securities or other instruments, but the Fund may purchase, sell or enter into financial options and futures, forward and spot currency contracts, swap transactions and other financial contracts or derivative instruments.

8. Make loans, except loans of portfolio securities or through repurchase agreements, provided that for purposes of this restriction, the acquisition of bonds, debentures, other debt securities or instruments, participations or other interests therein and investments in government obligations, commercial paper, certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances or similar instruments will not be considered the making of a loan.

When engaging in options, futures and forward currency contract strategies, the Fund will either: (1) earmark or set aside cash or liquid securities in a segregated account with the custodian in the prescribed amount; or (2) hold securities or other options or futures contracts whose values are expected to offset ("cover") its obligations thereunder. Securities, currencies or other options or futures contracts used for cover cannot be sold or closed out while the strategy is outstanding, unless they are replaced with similar assets.

The International Select Equity Fund. The Fund has adopted the investment limitations set forth below. Except with respect to the asset coverage requirement under Section 18(f)(1) of the 1940 Act with respect to borrowing, if any percentage restriction on investment or utilization of assets is adhered to at the time an investment is made, a later change in percentage resulting from a change in the market values of the Fund or its assets or redemptions of shares will not be considered a violation of the limitation. The asset coverage requirement under Section 18(f)(1) of the 1940 Act with respect to borrowings is an ongoing requirement. The following non-fundamental policies apply to the Fund and the Board of Trustees may change them without shareholder approval unless shareholder approval is required by the 1940 Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. The Fund will not:

1. Purchase securities of any one issuer if, as a result, more than 5% of the Fund's total assets would be invested in securities of that issuer or the Fund would own more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of that issuer, except that (a) up to 25% of the Fund's total assets may be invested without regard to this limitation; and (b) this limitation does not apply to securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies and instrumentalities ("U.S. Government obligations") or to securities issued by other investment companies. Repurchase agreements fully collateralized by U.S. Government obligations will be treated as U.S. Government obligations.
2. Invest 25% or more of the value of the Fund's assets in securities of issuers in any one industry or group of industries. This restriction does not apply to obligations issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities or to securities issued by other investment companies.
3. Issue senior securities or borrow money, except as permitted under the 1940 Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, and then not in excess of 33-1/3% of the Fund's total assets (including the amount of the senior securities issued but reduced by any liabilities not constituting senior securities) at the time of the issuance or borrowing, except that the Fund may borrow up to an additional 5% of its total assets (not including the amount borrowed) for temporary purposes such as clearance of portfolio transactions and share redemptions. For purposes of these restrictions, the purchase or sale of securities on a when issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment basis, the purchase and sale of options and futures contracts and collateral arrangements with respect thereto are not deemed to be the issuance of a senior security, a borrowing or a pledge of assets.
4. Pledge, mortgage or hypothecate its assets except to secure indebtedness permitted to be incurred by the Fund. (For the purpose of this restriction, the deposit in escrow of securities in connection with the writing of put and call options, collateralized loans of securities by and collateral arrangements with respect to margin for future contracts by the Fund are not deemed to be pledges or hypothecations).
5. Underwrite any issue of securities, except to the extent that the Fund may be considered to be acting as underwriter in connection with the disposition of any portfolio security.
6. Purchase or sell real estate or interests therein, although the Fund may purchase securities of issuers which engage in real estate operations and securities secured by real estate or interests therein, including real estate investment trusts.
7. Purchase or sell physical commodities, unless acquired as a result of owning securities or other instruments, but the Fund may purchase, sell or enter into financial options and futures, forward and spot currency contracts, swap transactions and other financial contracts or derivative instruments.
8.

Make loans, except loans of portfolio securities or through repurchase agreements, provided that for purposes of this restriction, the acquisition of bonds, debentures, other debt securities or instruments, participations or other interests therein and investments in government obligations, commercial paper, certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances or similar instruments will not be considered the making of a loan.

9. Engage in short sales of securities or maintain a short position, except that the Fund may (a) sell short "against the box" and (b) maintain short positions in connection with the use of financial options and futures, forward and spot currency contracts, swap transactions and other financial contracts or derivative instruments.

10. Purchase securities on margin except for the use of short-term credit necessary for the clearance of purchases and sales of portfolio securities, provided that the Fund may make initial and variation margin deposits in connection with permitted transactions in options and futures, forward and spot currency contracts, swap transactions and other financial contracts or derivative instruments.

When engaging in options, futures and forward currency contract strategies, the Fund will either: (1) earmark or set aside cash or liquid securities in a segregated account with the custodian in the prescribed amount; or (2) hold securities or other options or futures contracts whose values are expected to offset ("cover") its obligations thereunder. Securities, currencies or other options or futures contracts used for cover cannot be sold or closed out while the strategy is outstanding, unless they are replaced with similar assets.

Non-Fundamental Investment Policies

The BDC Income Fund and the Real Estate Income Fund have adopted the following restrictions as operating policies, which are not fundamental policies, and may be changed without shareholder approval in accordance with applicable regulations:

BDC Income Fund

1. 80% Investment Policy. The Fund has adopted a policy to invest at least 80% of its assets (defined as net assets plus the amount of any borrowings for investment purposes) in common stock and other equity securities of BDCs that are traded on one or more nationally recognized securities exchanges, as discussed in the Prospectus. Shareholders of the Fund will be provided with at least 60-days' prior notice of any change in the Fund's 80% policy. The notice will be provided in a separate written document containing the following, or a similar statement, in boldface type: ''Important Notice Regarding Change in Investment Policy.'' The statement will also appear on the envelope in which the notice is delivered, unless the notice is delivered separately from other communications to the shareholder.

Real Estate Income Fund

1. 80% Investment Policy. The Fund has adopted a policy to invest at least 80% of its assets (defined as net assets plus the amount of any borrowings for investment purposes) in real estate securities, including securities issued by REITs, as discussed in the Prospectus. Shareholders of the Fund will be provided with at least 60 days' prior notice of any change in the Funds' 80% policies. The Fund may invest up to 20% of its assets in foreign real estate. The notice will be provided in a separate written document containing the following, or a similar statement, in boldface type: ''Important Notice Regarding Change in Investment Policy.'' The statement will also appear on the envelope in which the notice is delivered, unless the notice is delivered separately from other communications to the

shareholder.

2. Oil, Gas, and Minerals. The Fund may invest in oil, gas or other mineral exploration programs, development programs or leases, except that the Funds may purchase securities of companies engaging in whole or in part in such activities.

3. Pledging, Mortaging or Hypothecation of Assets. The Fund may pledge, mortgage or hypothecate its assets except in connection with permitted borrowings.

Disclosure of Portfolio Holdings

The Funds provide a complete list of their holdings four times in each fiscal year, as of the end of each quarter. The lists also appear in the Funds' Semi-Annual and Annual Reports to shareholders. The Funds file the lists with the SEC on Form N-CSR (second and fourth quarters) and Form N-Q (first and third quarters). Shareholders may view the Funds' Forms N-CSR and N-Q on the SEC's website at sec.gov. Forms N-CSR and N-Q may also be reviewed and copied at the SEC's Public Reference Room in Washington, DC. Information regarding the operations of the Public Reference Room may be obtained by calling 202-942-8090 (direct) or 800- 732-0330 (general SEC number).

Occasionally, certain third parties—including the Funds' service providers, independent rating and ranking organizations, intermediaries that distribute the Funds' shares, institutional investors and others—request information about the Funds' portfolio holdings. The Funds' policy is to disclose portfolio holdings to third parties only if legally required to do so or when the Funds believe there is a legitimate business purpose for the Funds to disclose the information and the recipient is subject to a duty of confidentiality, including a duty not to use the information to engage in any trading of the Funds' holdings or Fund shares on the basis of nonpublic information. This duty of confidentiality may exist under law or may be imposed by contract. Confidentiality agreements must be in form and substance acceptable to the Funds' Chief Compliance Officer, who must approve any new disclosure arrangements in advance. In situations where the Funds' policies and procedures require a confidentiality agreement, persons and entities unwilling to execute an acceptable confidentiality agreement may only receive portfolio holdings information that has otherwise been publicly disclosed.

The Funds may provide, at any time, portfolio holdings information to their service providers, such as the Funds' investment manager, transfer agent, custodian/fund accounting agent, financial printer, pricing services, auditors, counsel, and proxy voting services, as well as to state, federal, and foreign regulators and government agencies, and as otherwise required by law or judicial process. Government entities and Fund service providers are generally subject to duties of confidentiality, including a duty not to trade on non-public information, imposed by law and/or contract.

From time to time, officers of the Funds or Shelton Capital Management may express their views orally or in writing on one or more of the Funds' portfolio securities or may state that the Funds have recently purchased or sold one or more securities. Such views and statements may be made to members of the press, shareholders in the Funds, persons considering investing in the Funds or representatives of such shareholders or potential shareholders, such as fiduciaries of a 401(k) plan or a trust and their advisers and rating and ranking organizations. The nature and content of the views and statements provided to each of these persons may differ. The securities subject to these views and statements may be ones that were purchased or sold since the Funds' most recent quarter-end and therefore may not be reflected on the list of the Funds' most recent quarter-end portfolio holdings disclosed on its website. Additionally, when purchasing and selling its securities through broker-dealers, requesting bids or offers on securities, obtaining price quotations on securities, as well as in connection with litigation involving the Funds' portfolio securities, the Funds may disclose one or more of their securities. The Funds have not entered into formal nondisclosure agreements in connection with these situations; however, the Funds would not continue to conduct business with a person who Shelton Capital Management believed was misusing the disclosed information.

Shelton Capital Management provides investment advice to clients other than the Funds that have investment objectives that may be substantially similar to those of the Funds. These clients also may have portfolios consisting of holdings substantially similar to those of the Funds and generally have access to current portfolio holding 24 information for their accounts. These clients do not owe Shelton Capital Management or the Funds a duty of confidentiality with respect to disclosure of their portfolio holdings.

Trustees and Officers

The Trustees of the Trust have the responsibility for the overall management of the Trust, including general supervision and review of the Funds' investment activities. The Trustees appoint the officers of the Trust who are responsible for administering the day-to-day operations of such Trust and its Funds. The affiliations of the officers and Trustees and their principal occupations for the past five years are listed below.

Qualifications of Independent Trustees

Individual Trustee qualifications are noted in the table below. In addition, the following characteristics are among those that were considered for each existing Trustee and will be considered for any Nominee Trustee.

- Outstanding skills in disciplines deemed by the Independent Trustees to be particularly relevant to the role of Independent Trustee and to the Funds, including legal, accounting, the financial industry and the investment industry.

- No conflicts which would interfere with qualifying as independent.

- Appropriate interpersonal skills to work effectively with other Independent Trustees.

- Understanding and appreciation of the important role occupied by Independent Trustees in the regulatory structure governing regulated investment companies.

- Diversity of background.

Name and Address	Year of Birth	Position and Offices with the Trust	Principal Occupation during the Past Five Years	Other Public Company or Investment Company Directorships	Other Relevant Experience
Independent Trustees					
Kevin T. Kogler 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710 Denver, CO 80265	1966	Trustee, since 2006	Director MicroBiz AM LLC, June 2015 to present; President & Founder of MicroBiz, LLC, 2012 to present; Principal, Robertson Piper Software Group, 2006 to 2012; Senior Vice President, Investment Banking, FBR Capital Markets, 2003 to 2006.	ETSpreads Trust; SCM Trust	Experience in investment banking and technology industry. M.B.A.
Stephen H. Sutro 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710 Denver, CO 80265	1969	Trustee, since 2006	Managing Partner, San Francisco, Duane Morris LLP (law firm), 2014 to present. Partner, Duane Morris LLP (law firm), 2003 to 2014.	ETSpreads Trust; SCM Trust	Service on Boards for nonprofit organizations. J.D.
Marco L. Quazzo	1962	Trustee, since 2014	Principal, Bartko Zankel Bunzel & Miller, March 2015 to present; Partner, Barg Coffin Lewis &	SCM Trust	Experience with risk management for mortgage banks,

1050 17th Street, Suite 1710 Denver, CO 80265			Trapp LLP (law firm), 2008 to March 2015.		investment banks, and real estate investment trusts, J.D.
Interested Trustee[1] Stephen C. Rogers 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710 Denver, CO 80265	1966	President, since 1999; Chairman of the Board & Trustee, since 1998	Portfolio Manager, Shelton Capital Management, 2003 to present; Chief Executive Officer, Shelton Capital Management, 1999 to present; Secretary 1999 to November 2012.	ETSpreads Trust; SCM Trust	
Officers Gregory T. Pusch 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710 Denver, CO 80265	1966	Chief Compliance Officer, since 2017; Secretary, since 2017	Global Head of Risk & Compliance, Matthews Asia 2015-2016; Head of Legal & Regulatory Compliance/CCO, HarbourVest Partners, 2012-2015; SVP, CCO, Pyramis Global Advisors, 2007-2011.	N/A	
William P. Mock 1050 17th Street,	1966	Treasurer, since 2010	Portfolio Manager, Shelton Capital Management, 2010 to present; Portfolio Manager, ETSpreads, 2007 to present; Head Trader.	N/A	

Suite
1710

Denver,

CO
80265

77

The Board met five times during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017. Currently, the Board has an Audit Committee. The responsibilities of the committee and its members are described below.

Board Leadership Structure and Standing Board Committees

Stephen C. Rogers currently serves as the chairman of the Board and has served in such capacity since 1999. Of the Board's four members, Stephen C. Rogers is the only member who is an "interested person" as that term is defined in the Investment Company Act. The remaining members are independent trustees. The independent trustees meet separately to consider a variety of matters that are scheduled to come before the Board and meet periodically with the Funds' Chief Compliance Officer and fund auditors. They are advised by independent legal counsel. No independent trustee may serve as an officer or employee of a fund. The Board has also established several committees, as described below. The Audit Committee is comprised solely of independent trustees. The Board believes that the current leadership structure, with independent trustees filling all but one position on the Board is appropriate and allows for independent oversight of the Funds.[1]

[1] Basis of Interestedness. Stephen C. Rogers is affiliated with Shelton Capital Management Capital Management, which is the investment advisor of Funds.

Audit Committee: The Board has an Audit Committee comprised only of the Independent Trustees (currently, Messrs. Quazzo, Kogler, and Sutro). The Audit Committee has the responsibility, among other things, to (1) recommend the selection of the Funds' independent auditors; (2) review and approve the scope of the independent auditors' audit activity; (3) review the financial statements which are the subject of the independent auditor's certifications; and (4) review with such independent auditors the adequacy of the Funds' basic accounting system and the effectiveness of the Funds' internal accounting controls. During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, there were five meetings of the Audit Committee.

Risk Oversight by the Board

As previously described, the Board oversees the management of the Funds and meets at least quarterly with management of Shelton Capital Management to review reports and receive information regarding Fund operations. Risk oversight relating to the Funds is one component of the Board's oversight and is undertaken in connection with the duties of the Board. As described in the previous section, the Board's committees assist the Board in overseeing various types of risks relating to the Funds. The Board receives regular reports from each committee regarding the committee's areas of responsibility and, through those reports and its regular interactions with management of Shelton Capital Management during and between meetings, analyzes, evaluates, and provides feedback on Shelton Capital Management’s risk management processes. In addition, the Board receives information regarding, and has discussions with senior management of Shelton Capital Management about, Shelton Capital Management’s enterprise risk management systems and strategies. There can be no assurance that all elements of risk, or even all elements of material risk, will be disclosed to or identified by the Board.

Compensation Table

As shown in the following table, the total annual Trustee fees are equally divided between the Funds and paid to the Trustees who are not affiliated with Shelton Capital Management. The fees are $5,750 per quarter and $500 for each meeting attended. The table provides information regarding the Funds as of December 31, 2017.

Name/Position	Aggregate Fund group compensation	Pension or Estimated retirement benefits accrued as Fund expenses	Annual benefits upon retirement	Total compensation respecting Registrant and Fund complex paid to Trustees
Stephen C. Rogers President, Secretary & Trustee	None	None	None	None
Kevin T. Kogler Trustee	$7,812	None	None	$25,000
Stephen H. Sutro Trustee	$7,812	None	None	25,000
Marco L. Quazzo Trustee	$7,812	None	None	25,000

Dollar Range of Fund shares beneficially owned in the respective Funds as of December 31, 2017:

	Greater China Fund	BDC Income Fund	Real Estate Income Fund	Tactical Credit Fund	International Select Equity Fund
Stephen C. Rogers	None	$0-$10,000	$0-$10,000	$0-$10,000	None
Marco Quazzo	None	None	None	None	None
Kevin T. Kogler	None	None	None	None	None
Stephen H. Sutro	None	None	None	None	None

Aggregate Dollar Range of Equity Securities in all registered Investment Companies Overseen by Director in Family of Investment Companies:

	Shelton Capital Management Funds
Stephen C. Rogers	Above $100,000
Marco Quazzo	None
Kevin T. Kogler	Above $100,000
Stephen H. Sutro	Above $100,000

Code of Ethics

The Trust, Shelton Capital Management and Sub-Advisor have each adopted a Code of Ethics pursuant to Section 17(j) of the 1940 Act and Rule 17j-1 thereunder (and Rule 204A-1 under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended). RFS Partners, LP fulfills its obligations utilizing employees of Shelton Capital Management all of whom are subject to the Code of Ethics. Currently, the Code of Ethics prohibits personnel subject to the Code of Ethics from buying or selling securities for their own individual accounts if such purchase or sale represents $2,000, and if the securities at the time of such purchase or sale (i) are being considered for purchase or sale by a Fund (except the Index Funds) (ii) have been purchased or sold by a Fund within the most recent seven (7) days if such person participated in the recommendation to, or the decision by, the Fund to purchase or sell such security (except the Index Funds). Notwithstanding these prohibitions, there are limited circumstances in which personnel subject to the Code of Ethics may buy or sell securities for their own account (e.g. purchases which are part of an automatic dividend reinvestment plan). The Code of Ethics also requires personnel subject to the Code to report personal holdings to the Trust or Shelton Capital Management on both an annual and a quarterly basis.

Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures

The Board of Trustees of the Trust has delegated to Shelton Capital Management the authority to vote proxies of companies held in the Stock Funds' portfolios. Shelton Capital Management has entered into a proxy service agreement with Institutional Shareholder Services, Inc. ("ISS") and intends to apply ISS' pre-determined proxy voting guidelines when voting proxies on behalf of the Funds.

Shelton Capital Management recognizes that an investment advisor is a fiduciary that owes its clients, including the Funds, a duty of utmost good faith and full and fair disclosure of all material facts. An investment advisor's duty of loyalty requires an advisor to vote proxies in a manner consistent with the best interest of its clients and precludes the advisor from subrogating the clients' interests to its own. In addition, an investment advisor voting proxies on behalf of a fund must do so in a manner consistent with the best interests of the fund and its shareholders. The Board, in conjunction with Shelton Capital Management, seeks to balance the benefits of voting the proxies against the associated costs to the shareholders and have determined that entry into a third party proxy services agreement is in the best interest of the Trust and its shareholders. The Board will review its determination at least annually.

Shelton Capital Management seeks to avoid material conflicts of interest by voting in accordance with an independent third-party's pre-determined written proxy voting guidelines (the "Voting Guidelines"). These Voting Guidelines vote proxies in an objective and consistent manner across client accounts, based on internal and external research performed by ISS without consideration of any client relationship factors. Further, Shelton Capital Management may engage a third party as an independent fiduciary, as required, to vote all proxies of the Funds, and may engage an independent fiduciary to vote proxies of other issuers at its discretion.

All proxies received by the Funds are reviewed, categorized, analyzed and voted in accordance with the Voting Guidelines. The guidelines are reviewed periodically and updated as necessary to reflect new issues and any changes in Shelton Capital Management's or ISS' policies on specific issues. Items that can be categorized under the Voting Guidelines are voted in accordance with any applicable guidelines.

Proposals that cannot be categorized under the Voting Guidelines and raise a material conflict of interest between Shelton Capital Management and the Fund are referred to the Fund's Board of Trustees. Specifically, Shelton Capital Management will disclose the conflict to the Board and obtain its consent to the proposed vote in question prior to voting the securities. The disclosure to the Board will include sufficient detail regarding the matter to be voted on and the nature of Shelton Capital Management's conflict so that the Board would be able to make an informed decision regarding the vote. When the Board does not respond to such a conflict disclosure request or denies the request, Shelton Capital Management will abstain from voting the securities held by the Fund.

With regard to voting proxies of foreign companies, Shelton Capital Management weighs the cost of voting and potential inability to sell the securities (which may occur during the voting process) against the benefit of voting the proxies to determine whether or not to vote. With respect to securities lending transactions, Shelton Capital Management seeks to balance the economic benefits of continuing to participate in an open securities lending transaction against the inability to vote proxies.

When evaluating proposals, Shelton Capital Management recognizes that the management of a publicly-held company may need protection from the market's frequent focus on short-term considerations, so as to be able to concentrate on such long-term goals as productivity and development of competitive products and services. In addition, Shelton Capital Management generally supports proposals designed to provide management with short-term insulation from outside influences so as to enable them to bargain effectively with potential suitors to the extent such proposals are discrete and not bundled with other proposals. Shelton Capital Management believes that a shareholder's role in the governance of a publicly-held company is generally limited to monitoring the performance of the company and its management and voting on matters which properly come to a shareholder vote. However, Shelton Capital Management generally opposes proposals designed to insulate an issuer's management unnecessarily from the wishes of a majority of shareholders. Accordingly, Shelton Capital Management generally votes in accordance with management on issues that, at Shelton Capital Management's sole discretion, it believes neither unduly limits the rights and privileges of shareholders nor adversely affects the value of the investment.

Information regarding how the Funds voted proxies relating to portfolio securities during the most recent 12-month period ended June 30, 2017 is available (1) by calling the Funds at (800) 955-9988, or (2) on the SEC's website at http:///www.sec.gov.

Shareholder Beneficial Ownership

As of April 25, 2018, the following shareholders, to the Trust's knowledge, owned beneficially more than 5% of a Fund's outstanding shares, as noted:

Share Class	Shareholder	Address	Percentage Shares Owned		
GREATER CHINA FUND			**Record**	**Beneficial**	**Both**
	Charles Schwab	San Francisco, CA		6.81%	
	TD Ameritrade Inc	Omaha, NE		8.37%	
	Charles Schwab	San Francisco, CA		12.86%	
	Merrill Lynch	Jersey City, NJ		5.05%	
	National Financial Services	New York, NY		6.90%	
	State Street Bank and Trust Co	Boston, MA		13.66%	
	J.P. Morgan Chase Bank	Dallas, TX		9.26%	
	Brown Brothers Harriman & Co	New York, NY		6.45%	
BDC INCOME FUND					
Institutional	National Financial Services	Jersey City, NJ		56.71%	
REAL ESTATE INCOME FUND					
Investor	Charles Schwab	San Francisco, CA		5.23%	
Institutional	TD Ameritrade Inc	Denver, CO		32.59%	
TACTICAL CREDIT FUND					
Institutional	LPL Financial	San Diego, CA		49.59%	
Institutional	Charles Schwab	San Francisco, CA		31.93%	
Institutional	National Financial Services	Jersey City, NJ		12.76%	
Investor	LPL Financial	San Diego, CA		47.34%	
Investor	Charles Schwab	San Francisco, CA		49.64%	
INTERNATIONAL SELECT EQUITY FUND					
Institutional	Charles Schwab	San Francisco, CA		89.33%	

As of the calendar year ended December 31,2017, the Trustees and Officers of the Trust, as a group, beneficially owned less than 1% of each of the eleven Funds.

Investment Management and Other Services

Management Services

CCM Partners, a California Limited Partnership d/b/a Shelton Capital Management, is the investment advisor to the Funds pursuant to the Investment Advisory Agreement dated October 11, 2016 between the Trust on behalf of the Funds and Shelton Capital Management (the "Agreement"). Shelton Capital Management is controlled by a privately held partnership, RFS Partners, LP, which in turn is controlled by a family trust of which Mr. Stephen C. Rogers is a co-trustee.

Pursuant to the Agreement, Shelton Capital Management supplies investment research and portfolio management, including the selection of securities for the Funds to purchase, hold, or sell and the selection of brokers or dealers through whom the portfolio transactions of each Fund are executed. Shelton Capital Management's activities are subject to review and supervision by the Trustees to whom Shelton Capital Management renders periodic reports of the Funds' investment activities.

Each Fund pays for its own operating expenses and for its share of the Trust's expenses not assumed by Shelton Capital Management, including, but not limited to, costs of custodian services, brokerage fees, taxes, interest, costs of reports and notices to shareholders, costs of dividend disbursing and shareholder record-keeping services (including telephone costs), auditing and legal fees, the fees of the independent Trustees and the salaries of any officers or employees who are not affiliated with Shelton Capital Management, and its pro rata portion of premiums on the fidelity bond covering the Fund.

For Shelton Capital Management's services, each Fund pays a monthly fee computed at the annual rates shown in the table below:

Fund	**Investment Advisor Fee as a Percent of Average Daily Net Assets per Annum**
Greater China Fund	1.25%
BDC Income Fund	0.90%
Real Estate Income Fund	0.80%
Tactical Credit Fund	1.17%
International Select Equity Fund	0.74%

The following fees were paid to Shelton Capital Management:

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015:

Fund	Fee	Reimbursement	Net to Shelton Capital Management
Greater China Fund	$117,993	$58,370	$59,623

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016:

Fund	Fee	Reimbursement	Net to Shelton Capital Management
Greater China Fund	$90,166	$84,130	$6,036
BDC Income Fund*	$112,184	$160,178	$-
Real Estate Income Fund*	$101,814	$154,139	$-

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017:

Fund	Fee	Reimbursement	Net to Shelton Capital Management
Greater China Fund	$104,565	$53,237	$51,328
BDC Income Fund	$140,562	$81,015	$59,547
Real Estate Income Fund	$97,709	$113,675	$-

Tactical Credit Fund**	$229,650	$46,709	$182,941
International Select Equity Fund**	$224,536	$105,811	$118,725

* Six months ended December 31, 2016. Reflects advisory fees paid subsequent to Shelton Capital Management's assumption of advisory responsibilities, effective July 1, 2016.

** Eight months ended December 31, 2017.

The Agreement is currently in effect until March 31, 2019 and will be in effect thereafter only if it is renewed for each Fund for successive periods not exceeding one year by (i) the Board of Trustees of the Trust or a vote of a majority of the outstanding voting securities of each Fund, and (ii) a vote of a majority of the Trustees who are not parties to the Agreement or an interested person of any such party (other than as a Trustee), cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such Agreement.

Each Agreement may be terminated without penalty at any time by the Trust with respect to one or more of the Funds (either by the applicable Board of Trustees or by a majority vote of the terminating Fund's outstanding shares). Each Agreement may also be terminated by Shelton Capital Management with 60-days' written notice and will automatically terminate in the event of its assignment as defined in the 1940 Act.

Administrative Services

Pursuant to the Fund Administration Servicing Agreement, Shelton Capital Management Capital ("Administrator") also serves as the Funds' Administrator. The Administrator is responsible for handling the administrative requirements of the Fund and, as compensation for these duties, receives fees of 0.10% on the first $500 million in combined assets of the Trust, 0.08% on the next $500 million in combined assets of the Trust, and 0.06% on the Trust combined assets over $1 billion.

Share Marketing Plan

The Trust has adopted a Share Marketing Plan (the "12b-1 Plan") with respect to the Investor Class pursuant to Rule 12b-1 under the Investment Company Act. Specifically, the Board of Trustees, including a majority of the Trustees who are not interested persons of the Trust and who have no direct or indirect financial interest in the operation of the 12b-1 Plan or in any agreement related to the 12b-1 Plan (the "Independent Trustees"), adopted the 12b-1 Plan. In Reviewing the Plan, the Board of Trustees considered the proposed range and nature of payments and terms of the Investment Advisory Agreement between the Trust on behalf of each Fund and Shelton Capital Management and the nature and amount of other payments, fees and commissions that may be paid to Shelton Capital Management, its affiliates and other agents of the Trust.

Under the 12b-1 Plan, each Fund pays distribution fees to the Fund's distributor at an annual rate of 0.25% of the Fund's aggregate average daily net assets attributable to its Investor Class shares, to reimburse the distributor for its expenses in connection with the promotion and distribution of the Investor Class shares. The 12b-1 Plan provides that the Fund's distributor may use the distribution fees received from the Investor Class shares of the Fund covered by the 12b-1 Plan only to pay for the distribution expenses of that Class. Expenses include, but are not limited to: costs of payments, including incentive compensation, made to agents for and consultations to Shelton Capital Management, any affiliate of Shelton Capital Management or the Trust, including pension administration firms that provide distribution and shareholder related services and broker-dealers that engage in the distribution of the Class' shares; payments made to, and expenses of, persons who provide support services in connection with the distribution of the Class' shares and servicing of the Class' shareholders; office space and equipment, telephone facilities, answering routine inquiries regarding the classes, processing shareholder transactions, providing any other shareholder services not otherwise provided by transfer agency or other servicing arrangements; all payments made pursuant to the form of Distribution Agreement; costs relating to the formulation and implementation of marketing and promotional activities (including but not limited to, direct mail promotions and television, radio, newspaper, magazine and other mass media advertising); costs of printing and distributing prospectuses, statements of additional information and reports of the Funds to prospective shareholders of the Class; costs of printing and distributing sales literature pertaining to the Class; and costs involved in obtaining whatever information, analyses and reports with respect to marketing and promotional activities that the Trust may, from time to time, deem advisable. For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, the Funds paid 12b-1 fees as follows: BDC Income Fund $35,827, Real Estate Income Fund $29,611, Tactical

Credit Fund $19,828, and International Select Equity Fund $6,720.

Shareholder Services Plan

The Trust has adopted a Shareholder Services Plan (the "Services Plan") with respect to Investor Class shares. Shelton Capital Management serves as the service provider under the Services Plan and, as such, receives any fees paid by the Funds pursuant to the Services Plan.

The Board of Trustees, including a majority of the Trustees who are not interested persons of the Trust and who have no direct or indirect financial interest in the operation of the Services Plan or in any agreement related to the Services Plan (the "Independent Trustees"), adopted the Services Plan for the Investor Class shares of each Fund. Under the Services Plan, the covered shares of each Fund will pay a continuing service fee to Shelton Capital Management, the Fund's distributor or other service providers, in an amount, computed and prorated on a daily basis, equal to 0.25% per annum of the average daily net assets of the covered shares of each Fund. Such amounts are compensation for providing certain services to clients owning those shares of the Funds, including personal services such as processing purchase and redemption transactions, assisting in change of address requests and similar administrative details, and providing other information and assistance with respect to a Fund, including responding to shareholder inquiries.

Portfolio Managers

The table below includes details about the type, number, and assets under management for the various types of accounts, and total assets in the accounts with respect to which the advisory fee is based on the performance of the accounts that Messrs. Rogers, Mock, Manton, Knerr, and Harnisch managed as of December 31, 2017:

Stephen C. Rogers

Type of Account	Number of Accounts Managed	Total Assets Managed	Number of Accounts Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based	Assets Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based
Registered Investment Companies	5	$1,075,721,435	-	$-
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles	-	-	-	-
Other Accounts	-	-	-	-

William P. Mock

Type of Account	Number of Accounts Managed	Total Assets Managed	Number of Accounts Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based	Assets Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based
Registered Investment Companies	6	$197,943,164	-	$-
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles	-	-	-	-
Other Accounts	97	$68,755,886	-	-

Andrew Manton

Type of Account	Number of Accounts Managed	Total Assets Managed	Number of Accounts Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based	Assets Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based
Registered Investment	3	$66,542,483	-	$-

Companies				
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles	-	-	-	-
Other Accounts			-	-
	69	$46,101,302		
84				

Matthias Knerr

Type of Account	Number of Accounts Managed	Total Assets Managed	Number of Accounts Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based	Assets Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based
Registered Investment Companies	3	$66,542,483	-	$-
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles	-	-	-	-
Other Accounts	69	$46,101,302	-	-

John Harnisch

Type of Account	Number of Accounts Managed	Total Assets Managed	Number of Accounts Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based	Assets Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based
Registered Investment Companies	2	$40,448,305	-	$-
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles	-	-	-	-
Other Accounts	-	-	-	-

Chris Pike

Type of Account	Number of Accounts Managed	Total Assets Managed	Number of Accounts Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based	Assets Managed for which Investment Advisory Fee is Performance-Based
Registered Investment Companies	1	$10,029,024	-	$-
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles	-	-	-	-
Other Accounts	-	-	-	-

Portfolio Manager Securities Ownership

The table below identifies the dollar range of Fund shares beneficially owned by each portfolio manager of such Fund, as of December 31, 2017.

	Greater China Fund	**BDC Income Fund**	**Real Estate Income Fund**	**Tactical Credit Fund**	**International Select Equity Fund**
Stephen C. Rogers	None	$0-$10,000	$0-$10,000	$0-$10,000	None
William P. Mock	$10,000-$50,000	None	None	None	None
Andrew Manton	None	None	None	None	$10,000-$50,000
Matthias Knerr	None	None	None	None	$10,000-$50,000
John Harnisch	None	$0-$10,000	None	$10,000-$50,000	$0-$10,000
Chris Pike	None	None	None	None	None

Potential Conflicts

Individual portfolio managers may manage multiple accounts. Shelton Capital Management and the Sub-Advisor manage potential conflicts between the Funds and other accounts through allocation policies and procedures, internal review processes, including, but not limited to reports and oversight by management. Shelton Capital Management and the Sub-Advisor have developed trade allocation systems and controls to help ensure that no one account, regardless of type, is intentionally favored at the expense of another. Allocation policies are designed to address potential conflicts in situations where two or more accounts participate in investment decisions involving the same securities.

Compensation

Compensation of portfolio managers of Shelton Capital Management includes a base salary, cash bonus, and a package of employee benefits that are generally available to all salaried employees. Compensation is structured to emphasize the success of Shelton Capital Management rather than that of any one individual. Compensation is not linked to the distribution of Fund shares or to the performance of any account or Fund. Some of the portfolio managers also participate in equity ownership of Shelton Capital Management. Each element of compensation is detailed below:

Base Salary: Portfolio managers are paid a fixed base salary that is intended to be competitive in light of each portfolio manager's experience and responsibilities.

Bonus: Bonus payments are based on a number of factors including the profitability of the firm and the employee's long-term contributions, full-time employees of Shelton Capital Management with sufficient tenure participate in an annual bonus program. Bonuses are not linked to the volume of assets managed or to measurements of relative or absolute investment returns.

Incentive Compensation: The portfolio managers may receive incentive compensation based on revenue in relation to certain newly opened accounts.

Partnership interests: In the past Shelton Capital Management has made partnership interests available in its general partner, RFS Partners to employees of Shelton Capital Management. portfolio managers have participated in these offerings by purchasing interests in the partnership. Partnership interests may provide pass-through income of the firm's profits and annual cash distributions based on each Partner's proportionate profit sharing interest. Distributions are generally determined based on considerations of Shelton Capital Management's working capital requirements and on estimated tax liabilities associated with the pass-through income.

Employee Benefit Program: portfolio managers participate in benefit plans and programs available generally to all employees, which includes a 401K plan and optional company matching provisions.

Compensation of the Portfolio Managers for the Sub-Advisor: Compensation of Portfolio Managers of the Green Alpha Fund (PMSAs) includes a base salary, cash bonus, and a package of employee benefits that are generally available to all salaried employees. Compensation is structured to emphasize the success of the Sub-Advisor rather than that of any one individual. The Sub-Advisor does not have any "incentive compensation" or "deferred compensation" programs for the PMSAs. Compensation is not linked to the distribution of Fund shares or to the performance of any

account or Fund. Some of the PMSAs also participate in equity ownership of the Sub-Advisor. Each element of compensation is detailed below:

Base Salary. Portfolio managers are paid a fixed base salary that is intended to be competitive in light of each PMSAs' experience and responsibilities.

Bonus. Bonus payments are based on a number of factors including the profitability of the firm and the employee's long-term contributions, full-time employees of the Sub-Advisor with at least one year of tenure participate in the annual bonus program. Bonuses are not linked to the volume of assets managed or to measurements of relative or absolute investment returns.

Partnership interests. In the past, the firm has made partnership interests available in the Sub-Advisor to employees of the Sub-Advisor. PMSAs have participated in these offerings by purchasing interests in the partnership. Partnership interests may provide pass-through income of the firm's profits and annual cash distributions based on each Partner's proportionate profit sharing interest. Distributions are generally determined based on considerations of the Sub-Advisor's working capital requirements and on estimated tax liabilities associated with the pass-through income.

Employee Benefit Program. PMSAs participate in benefit plans and programs available generally to all employees of Green Alpha, which includes a qualified, defined-contribution profit sharing plan and company match.

The above information regarding compensation of portfolio managers is current as of December 31, 2017.

Other Service Providers

Principal Underwriter. RFS Partners, a California limited partnership, is currently the principal underwriter of each Fund's shares under an underwriting agreement with each Fund, pursuant to which RFS Partners agrees to act as each Fund's distribution agent. Each Fund's shares are sold to the public on a best efforts basis in a continuous offering without a sales load or other commission or compensation. RFS Partners is the general partner of the Shelton Capital Management. The general partner of RFS Partners is Richard F. Shelton, Inc., a corporation that is controlled by a family trust, of which Stephen C. Rogers serves as a co-trustee. While the shares of each Fund are offered directly to the public with no sales charge, RFS Partners may, out of its own monies, compensate brokers who assist in the sale of a Fund's shares. In addition, Shelton Capital Management may, out of its own monies, make cash contributions to tax-exempt charitable organizations that invest in the Funds.

Transfer Agent and Fund Accounting Agent. Gemini Fund Services, LLC, 17605 Wright Street, Omaha, NE 68130, acts as the shareholder servicing agent for the Trust and acts as the Trust’s Transfer Agent and Fund Accounting Agent. In such capacities it performs many services, including portfolio and net asset valuation, bookkeeping, and shareholder record-keeping.

Custodian. US Bank N.A., 425 Walnut St, Cincinnati, OH 45202, as custodian of the securities and other assets of the Trust. The Custodian does not participate in decisions relating to the purchase and sale of portfolio securities. Under the custodian agreement, the Custodian (i) maintains a separate account or accounts in the name of each Fund, (ii) holds and transfers portfolio securities on account of each Fund, (iii) accepts receipts and makes disbursements of money on behalf of each Fund, (iv) collects and receives all income and other payments and distribution on account of each Fund’s securities and (v) makes periodic reports to the Trustees of each Trust concerning each Fund’s operations. As Foreign Custody Manager, the bank selects and monitors foreign sub-custodian banks, selects and evaluates non-compulsory foreign depositaries, and furnishes information relevant to the selection of compulsory depositaries.

Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm. Tait, Weller & Baker LLP, 1818 Market Street, Suite 2400, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103, is the independent registered public accounting firm for the Trust, subject to annual appointment by the Board of Trustees. Tait, Weller & Baker LLP conducts an annual audit of the Funds’ annual financial statements, and performs tax and accounting services.

Independent Legal Counsel to the Independent Trustees. Davis, Graham & Stubbs, 1550 17th Street, Suite 500, Denver, Colorado 80202 currently serves as Independent Legal Counsel to the Independent Trustees, and counsel to the Trust. A determination with respect to the independence of the Independent Legal Counsel is made at least annually by the Independent Trustees, as prescribed by the 1940 Act and the rules promulgated thereunder.

Policies Regarding Broker-Dealers used for Portfolio Transactions

Decisions to buy and sell securities for the Funds, assignment of their portfolio business, and negotiation of commission rates and prices are made by Shelton Capital Management and the Sub-Advisor in the cases where a Sub-Advisor is employed by a Fund. It is each Fund's policy to obtain the "best execution" available (i.e., prompt and reliable execution at the most favorable security price). If purchases made by the Funds are effected via principal transactions with one or more dealers (typically a market maker firm in the particular security or a selling group member in the case of an initial or secondary public offering) at net prices, the Funds will generally incur few or no brokerage costs. These dealers are compensated through the principal "spread," and may also charge related transaction fees. Purchases of portfolio securities from underwriters may include a commission or concession paid by the issuer to the underwriter, and purchases from dealers will include a spread between the bid and asked price.

Shelton Capital Management does not currently utilize soft dollar arrangements, but may do so in the future. However, in order to obtain additional research and brokerage services on a "soft dollar" basis, and in order to obtain other qualitative execution services that Shelton Capital Management believes are important to best execution, Shelton Capital Management may place over-the-counter ("OTC") equity transactions and/or place fixed-income transactions with specialized broker-dealers with which they have a "soft dollar" credit arrangement, and that execute such transactions on an agency basis ("Brokers"). When Shelton Capital Management uses Brokers to execute OTC equity transactions and/or fixed-income transactions on an agency basis, Shelton Capital Management takes steps to ensure that the prices obtained in such transactions are competitive with the prices that could have been obtained had the transactions been conducted on a principal basis, *i.e.,* directly with the dealers. However, the total cost (*i.e.,* price plus/minus commission) of executing an OTC equity transaction and/or or a fixed income transaction through a Broker on an agency basis may be less favorable than that of executing that same transaction with a dealer because the Broker will receive a commission for its services, including for the provision of research products, services or credits. Shelton Capital Management will take steps to ensure that commissions paid are reasonable in relation to, among other things: (i) the value of all the brokerage and research products and services provided by that Broker and (ii) the quality of execution provided by that Broker. Accordingly, Shelton Capital Management uses Brokers to effect OTC equity transactions and/or fixed income transactions for the Funds where the total cost is, in Shelton Capital Management's opinion, reasonable, but not necessarily the lowest total cost available.

In selecting broker-dealers and in negotiating commissions, Shelton Capital Management generally considers, among other things, the broker-dealer's reliability, the quality of its execution services on a continuing basis, the financial condition of the broker-dealer, and the research services provided, which include furnishing advice as to the value of securities, the advisability of purchasing or selling specific securities and furnishing analysis and reports concerning state and local governments, securities, and economic factors and trends, and portfolio strategy. Shelton Capital Management considers such information, which is in addition to and not in lieu of the services required to be performed by Shelton Capital Management under the Agreements, to be useful in varying degrees, but of indeterminable value.

The Funds may pay brokerage commissions in an amount higher than the lowest available rate for brokerage and research services as authorized, under certain circumstances, by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. Where commissions paid reflect research services and information furnished in addition to execution, Shelton Capital Management believes that such services were bona fide and rendered for the benefit of its clients. For the fiscal year ended December 31 of each year shown, the commissions paid are as follows:

	2015	**2016**	**2017**
Greater China Fund	1,952	1,569	1,569
BDC Income Fund		49,386*	49,386
Real Estate Income Fund		5,649*	5,649
Tactical Credit Fund			2,080**
International Select Equity Fund			7,387**

*Six months ended December 31, 2016

**Eight months ended December 31, 2017

If purchases or sales of securities of the Funds are considered at or about the same time, transactions in such securities will be allocated among the several Funds in a manner deemed equitable to all by Shelton Capital Management, taking into account the respective sizes of the Funds, and the amount of securities to be purchased or sold. It is recognized that it is possible that in some cases this procedure could have a detrimental effect on the price or volume of the security so far as a Fund is concerned. In other cases, however, it is possible that the ability to participate in volume transactions and to negotiate lower brokerage commissions or net prices will be beneficial to a Fund.

Additional Information Regarding Purchases and Redemptions of Fund Shares

Purchase Orders

The purchase price for shares of the Funds is the net asset value of such shares next determined after receipt and acceptance of a purchase order in proper form by the Funds' Transfer Agent. Once shares of a Fund are purchased,

they begin earning income immediately, and income dividends will start being credited to the investor's account on the day following the effective date of purchase and continue through the day the shares in the account are redeemed. All checks are accepted subject to collection at full face value in U.S. funds and must be drawn in U.S. dollars on a U.S. bank. Checks drawn in U.S. funds on foreign banks will not be credited to the shareholder's account and dividends will not begin accruing until the proceeds are collected, which can take a long period of time.

Payments transmitted by wire and received by the Transfer Agent prior to the close of the Funds, normally at 4:00 p.m. Eastern time (1:00 p.m. Pacific time) on any business day, are effective on the same day as received. Wire payments received by the Transfer Agent after that time will normally be effective on the next business day and such purchases will be made at the net asset value next calculated after receipt of that payment.

Shareholder Accounting

All purchases of Fund shares will be credited to the shareholder in full and fractional shares of the relevant Fund (rounded to the nearest 1/1000 of a share) in an account maintained for the shareholder by the Trust's transfer agent. Share certificates will not be issued for any Fund at any time. To open an account in the name of a corporation, a resolution of that corporation's Board of Directors will be required. Other evidence of corporate status or the authority of account signatories may be required.

The Trust reserves the right to reject any order for the purchase of shares of any Fund, in whole or in part. In addition, the offering of shares of any Fund may be suspended by the Trust at any time and resumed at any time thereafter.

Shareholder Redemptions

Requests for redemption and share assignments may be sent to the applicable Fund at 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710, Denver, Colorado, 80265, or for those with telephone redemption privileges, by calling the Fund at (800) 955-9988. For online redemptions, visit the Funds' website at *www.sheltoncap.com*.

Redemptions will be made in cash at the net asset value per share next determined after receipt by the transfer agent of a redemption request in proper form, including all share certificates, share assignments, signature guarantees, and other documentation as may be required by the transfer agent. The amount received upon redemption may be more or less than the shareholder's original investment.

The Trust will attempt to make payment for all redemptions within one business day, but in no event later than seven days after receipt of such redemption request in proper form. However, the Trust reserves the right to suspend redemptions or postpone the date of payment (1) for any periods during which the New York Stock Exchange is closed (other than for the customary weekend and holiday closings), (2) when trading in the markets the Trust usually utilize is restricted or an emergency exists, as determined by the SEC, so that disposal of the Trust's investments or the determination of a Fund's net asset value is not reasonably practicable, or (3) for such other periods as the SEC by order may permit for the protection of a Trust's shareholders. Also, the Trust will not mail redemption proceeds until checks used for the purchase of the shares have cleared, which can take up to 15 days.

As of the date of this Statement of Additional Information, the Trust understands that the New York Stock Exchange is closed for the following holidays: New Year's Day, Martin Luther King, Jr. Day, President's Day, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas. The U.S. Government Securities Fund and The United States Treasury Fund will be open for business Columbus Day and Veterans Day. The Income Fund will be closed in observance of Columbus Day and Veteran’s Day. On holidays in which the Custodian is closed, transactions will be processed on the following business day.

Due to the relatively high cost of handling small investments, the Trust reserves the right to redeem, involuntarily, at net asset value, the shares of any shareholder whose accounts in the Trust have an aggregate value of less than $1,000, but only where the value of such accounts has been reduced by such shareholder's prior voluntary redemption of shares. In any event, before the Trust redeems such shares and sends the proceeds to the shareholder, it will notify the shareholder that the value of the shares in that shareholder's account is less than the minimum amount and allow that shareholder 30 days to make an additional investment in an amount which will increase the aggregate value of that shareholder's accounts to at least $1,000 before the redemption is processed.

Use of the Exchange Privilege as described in the Prospectus in conjunction with market timing services offered through numerous securities dealers has become increasingly popular as a means of capital management. In the event that a substantial portion of a Fund's shareholders should, within a short period, elect to redeem their shares of that Fund pursuant to the Exchange Privilege, the Fund might have to liquidate portfolio securities it might otherwise hold and incur the additional costs related to such transactions. The Exchange Privilege may be terminated or suspended by the Funds upon 60-days’ prior notice to shareholders.

Redemptions in Kind

The Trust has committed itself to pay in cash all requests for redemption by any shareholder of record, limited in amount, however, during any 90-day period to the lesser of $250,000 or 1% of the value of the applicable Fund's net assets at the beginning of such period. Such commitment is irrevocable without the prior approval of the SEC. In the case of requests for redemption in excess of such amounts, the Trustees reserve the right to make payments in whole or in part in securities or other assets of the Fund from which the shareholder is redeeming in case of an emergency, or if the payment of such a redemption in cash would be detrimental to the existing shareholders of that Fund or the Trust. In such circumstances, the securities distributed would be valued at the price used to compute such Fund's net asset value. Should a Fund do so, a shareholder would likely incur transaction fees in converting the securities to cash.

Determination of Net Asset Value Per Share (“NAV”)

The valuation of the portfolio securities of the Treasury Trust (including any securities held in the separate account maintained for when-issued securities) is based upon their amortized cost, which does not take into account unrealized capital gains or losses. This involves valuing an instrument at its cost and thereafter assuming a constant amortization to maturity of any discount or premium, regardless of the impact of fluctuating interest rates on the market value of the instrument. While this method provides certainty in valuation, it may result in periods during which value, as determined by amortized cost, is higher or lower than the price such Fund would receive if they sold the instrument. During periods of declining interest rates, the daily yield on shares of the Treasury Trust computed as described above may tend to be higher than a like computation made by a fund with identical investments utilizing a method of valuation based upon market prices. Thus, if the use of amortized cost by the Fund resulted in a lower aggregate portfolio value on a particular day, a prospective investor in the Fund would be able to obtain a somewhat higher yield than would result from investment in a fund utilizing solely market values, and existing investors in the Fund would receive less investment income. The converse would apply in a period of rising interest rates.

The portfolio securities of the Funds are generally valued at the last reported sale price. In the case of the futures contracts held by the Funds, the valuation is determined using the settle price provided by either the Chicago Mercantile Exchange or the ICE, depending on the exchange the contract trades on, typically as of 1:15 p.m., Pacific Time. Securities held by the Stock Funds that have no reported last sale for any day that a Fund's NAV is calculated and securities and other assets for which market quotations are readily available are valued at the latest available bid price. Fixed income portfolio securities for which market quotations are readily available are valued at the last available bid. All other securities and assets are valued at their fair value as determined in good faith by Advisor consistent with policies adopted by the Board of Trustees, and such fair value determinations are reviewed and ratified by the Board of Trustees. Securities with remaining maturities of 60 days or less are valued on the amortized cost basis unless the Trustees determine that such valuation does not reflect fair value. The Trust may also utilize a pricing service, bank, or broker/dealer experienced in such matters to perform any of the pricing functions.

Taxes

This section provides additional information concerning U.S. federal income taxes. It is based on the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), applicable Treasury Regulations, judicial authority, and administrative rulings and practice, all as of the date of this SAI, and all of which are subject to change, including changes with retroactive

effect. The following does not address any state, local or foreign or estate or gift tax matters, except where otherwise specifically noted.

A shareholder's U.S. federal income tax consequences from acquiring, holding and disposing of shares in the Fund may vary depending upon his or her particular situation. This discussion only applies to shareholders who are U.S. persons, except where otherwise stated. For purposes of this discussion, U.S. persons are: (i) U.S. citizens or residents, (ii) U.S. corporations, (iii) an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source, or (iv) a trust, if a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over its administration and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all of its substantial decisions, or certain electing trusts that were in existence on August 20, 1996, and were treated as domestic trusts on August 19, 1996. This discussion does not address issues of significance to U.S. persons in special situations such as: (i) tax-exempt organizations, (ii) shareholders holding shares through tax-advantaged accounts (such as 401(k) plan accounts or individual retirement accounts), (iii) shareholders holding investments through foreign institutions (financial and non-financial) or foreign accounts, (iv) financial institutions, (v) broker-dealers, (vi) entities not organized under the laws of the United States or a political subdivision thereof, (vii) shareholders holding shares as part of a hedge, straddle or conversion transaction, and (viii) shareholders who are subject to the U.S. federal alternative minimum tax.

If a partnership (including for this purpose any entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) is a beneficial owner of shares, the tax treatment of a partner in the partnership will generally depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Partners of partnerships that are considering the purchase of shares should consult their own tax advisers regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of the purchase, ownership and disposition of shares.

The Funds have not requested and will not request an advance ruling from the IRS as to the U.S. federal income tax matters described below. The IRS could adopt positions contrary to those discussed below and such positions could be sustained. In addition, the foregoing discussion only addresses some of the U.S. federal income tax considerations generally affecting investments in the Funds. Prospective shareholders are urged to consult with their own tax advisers as to the particular U.S. federal tax consequences to them of an investment in the Fund, as well as the applicability and effect of any state, local or foreign laws, and the effect of possible changes in applicable tax laws.

U.S. federal tax information will be furnished to each shareholder for each calendar year as required by federal law.

Taxation of the Funds

The Funds intend to elect to be treated and qualify each year as a regulated investment company under Subchapter M of the Code. The Funds also intend to be treated as a separate entity for federal income tax purposes. Thus, the provisions of the Code applicable to regulated investment companies generally will apply separately to each Fund even though each is a series of the Trust. Furthermore, each Fund will separately determine its income, gain, losses and expenses for federal income tax purposes.

In order to qualify for the special tax treatment accorded regulated investment companies and their shareholders, a Fund must, among other things: (i) derive at least 90% of its gross income in each taxable year from dividends, interest, payments with respect to certain securities loans, gains from the sale or other disposition of stock, securities or foreign currencies, or other income (including, but not limited to, gains from options, futures or forward contracts) derived with respect to its business of investing in such stock, securities or currencies and net income derived from interests in “qualified publicly traded partnerships;” (ii) diversify its holdings so that at the end of each fiscal quarter, (a) at least 50% of the value of its total assets consists of cash and cash items (including receivables), U.S. government securities, securities of other regulated investment companies, and other securities limited generally, with respect to any one issuer, to no more than 5% of the value of a Fund’s total assets and 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer, and (b) not more than 25% of the value of a Fund’s total assets are invested in (1) the securities (other than those of the U.S. government or other regulated investment companies) of any one issuer, (2) the securities (other than the securities of other regulated investment companies) of two or more issuers which a Fund controls and which are engaged in the same, similar or related trades or businesses, or (3) in the securities of one or more qualified publicly traded partnerships; and (iii) distribute with respect to each taxable year an amount equal to or exceeding the sum of (a) 90% of its “investment company taxable income,” as that term is defined in the Code (which generally includes, among other things, dividends, taxable interest, and the excess of any net short-term capital gains over net long-term

capital losses, as reduced by certain deductible expenses) without regard to the deduction for dividends paid, and (b) 90% of its tax-exempt interest income, net of expenses allocable thereto. For purposes of meeting the diversification requirement described in (ii) above, in the case of a Fund's investment in loan participations, the issuer may be the financial intermediary or the borrower. The requirements for qualification as a regulated investment company may significantly limit the extent to which a Fund may invest in some investments.

With respect to (i) above, the IRS may limit qualifying income from foreign currency gains and from certain derivatives to the amount of such income that is directly related to a regulated investment company's principal business of investing in stock or securities pursuant to regulations that may be promulgated in the future. For purposes of the 90% gross income requirement described in (i) above, income derived from a partnership will generally be treated as qualifying income only to the extent such income is attributable to items of income of the partnership which would be qualifying income if realized by the regulated investment company. However, 100% of the net income derived from an interest in a "qualified publicly traded partnership" (defined as a partnership (x) interests in which are traded on an established securities market or readily tradable on a secondary market or the substantial equivalent thereof and (y) that derives less than 90% of its income from the qualifying income described in (i) above) will be treated as qualifying income. In addition, although in general the passive activity loss rules of the Code do not apply to regulated investment companies, such rules do apply to a regulated investment company with respect to items attributable to an interest in a qualified publicly traded partnership. Finally, for purposes of (ii)(a) above, the term "outstanding voting securities of such issuer" will include the equity securities of a qualified publicly traded partnership.

To the extent that a Fund qualifies for treatment as a regulated investment company, the Fund will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on income distributed to its shareholders in a timely manner in the form of dividends (including capital gain dividends, defined below). In certain situations, a Fund can cure failures to meet the income and diversification tests described above, including, in some cases, by paying a Fund-level tax and, in the case of diversification failures, disposing of certain assets. If a Fund were to fail to qualify as a regulated investment company accorded special tax treatment in any taxable year – for example, because it was not sufficiently diversified under the applicable Code tests – the Fund would be subject to tax on its taxable income at corporate rates, and all distributions from earnings and profits, including any distributions of net tax-exempt income and net long-term capital gains, would be taxable to shareholders as ordinary income. To qualify again to be taxed as a regulated investment company that is accorded special tax treatment in a subsequent year, the Fund could be required to pay substantial taxes, penalties and interest and make substantial distributions. In addition, if a Fund fails to qualify as a regulated investment company for a period greater than two taxable years, the Fund may be required to recognize and pay tax on any net built-in gain (the excess of aggregate gain, including items of income, over aggregate loss that would have been realized if the Fund had been liquidated) or, alternatively, to be subject to taxation on such built-in gain recognized for a period of five years, in order to qualify as a regulated investment company in a subsequent year.

As a regulated investment company, each Fund generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on its net capital gains (that, is any net long-term capital gains in excess of net short-term capital losses) properly reported by each Fund in a written statement to shareholders as capital gain dividends (“capital gain dividends”) and its investment company taxable income if any, that each Fund distributes to shareholders on a timely basis. Each Fund intends to distribute substantially all of its investment company taxable income and all of its net capital gains, after offsetting any capital loss carryforwards. If a Fund does retain any investment company taxable income, it will be subject to tax at regular corporate rates on the amount retained. However, a Fund may elect to have certain dividends paid after the close of a tax year treated as having been paid during the tax year for purposes of the regulated investment company distribution requirements and for purposes of determining its taxable income (“spill-over dividends”). Spill-over dividends are taxed to shareholders in the year in which they are received.

If a Fund retains any net capital gain, it will also be subject to tax at regular corporate rates on the amount retained, but may designate the retained amount as undistributed capital gains in a notice to its shareholders who (i) will be required to include in income for U.S. federal income tax purposes, as long-term capital gain, their shares of such undistributed amount, (ii) will be entitled to credit their proportionate shares of the tax paid by the Fund on such undistributed amount against their U.S. federal income tax liabilities, if any, and (iii) will be entitled to obtain a refund of the excess, if any, of their allocable share of the tax paid by the Fund on such undistributed amount over the shareholder’s tax liability on such amount. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, the tax basis of shares owned by a shareholder of a Fund will be increased by an amount equal to the difference between the amount of undistributed capital gains included in the shareholder’s income and the tax deemed paid by the shareholder under clause (ii) of the preceding sentence.

Generally, the excess (if any) of a Fund’s net short-term capital loss over the net long-term capital gain for a taxable year will carry over as a short-term capital loss arising on the first day of the next tax year. In addition, the excess (if any) of a Fund’s net long-term capital loss over the net short-term capital gain for the year will carry over as a long-term capital loss arising on the first day of the next tax year. Unused capital losses realized by a Fund during taxable years beginning on or before December 22, 2010 may be carried forward for up to eight years following the

year of the loss. All other capital losses may be carried forward indefinitely until they can be used to offset capital gains.

Capital loss carry forwards were the following as of December 31, 2017.

Expiring	Greater China Fund	BDC Income Fund	Real Estate Income Fund*	Tactical Credit Fund	International Select Equity Fund
Long Term with No Expiration	$-	$726,516	$122,324	$-	$55,970,420
Short Term with No Expiration	$623,452	$2,347,963	$1,303,916	$1,415,209	$3,717,656
	$623,452	$3,074,479	$1,426,240	$1,415,209	$59,688,076

*Subject to annual limitation of $37,999 under §382 of the Code.

If future capital gains are offset by carried-forward capital losses, such future capital gains are not subject to Fund-level federal income tax, regardless of whether they are distributed to shareholders. However, future capital gains offset by carried-forward capital losses are generally subject to taxation as ordinary dividends to shareholders if distributed. Accordingly, the Funds do not expect to distribute any capital gains offset by carried-forward capital losses. A Fund cannot carry back or carry forward any net operating losses.

A regulated investment company may elect to treat any post-October capital loss (defined as the company's net capital loss, net long-term capital loss, or net short-term capital loss, as applicable, in each case attributable to the portion of the taxable year after October 31) and late-year ordinary loss (generally, (i) net ordinary losses from the sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of property, attributable to the portion of the taxable year after October 31, plus (ii) other net ordinary losses attributable to the portion of the taxable year after December 31) as if incurred in the succeeding taxable year.

If a Fund fails to distribute in a calendar year at least an amount equal to the sum of 98% of its ordinary income for such year and 98.2% of its net capital gain income for the one year period ending on October 31 of such year, plus any retained amount for the prior year, the Fund will be subject to a non-deductible excise tax on the undistributed amounts. For these purposes, ordinary gains and losses from the sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of property that would be properly taken into account after October 31 are treated as arising on January 1 of the following calendar year. For purposes of the excise tax, a Fund will be treated as having distributed any amount on which it has been subject to corporate income tax in the taxable year ending within the calendar year. A dividend paid to shareholders in January of a year generally is deemed to have been paid on December 31 of the preceding year, if the dividend is declared and payable to the shareholders of record on a date in October, November or December of that preceding year.

The Funds intend to make distributions sufficient to avoid imposition of the excise tax, although there can be no assurance that it will be able to do so. Moreover, the Funds reserve the right to pay an excise tax rather than make an additional distribution when circumstances warrant (for example, the amount of excise tax to be paid is deemed de minimis by the Funds).

Taxation of Fund Distributions

For U.S. federal income tax purposes, distributions of investment company taxable income are generally taxable as ordinary income to the extent of a Fund's current or accumulated "earnings and profits." Taxes on distributions of capital gains are determined by how long a Fund owned the investments that generated them, rather than how long a shareholder has owned his or her shares. Distributions of net capital gains from the sale of investments that a Fund owned for more than one year and from other long-term capital gains recognized by the Fund and that are properly designated by the Fund as capital gain dividends (i.e., "capital gain dividends") will be taxable to Fund shareholders as long-term capital gains. Generally, distributions of gains from the sale of investments that the Fund owned for one year or less will be taxable as ordinary income. A Fund may designate certain dividends as derived from "qualified dividend income," which, when received by an individual or other non-corporate shareholder, will be taxed at a maximum federal income tax rate applicable to long-term capital gain, in addition to the 3.8% surtax on net investment income, described under "Surtax on Net Investment Income," below. Dividend income distributed to individual or other non-corporate shareholders will qualify as "qualified dividend income" as that term is defined in section 1(h)(11)(B) of the Code to the extent such distributions are attributable to income from the Fund's investments in common and preferred stock of U.S. companies and stock of certain qualified foreign corporations provided that certain holding period and other requirements are met by both a Fund and the shareholders.

Distributions of earnings and gains are taxable to shareholders even if they are paid from income or gains earned by a Fund before a shareholder invested in the Fund (and thus were included in the price the shareholder paid), and are taxable whether shareholders receive them in cash or reinvest them in additional shares (other than distributions, if any, designated by a Fund as "exempt-interest dividends," a designation which the Funds generally do not expect to make). Any gain resulting from the sale of Fund shares generally will be taxable as capital gains. Distributions declared and payable by the Fund during October, November or December to shareholders of record on a date in any such month and paid by the Fund during the following January will be treated for U.S. federal tax purposes as paid by a Fund and received by shareholders on December 31st of the year in which declared rather than the calendar year in which they were received.

Dividends received by corporate shareholders that are reported by a Fund in a written statement furnished to shareholders may qualify for a dividends-received deduction to the extent of the amount of qualifying dividends received by the Fund from domestic corporations and to the extent (if any) that a portion of interest paid or accrued on certain high yield discount obligations owned by the Fund are treated as dividends.

If a Fund makes a distribution in excess of its current and accumulated "earnings and profits" in any taxable year, the excess distribution will be treated as a return of capital to the extent of a shareholder's tax basis in his or her shares, and thereafter as capital gain. A return of capital is not taxable, but it reduces a shareholder's basis in his or her shares, thus reducing any loss or increasing any gain on a subsequent taxable disposition by the shareholder of such shares.

Sale or Redemption of Shares

The sale or redemption of Fund shares may give rise to a gain or loss. In general, any gain or loss realized upon a taxable disposition of shares will be treated generally as long-term capital gain or loss if the shares have been held for more than 12 months. Otherwise, the gain or loss on the taxable disposition of Fund shares will be treated as short-term capital gain or loss. However, any loss realized upon a taxable disposition of shares held for six months or less will be treated as long-term, rather than short-term, to the extent of any long-term capital gain distributions received (or deemed received) by the shareholder with respect to the shares. All or a portion of any loss realized upon a taxable disposition of Fund shares will be disallowed if other substantially identical shares of the Fund are purchased within 30 days before or after the disposition. In such a case, the basis of the newly purchased shares will be adjusted to reflect the disallowed loss.

Special Tax Considerations

The following discussion relates to the particular U.S. federal income tax consequences of the investment policies of the Funds.

Passive Foreign Investment Companies

A Fund may invest in foreign investment entities referred to as "passive foreign investment companies" ("PFICs"). In order to avoid U.S. federal income tax and an additional interest charge on any "excess distribution" from PFICs or gain from the disposition of PFIC shares, a Fund may elect to "mark-to-market" annually its investments in such entities, which would result in the Fund being treated as if it had sold and repurchased all the PFIC stock at the end of each year. As a result of the mark-to-market election, the Fund would report any such gains as ordinary income and would deduct such losses as ordinary losses to the extent of previously recognized gains. By making the mark-to-market election, a Fund could potentially mitigate the adverse tax consequences with respect to its ownership of shares in a PFIC, but in any particular year may be required to recognize income in excess of the distributions it receives from

PFICs and its proceeds from dispositions of PFIC stock. A Fund may have to distribute this “phantom” income and gain to satisfy the distribution requirement and to avoid imposition of the excise tax described above. Alternatively, a Fund may elect to treat a PFIC as a “qualified electing fund” (a “QEF election”), in which case the Fund would be required to include its share of the company’s income and net capital gains annually, regardless of whether it receives distributions from the PFIC. As with the mark-to-market election, these amounts would be taken into account by the Funds for purposes of satisfying the distribution requirement and the excise tax distribution requirement. Under proposed Treasury Regulations, earnings included in income under a QEF election would not be qualifying income for a regulated investment company unless such earnings are distributed in the taxable year in which they are earned. In order to make a QEF election, a Fund must obtain certain annual information from the PFICs in which it invests, which may be difficult or impossible to obtain. Dividends paid by PFICs or foreign corporations that were PFICs in the year preceding the payment of the dividend will not be eligible to be treated as qualified dividend income.

Non-U.S. Taxes

Funds that invest in non-U.S. securities may be liable to non-U.S. governments for taxes relating primarily to investment income or capital gains on non-U.S. securities in the Fund's portfolio. If at the close of its taxable year more than 50% of the value of a Fund's total assets consist of securities of foreign corporations (including foreign governments), the Fund may make an election under the Code that would allow Fund shareholders who are U.S. persons or U.S. corporations to claim a foreign tax credit or deduction (but not both) on their U.S. income tax return for their pro rata portion of qualified taxes paid by that Fund to non-U.S. countries in respect of non-U.S. securities held at least a minimum period as specified in the Code. If a Fund were eligible for and were to make the election, the amount of each shareholder's distribution reported on the information returns filed by such Fund with the IRS must be increased by the amount of the shareholder's portion of the Fund's foreign tax paid. A shareholder's ability to claim all or a part of a foreign tax credit or deduction in respect of foreign taxes paid by a Fund would also be subject to certain limitations imposed by the Code.

If a Fund qualifies as a "qualified fund of funds," the Fund could be entitled to elect to pass-through its foreign tax credits without regard to the above-described 50% requirement. For this purpose, the term "qualified funds of funds" means a regulated investment company if (at the close of each quarter of the taxable year) at least 50% of the value of its total assets is represented by interests in other regulated investment companies.

The Funds make no assurances as to either the availability of any election discussed in this section or its willingness to make any such election.

Non-U.S. Currency Transactions

Transactions in non-U.S. currencies, non-U.S. currency denominated debt obligations and certain non-U.S. currency options, future contracts, and forward contracts (and similar instruments) may give rise to ordinary income or loss to the extent such income or loss results from fluctuations in the value of the non-U.S. currency concerned and may increase the amount and affect the timing and character of taxes payable by shareholders of a Fund. Certain of a Fund's transactions, if any, in foreign currencies and foreign currency denominated instruments are likely to result in a difference between the Fund's book income and taxable income. This difference may cause a portion of such Fund's income distributions to constitute a return of capital or capital gain for tax purposes or require the Fund to make distributions exceeding book income to avoid excise tax liability and to qualify as a regulated investment company, which may have the effect of accelerating taxable distributions to shareholders of such Fund.

Financial Products

A Fund's investments in options, futures contracts, hedging transactions, forward contracts, and certain other transactions may be subject to special tax rules (including mark-to-market, constructive sale, straddle, wash sale, short sale and other rules), the effect of which may be to accelerate income recognized by the Fund, defer Fund losses, cause adjustments in the holding periods of Fund securities, convert capital gain into ordinary income and convert short-term capital losses into long-term capital losses. These rules could therefore affect the amount, timing and character of distributions to Fund shareholders.

Some of the Funds' investments, such as certain option transactions and certain futures transactions may be "section 1256 contracts." Gains and losses on section 1256 contracts are generally treated as 60% long-term capital and 40% short-term capital, although certain foreign currency gains and losses from such contracts may be treated as entirely ordinary in character. Section 1256 contracts held by the Fund at the end of a taxable year are "marked to market" for income tax purposes, meaning that unrealized gains or losses are treated as though they were realized (and treated on the 60/40 basis described above).

Certain positions undertaken by the Funds may constitute "straddles" for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The straddle rules may affect the character of gains or losses realized by a Fund. Losses realized by a Fund that are part of a straddle may be deferred beyond the point in time that they are realized. The straddle rules, if applicable, could increase the amount of short-term capital gain realized by such Fund which is taxed as ordinary income when distributed to shareholders. Certain income tax elections that a Fund may make with respect to straddles could affect the character and timing of recognition of gains and losses.

Rules governing the tax aspects of notional principal contracts in which a Fund, or a Subsidiary, may invest are not clear in various respects. As a result, the IRS could challenge such Fund's methods of accounting for such contracts for tax purposes, and such a challenge could affect the status of such Fund as a regulated investment company.

The Funds may make short sales of securities. Short sales may increase the amount of short-term capital gains realized by a Fund, which is taxed as ordinary income to the shareholders when distributed. Short sales may also constitute "constructive sales," which would result in taxable income before the short-sale positions are terminated.

Certain of the Funds' hedging activities including its transactions in options, and certain futures contracts may result in a difference between a Fund's book income and taxable income. This difference may cause a portion of such Fund's income distributions to constitute a return of capital or capital gain for tax purposes or require such Fund to make distributions exceeding book income to avoid excise tax liability and to qualify as a regulated investment company, which may have the effect of accelerating taxable distributions to shareholders.

Securities Issued or Purchased at a Discount

The Funds' investment in debt obligations issued or purchased at a discount and certain other obligations may require a Fund to accrue and distribute income not yet received. In addition, payment-in-kind debt obligations will give rise to income which is required to be distributed even though a Fund receives no interest payment in cash on the security during the year. In order to generate sufficient cash to make the requisite distributions, such Fund may be required to sell securities in its portfolio that it otherwise would have continued to hold. A Fund may realize gains or losses from such sales. In the event a Fund realizes net capital gains from such transactions, its shareholders may receive a larger capital gain dividend than they would in the absence of such transactions.

Some debt obligations that are acquired by the Funds in the secondary market may be treated as having market discount. Generally, any gain recognized on the disposition of a debt security having market discount is treated as ordinary income to the extent the gain does not exceed the "accrued market discount" on such debt security. Market discount generally accrues in equal daily installments. The Funds may make certain elections applicable to debt obligations having market discount, which could affect the character and timing of recognition of income.

High-Risk Securities

The Funds may invest in debt obligations that are in the lowest rating categories or are unrated. Investments in debt obligations that are at risk of, or in default, present special tax issues for a Fund. The application of the tax rules with respect to these types of investments is complicated and will depend upon the application of the law to facts that may

be unclear, which may result in uncertainty about the tax treatment of these investments (e.g., such as when a Fund may cease to accrue interest, original issue discount or market discount, when and to what extent deductions may be taken for bad debts, or worthless securities and how payments received on obligations in default should be allocated between principal and income). These and other related issues will be addressed by the Fund if the Fund invests in such securities in order to increase the likelihood that the Fund distributes sufficient income to avoid becoming subject to U.S. federal income or excise tax.

Real Estate Investment Trusts

If a Fund were to invest in REITs, its REIT equity securities could result in such Fund's receipt of cash in excess of the REIT's earnings. If a Fund receives such distributions all or a portion of these distributions will constitute a return of capital to the Fund. Receiving a return of capital distribution from a REIT will reduce the amount of income available to be distributed to Fund shareholders. Income from REIT securities generally will not be eligible for treatment as qualified dividend income.

Backup Withholding

The Funds generally are required to withhold and remit to the U.S. Treasury a percentage of the taxable distributions and redemption proceeds paid to any non-corporate shareholder who fails to properly furnish a Fund with a correct taxpayer identification number ("TIN") or who has under-reported dividend or interest income, and to any shareholder that fails to certify to a Fund that it is not subject to such withholding. The backup withholding tax rate is 24% for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017 and before January 1, 2026.

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules from a payment to a shareholder generally may be refunded or credited against the shareholder's federal income tax liability, if any, provided that certain required information is timely furnished to the IRS. A shareholder may normally avoid backup withholding by furnishing a properly completed IRS Form W-9. If a shareholder fails to furnish a valid TIN upon request, the shareholder can be subject to IRS penalties.

Cost Basis Reporting

Legislation passed by Congress in 2008 requires a fund (or its administrative agent) to report to the IRS and furnish to fund shareholders the cost basis information for fund shares purchased on or after January 1, 2012 ("covered shares"), and redeemed, exchanged or otherwise sold on or after that date. In addition to the requirement (which applied historically and continues to apply) to report the gross proceeds from the sale of Fund shares, each Fund will also be required to report the cost basis information for such shares and indicate whether these shares had a short-term or long-term holding period. In the absence of an election by a shareholder to elect from certain cost basis methods which have been accepted by the IRS, each Fund will use its default cost basis method. The cost basis method elected or applied may not be changed after the settlement date of a sale of Fund shares. Once a Fund shareholder has elected a cost basis reporting method, the election will apply to all future transactions in covered shares unless the shareholder revokes or changes the standing election. Fund shareholders should consult with their tax advisers concerning the most desirable IRS-accepted cost basis method for their tax situation and to obtain more information about how the new cost basis reporting law applies to them. The current law requirement to report only the gross proceeds from the sale of Fund shares will continue to apply to all Fund shares acquired through December 31, 2011, and which are sold on and after that date.

Surtax on Net Investment Income

A surtax of 3.8% applies to net investment income of an individual taxpayer and on the undistributed net investment income of certain estates and trusts, to the extent that such taxpayer's "modified adjusted gross income" (in the case of an individual) or "adjusted gross income" (in the case of an estate or trust) exceeds a certain amount. Net investment income includes interest and dividends (other than exempt-interest dividends), royalties, rents, gross income from a trade or business involving passive activities, and net gain from disposition of property (other than property held in a non-passive trade or business). Net investment income is reduced by deductions properly allocable to such income. Net investment income includes ordinary income and capital gain distributions received from a Fund and net gains from redemptions or other taxable dispositions of Fund shares. Holders of Fund shares should consult their tax advisors regarding the effect, if any, of this legislation on their ownership and disposition of Fund shares.

Other Tax Matters

Special tax rules apply to investments through defined contribution plans and other tax-qualified plans and investments by tax-exempt organizations. Shareholders should consult their tax adviser to determine the suitability of shares of a Fund as an investment through such plans and the precise effect of an investment on their particular tax situation.

The foregoing discussion relates solely to U.S. federal income tax law. Dividends and distributions also may be subject to state and local taxes. Shareholders are urged to consult their tax advisers regarding specific questions as to U.S. federal, state, local and, where applicable, foreign taxes. Foreign investors should consult their tax advisers concerning the U.S. federal tax consequences of ownership of shares of a Fund, including the certification and filing requirements imposed on foreign investors in order to qualify for exemption from the backup withholding tax (or to qualify for a reduced rate of withholding provided by a treaty).

The foregoing is a general and abbreviated summary of the applicable provisions of the Code and related regulations currently in effect. For the complete provisions, reference should be made to the pertinent Code sections and regulations. The Code and regulations are subject to change by legislative or administrative actions, possibly with retroactive effect.

Tax Cuts and Jobs Act

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act enacted on December 22, 2017 (the “Act”) substantially alters the U.S. federal income tax rules. Among many other changes, the Act changes marginal income tax rates applicable to individuals and other taxpayers. The Act also establishes a 20% deduction for qualified business income from certain pass-through business. This deduction will not available for income from regulated investment companies, including the Funds.

The information above is only a summary of some of the tax considerations generally affecting the Funds and their shareholders. No attempt has been made to discuss individual tax consequences and this discussion should not be construed as applicable to all shareholders’ tax situations. Investors should consult their own tax advisor to determine the suitability of a particular Fund and the applicability of any federal, state, local, or foreign taxation. Reed Smith LLP has expressed no opinion in respect thereof. Foreign shareholders should consider, in particular, the possible application of U.S. withholding taxes on certain taxable distributions from a Fund at rates up to 30% (subject to reduction under certain income tax treaties).

Yield Disclosure and Performance Information

As noted in this SAI, each Fund may from time to time quote various performance figures in advertisements and investor communications to illustrate the Fund's past performance. Performance information published by the Funds will be in compliance with rules adopted by the SEC. These rules require the use of standardized performance quotations or, alternatively, that every non-standardized performance quotation furnished by a Fund be accompanied by certain standardized performance information computed as

Yield Disclosure and Performance Information

As noted in this SAI, each Fund may from time to time quote various performance figures in advertisements and investor communications to illustrate the Fund's past performance. Performance information published by the Funds will be in compliance with rules adopted by the SEC. These rules require the use of standardized performance quotations or, alternatively, that every non-standardized performance quotation furnished by a Fund be accompanied by certain standardized performance information computed as required by the SEC. An explanation of the methods used by the Funds to compute or express performance is discussed below.

Average Annual Total Return

Total return for the Funds may be stated for any relevant period as specified in the advertisement or communication. Any statements of total return or other performance data for the Funds will be limited to or accompanied by standardized information on the Fund's average annual compounded rate of return over the most recent four calendar quarters, five years, 10 years (if applicable) and over the life of the Fund (i.e., the period from the Fund's inception of operations through the end of the most recent calendar quarter). The average annual compounded rate of return is

determined by reference to a hypothetical $1,000 investment that includes capital appreciation and depreciation for the stated period and assumes reinvestment (on the reinvestment date) of all distributions at net asset value and redemption at the end of the stated period. It is calculated according to the following standardized formula:

$P(1+T)^n = ERV$ where:

P = a hypothetical initial payment of $1,000
T = average annual total return
n = number of years
ERV = ending redeemable value of a hypothetical $1,000 investment made at the beginning of a 1-, 5-, or 10-year periods at the end of a 1-, 5- or 10-year periods (or fractional portion).

Average Annual Total Return (after taxes on distributions):

The Funds compute their average annual total return after taxes on distributions by determining the average annual compounded rates of return during specified periods that equate the initial amount invested to the ending redeemable value of such investment after taxes on fund distributions:

$P(1+T)^n = ATV_D$ where:

P = a hypothetical initial payment of $1,000.
T = average annual total return (after taxes on distributions).
n = number of years
ATV_D = ending value of a hypothetical $1,000 payment made at the beginning of the 1-, 5-, or 10-year periods at the end of such periods, after taxes on fund distributions but not after taxes on redemptions.

Average Annual Total Return (after taxes on distributions and redemptions)

The Funds compute their average annual total return after taxes on distributions and redemptions by determining the average annual compounded rates of return during specified periods that equate the initial amount invested to the ending redeemable value of such investment after taxes on fund distributions and redemptions:

$P(1+T)^n = ATV_{DR}$ where:

P = a hypothetical initial payment of $1,000.
T = average annual total return (after taxes on distributions and redemptions).
n = number of years
ATV_{DR} = ending value of a hypothetical $1,000 payment made at the beginning of the 1-, 5-, or 10-year periods at the end of such periods, after taxes on fund distributions and redemptions.

After-tax returns are calculated using the historical highest individual federal marginal income tax rates and do not reflect the impact of state and local taxes. Actual after-tax returns depend on an investor's tax situation and may differ from those shown, and after-tax returns shown are not relevant to investors who hold their Fund shares through tax-deferred arrangements, such as 401(k) plans or individual retirement accounts.

Since performance will fluctuate, performance data for the Funds should not be used to compare an investment in the Funds' shares with bank deposits, savings accounts and similar investment alternatives which often provide an agreed-upon or guaranteed fixed yield for a stated period of time. Shareholders should remember that performance is generally a function of the kind and quality of the instruments held in a portfolio, portfolio maturity, operating expenses and market conditions.

The average annual compounded rates of return, or total return, for the Direct share class of the Income Fund, the US Government Fund, the Insured Fund, the 500 Fund, the MidCap Fund, the SmallCap Fund, the Core Value Fund, the European Fund, the Nasdaq-100 Fund, and the Short-Term Government Fund for the following periods were:

Yield

As stated in the Prospectus, a Fund may also quote its current yield and, where appropriate, effective yield and tax equivalent yield in advertisements and investor communications.

The current yield for the Income Fund, US Government Fund and Short-Term Govt. Fund is determined by dividing the net investment income per share earned during a specified 30-day period by the net asset value per share on the last day of the period and annualizing the resulting figure, according to the following formula:

$$\text{Yield} = 2[(((a-b)/cd)+1)^6 - 1)]$$

where:

=dividends and interest earned during the period;

=expenses accrued for the period (net of reimbursements);

=the average daily number of shares outstanding during the period that were entitled to receive dividends;
=the maximum offering price per share on the last day of the period.
99

The current yield for the 30-day period ended August 31, 2017 is as follows for the Income Fund, US Government Fund and Short-Term Government Fund:

	Direct	**K Class**
Income Fund	1.04%	
US Government Fund	1.09%	60%
Short Term Government Fund	0.51%	-0.22%

The current yield for the Treasury Trust is computed in accordance with a standardized method which involves determining the net change in the value of a hypothetical pre-existing account having a balance of one share at the beginning of a specified 7-day period, subtracting a hypothetical charge reflecting deductions of expenses, and dividing the net change or difference by the value of the account at the beginning of the period to obtain the base period return, and annualizing the results (i.e., multiplying the base period return by 365/7). The net change in the value of the account does not include realized gains and losses or unrealized appreciation and depreciation.

The Treasury Trust may also quote an effective yield. Effective yield is calculated by compounding the base period return (calculated as described above) by adding 1, raising that sum to a power equal to 365 divided by 7, and subtracting 1 from the result, according to the following formula:

EFFECTIVE YIELD = $[(\text{BASE PERIOD RETURN} + 1)^{(365/7)}] - 1$.

The current yield and effective yield for the 7-day period ended August 31, 2017 is as follows:

	Current yield	Effective yield
Treasury Trust	0.75%	0.75%
Treasury Trust K class	0.74%	0.74%

A tax equivalent yield demonstrates the taxable yield necessary to produce an after-tax yield equivalent to that of a Fund which invests in tax-exempt obligations. The tax equivalent yields for the Treasury Trust and the Income Fund are computed by dividing that portion of the current yield (or effective yield) of each Fund (computed for each Fund as discussed for the current yield indicated above) which is tax-exempt by one minus a stated income tax rate and adding the product to that portion (if any) of the yield of the Fund that is not tax-exempt. In calculating tax equivalent yields, the Income Fund assumes an effective tax rate (combining federal and California rates) of 53.0. The effective rate used in determining such yield does not reflect the tax costs resulting from the loss of the benefit of personal

exemptions and itemized deductions that may result from the receipt of additional taxable income by taxpayers with adjusted gross incomes exceeding certain levels. The tax equivalent yield may be higher than the rate stated for taxpayers subject to the loss of these benefits. As of August 31, 2017, the 30-day tax equivalent yield for the Income Fund was 1.97%.

Distribution Rate

Each Fund may also include a reference to its current distribution rate in investor communications and sales literature preceded or accompanied by the Prospectus, reflecting the amounts actually distributed to shareholders. All calculations of a Fund's distribution rate are based on the distributions per share, which are declared, but not necessarily paid, during the fiscal year. The distribution rate is determined by dividing the distributions declared during the period by the net asset value per share on the last day of the period and annualizing the resulting figure. In calculating its distribution rate, each Fund uses the same assumptions that apply to its calculation of yield. The distribution rate will differ from a Fund's yield because it may include capital gains and other items of income not reflected in the Fund's yield, as well as interest income received by the Fund and distributed to shareholders which is reflected in the Fund's yield. The distribution rate does not reflect capital appreciation or depreciation in the price of the Fund's shares and should not be considered to be a complete indicator of the return to the investor on his investment.

Comparisons

From time to time, advertisements and investor communications may compare a Fund’s performance to the performance of other investments as reported in various indices or averages, in order to enable an investor better to evaluate how an investment in a particular Fund might satisfy his investment objectives. The Funds may also publish an indication of past performance as measured by Lipper Analytical Services, Inc., Morningstar or other widely recognized independent services that monitor the performance of mutual funds. The performance analysis will include the reinvestment of dividends and capital gains distributions, but does not take any sales charges into consideration and is prepared without regard to tax consequences. Independent sources may include the American Association of Individual Investors, Weisenberger Investment Companies Services, Donoghue’s Money Fund Report, Barron's, Business Week, Financial World, Money Magazine, Forbes, and The Wall Street Journal. The Income Fund may also quote (among others) the Barclays Municipal Bond Index and the Barclays five-year Municipal Bond Index. These indices are not managed for any investment goal. Their composition may, however, be changed from time to time by Barclays. The US Government Fund and Short-term Government Fund may also quote (among others) the following indices of bond prices prepared by Barclays: Barclays GNMA Index, Barclays Treasury Index and Barclays 1-3 Year Treasury Index. These indices are not managed for any investment goal. Their composition may, however, be changed from time to time by Barclays. The MidCap Fund, 500 Fund, SmallCap Fund, European Fund, and the Nasdaq-100 Index Fund each may compare its performance to the performance of the MidCap Index, S&P 500, SmallCap Index, Dow Jones Euro Stoxx, Nasdaq-100 Index, respectively. Additionally, The Core Value Fund may compare its performance to the 500 Index or the S&P/Citigroup Value Index. The Green Alpha may compare against the 500 Index and other market benchmarks deemed appropriate by the Sub-Advisor. Each such Fund may compare its performance to the Value Line Composite Index, the Russell 2000 and/or other widely recognized market indices. These indices are unmanaged indices of common stock prices. The performance of each index is based on changes in the prices of stocks comprising such index and assumes the reinvestment of all dividends paid on such stocks. Taxes, brokerage commissions and other fees are disregarded in computing the level of each index. The performance of a Fund may also be compared to compounded rates of return regarding a hypothetical investment of $10,000 at the beginning of each year, earning interest throughout the year at the compounding interest rates of 5%, 7.5% and 10%. In assessing any comparisons of total return or yield, an investor should keep in mind that the composition of the

investments in a reported average is not identical to a Fund's portfolio, that such averages are generally unmanaged and that the items included in the calculations of such averages may not be identical to the formula used by the Fund to calculate its total return or yield. In addition, there can be no assurance that a Fund will continue its performance as compared to any such averages.

Miscellaneous Information

Shareholders of Funds, other than the Stock Funds who so request, may have their dividends paid out monthly in cash. Shareholders of the Stock Funds, who so request, may have their dividends paid out quarterly in cash. If a shareholder withdraws the entire amount in his or her Treasury Trust account at any time during the month, all daily dividends accrued with respect to his or her account during the month to the time of withdrawal will be paid in the same manner and at the same time as the proceeds of withdrawal.

The shareholders of a Massachusetts business trust could, under certain circumstances, be held personally liable as partners for its obligations. However, the Trust's Declaration of Trust contains an express disclaimer of shareholder liability for acts or obligations of the Trust. The Declaration of Trust also provides for indemnification and reimbursement of expenses out of Trust assets for any shareholder held personally liable for obligations of the Trust. The Declaration of Trust also provides that a Trust shall, upon request, assume the defense of any claim made against any shareholder for any act or obligation of that Trust and satisfy any judgment thereon. All such rights are limited to the assets of the Fund(s) of which a shareholder holds shares. The Declaration of Trust further provides that the Trust may maintain appropriate insurance (for example, fidelity bonding and errors and omissions insurance) for the protection of the Trust, its shareholders, Trustees, officers, employees and agents to cover possible tort and other liabilities. Furthermore, the activities of the Trust as investment companies as distinguished from operating companies would not likely give rise to liabilities in excess of a Fund's total assets. Thus, the risk of a shareholder incurring financial loss on account of shareholder liability is limited to circumstances in which both inadequate insurance exists and a Trust itself is unable to meet its obligations.

Although each Fund is offering only its own shares by this joint Statement of Additional Information and joint Prospectus, it is possible that a Fund might become liable for any misstatements in this Statement of Additional Information or in the Prospectus about one of the other Funds. The Board of Trustees of the Trust has considered this possibility in approving the use of a joint Prospectus and Statement of Additional Information.

S&P DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE ACCURACY AND/OR THE COMPLETENESS OF THE S&P 500 COMPOSITE STOCK PRICE INDEX, THE S&P MIDCAP 400 INDEX OR THE S&P SMALLCAP 600 INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN AND S&P SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR INTERRUPTIONS THEREIN. S&P MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY LICENSEE, OWNERS OF THE PRODUCT, OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FROM THE USE OF THE S&P SMALLCAP 600 INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. S&P MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES OR MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE WITH RESPECT TO THE S&P 500 COMPOSITE STOCK PRICE INDEX, THE S&P MIDCAP 400 INDEX OR THE S&P SMALLCAP 600 INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT SHALL S&P HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING LOST PROFITS), EVEN IF NOTIFIED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Financial Statements

The audited financial statements for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017 for the Funds as contained in the combined Annual Report to Shareholders for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017 (the "Report"), are incorporated herein by reference to the Report which has been filed with the SEC. Any person not receiving the Report with this Statement should call or write the Funds to obtain a free copy.

Appendix

Description Securities Ratings

A debt obligation rating by Moody’s, Fitch, or S&P reflects their current assessment of the creditworthiness of an obligor with respect to a specific obligation. The purpose of the rating systems is to provide investors with a simple system of gradation by which the relative investment qualities of bonds may be noted. A rating is not a recommendation as to investment value, inasmuch as it does not comment as to market price or suitability for a particular investor.

The ratings are based on current information furnished by the issuer or from other sources that the rating agencies deem reliable. The ratings are based on the opinion and judgment of the rating agencies and may prove to be inaccurate. The ratings may be changed, suspended, or withdrawn as a result of changes in, or unavailability of, such information, or for other circumstances.

Unless a modifier is included, all references in this SAI and the Funds' Prospectus to a rating classification incorporate the full range of modifiers for the classification. For example, a reference to Moody's "Baa" or S&P's "BBB" quality rating incorporates Baa1 to Baa3 and BBB+ to BBB-, respectively.

The following is a description of the characteristics of ratings as recently published by Moody's, Fitch and S&P.

Ratings by Moody's (Moody's Investors Service) (from Moody's Investors Service, Rating Symbols and Definitions, December 2016).

Global Long-Term Rating Scale. Ratings assigned on Moody's global long-term rating scale are forward-looking opinions of the relative credit risks of financial obligations issued by non-financial corporates, financial institutions, structured finance vehicles, project finance vehicles, and public sector entities. Long-term ratings are assigned to issuers or obligations with an original maturity of one year or more and reflect both on the likelihood of a default on contractually promised payments and the expected financial loss suffered in the event of default.

Aaa	Obligations rated Aaa are judged to be of the highest quality, subject to the lowest level of credit risk.
Aa	Obligations rated Aa are judged to be of high quality and are subject to very low credit risk.
A	Obligations rated A are judged to be upper-medium grade and are subject to low credit risk.
Baa	Obligations rated Baa are judged to be medium grade and subject to moderate credit risk, and as such may possess certain speculative characteristics.
Ba	Obligations rated Ba are judged to be speculative and are subject to substantial credit risk.

B	Obligations rated B are considered speculative and are subject to high credit risk.
Caa	Obligations rated Caa are judged to be speculative of poor standing and are subject to very high credit risk.
Ca	Obligations rated Ca are highly speculative and are likely in, or very near, default, with some prospect of recovery of principal and interest.
C	Obligations rated C are the lowest rated and are typically in default, with little prospect for recovery of principal or interest.

Note: Moody’s appends numerical modifiers 1, 2, and 3 to each generic rating classification from Aa through Caa. The modifier 1 indicates that the obligation ranks in the higher end of its generic rating category; the modifier 2 indicates a mid-range ranking; and the modifier 3 indicates a ranking in the lower end of that generic rating category.

Ratings by Fitch (Fitch Ratings) (from Fitch Ratings, Definitions of Ratings and Other Forms of Opinion, March 2017).

Long-Term Ratings Scales – Issuer Credit Rating Scales.

Rated entities in a number of sectors, including financial and non-financial corporations, sovereigns and insurance companies, are generally assigned Issuer Default Ratings (IDRs). IDRs are also assigned to certain entities in global infrastructure and project finance. IDRs opine on an entity's relative vulnerability to default on financial obligations. The threshold default risk addressed by the IDR is generally that of the financial obligations whose non-payment would best reflect the uncured failure of that entity. As such, IDRs also address relative vulnerability to bankruptcy, administrative receivership or similar concepts.

In aggregate, IDRs provide an ordinal ranking of issuers based on the agency's view of their relative vulnerability to default, rather than a prediction of a specific percentage likelihood of default.

AAA	Highest credit quality. ‘AAA’ ratings denote the lowest expectation of default risk. They are assigned only in cases of exceptionally strong capacity for payment of financial commitments. This capacity is highly unlikely to be adversely affected by foreseeable events.
AA	

	Very high credit quality. ‘AA’ ratings denote expectations of very low default risk. They indicate very strong capacity for payment of financial commitments. This capacity is not significantly vulnerable to foreseeable events.
A	High credit quality. ‘A’ ratings denote expectations of low default risk. The capacity for payment of financial commitments is considered strong. This capacity may, nevertheless, be more vulnerable to adverse business or economic conditions than is the case for higher ratings.
BBB	Good credit quality. ‘BBB’ ratings indicate that expectations of default risk are currently low. The capacity for payment of financial commitments is considered adequate but adverse business or economic conditions are more likely to impair this capacity.
BB	Speculative. ‘BB’ ratings indicate an elevated vulnerability to default risk, particularly in the event of adverse changes in business or economic conditions over time; however, business or financial flexibility exists which supports the servicing of financial commitments.
B	Highly speculative. ‘B’ ratings indicate that material default risk is present, but a limited margin of safety remains. Financial commitments are currently being met; however, capacity for continued payment is vulnerable to deterioration in the business and economic environment.
CCC	Substantial credit risk. Default is a real possibility.
CC	Very high levels of credit risk. Default of some kind seems probable.
C	Near default. A default or default-like process has begun, or the issuer is in standstill, or for a closed funding vehicle, payment capacity is irrevocably impaired. Conditions that are indicative of a 'C' category rating for an issuer include:

a. the issuer has entered into a grace or cure period following non-payment of a material financial obligation;

b. the issuer has entered into a temporary negotiated waiver or standstill agreement following a payment default on a material financial obligation;

c. the formal announcement by the issuer or their agent of a distressed debt exchange;

d. a closed financing vehicle where payment capacity is irrevocably impaired such that it is not expected to pay interest and/or principal in full during the life of the transaction, but where no payment default is imminent.

103

RD	Restricted default. 'RD' ratings indicate an issuer that in Fitch Ratings' opinion has experienced: an uncured payment default on a bond, loan or other material financial obligation but which has not entered into bankruptcy filings, administration, receivership, liquidation or other formal winding-up procedure, and which has not otherwise ceased operating. This would include:

a. the selective payment default on a specific class or currency of debt;

b. the uncured expiry of any applicable grace period, cure period or default forbearance period following a payment default on a bank loan, capital markets security or other material financial obligation;

c. the extension of multiple waivers or forbearance periods upon a payment default on one or more material financial obligations, either in series or in parallel; ordinary execution of a distressed debt exchange on one or more material financial obligations.

D	Default. 'D' ratings indicate an issuer that in Fitch Ratings' opinion has entered into bankruptcy filings, administration, receivership, liquidation or other formal winding-up procedure, or which has otherwise ceased business.

Default ratings are not assigned prospectively to entities or their obligations; within this context, non-payment on an instrument that contains a deferral feature or grace period will generally not be considered a default until after the expiration of the deferral or grace period, unless a default is otherwise driven by bankruptcy or other similar circumstance, or by a distressed debt exchange.

"Imminent" default typically refers to the occasion where a payment default has been intimated by the issuer, and is all but inevitable. This may, for example, be where an issuer has missed a scheduled payment, but (as is typical) has a grace period during which it may cure the payment default. Another alternative would be where an issuer has formally announced a distressed debt exchange, but the date of the exchange still lies several days or weeks in the immediate future.

In all cases, the assignment of a default rating reflects the agency's opinion as to the most appropriate rating category consistent with the rest of its universe of ratings, and may differ from the definition of default under the terms of an issuer's financial obligations or local commercial practice.

Note: The modifiers “+” or “-” may be appended to a rating to denote relative status within major rating categories. Such suffixes are not added to the ‘AAA’ Long-Term IDR category, or to Long-Term IDR categories below ‘B’.

Ratings of Structured, Project & Public Finance Obligations – Long-Term Rating Scales

Ratings of structured finance, project finance and public finance obligations on the long-term scale, including the financial obligations of sovereigns, consider the obligations' relative vulnerability to default. These ratings are typically assigned to an individual security or tranche in a transaction and not to an issuer.

AAA	Highest credit quality. 'AAA' ratings denote the lowest expectation of default risk. They are assigned only in cases of exceptionally strong capacity for payment of financial commitments. This capacity is highly unlikely to be adversely affected by foreseeable events.
AA	Very high credit quality. 'AA' ratings denote expectations of very low default risk. They indicate very strong capacity for payment of financial commitments. This capacity is not significantly vulnerable to foreseeable events.
A	High credit quality. 'A' ratings denote expectations of low default risk. The capacity for payment of financial commitments is considered strong. This capacity may, nevertheless, be more vulnerable to adverse business or economic conditions than is the case for higher ratings.
BBB	Good credit quality. 'BBB' ratings indicate that expectations of default risk are currently low. The capacity for payment of financial commitments is considered adequate but adverse business or economic conditions are more likely to impair this capacity.
BB	'BB' ratings indicate an elevated vulnerability to default risk, particularly in the event of adverse changes in business or economic conditions over time.
B	Highly speculative. 'B' ratings indicate that material default risk is present, but a limited margin of safety remains. Financial commitments are currently being met; however, capacity for continued payment is vulnerable to deterioration in the business and economic environment.
CCC	Substantial credit risk. Default is a real possibility.

CC Very high levels of credit risk. Default of some kind appears probable.

C Exceptionally high levels of credit risk. Default appears imminent or inevitable.

D Default. Indicates a default. Default generally is defined as one of the following:

a. Failure to make payment of principal and/or interest under the contractual terms of the rated obligation; b.

b. The bankruptcy filings, administration, receivership, liquidation or other winding-up or cessation of the business of an issuer/obligor; or c.

c. The distressed exchange of an obligation, where creditors were offered securities with diminished structural or economic terms compared with the existing obligation to avoid a probable payment default.

Structured Finance Defaults. "Imminent" default, categorized under 'C', typically refers to the occasion where a payment default has been intimated by the issuer, and is all but inevitable. This may, for example, be where an issuer has missed a scheduled payment, but (as is typical) has a grace period during which it may cure the payment default. Another alternative would be where an issuer has formally announced a distressed debt exchange, but the date of the exchange still lies several days or weeks in the immediate future. Additionally, in structured finance transactions, where analysis indicates that an instrument is irrevocably impaired such that it is not expected to pay interest and/or principal in full in accordance with the terms of the obligation's documentation during the life of the transaction, but where no payment default in accordance with the terms of the documentation is imminent, the obligation will typically be rated in the 'C' category.

Structured Finance Writedowns. Where an instrument has experienced an involuntary and, in the agency's opinion, irreversible "writedown" of principal (i.e. other than through amortization, and resulting in a loss to the investor), a credit rating of 'D' will be assigned to the instrument. Where the agency believes the "writedown" may prove to be temporary (and the loss may be "written up" again in future if and when performance improves), then a credit rating of 'C' will typically be assigned. Should the "writedown" then later be reversed, the credit rating will be raised to an appropriate level for that instrument. Should the "writedown" later be deemed as irreversible, the credit rating will be lowered to 'D'.

Note: The modifiers “+” or “-” may be appended to a rating to denote relative status within major rating categories. Such suffixes are not added to the ‘AAA’ Long-Term Rating category, or categories below ‘B’.

Ratings by S&P (Standard & Poor’s Ratings Group) (from Standard & Poor’s Ratings Definitions, August 2016)

Long-Term Issue Credit Ratings

Issue credit ratings are based, in varying degrees, on Standard & Poor's analysis of the following considerations: likelihood of payment—capacity and willingness of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on an obligation in accordance with the terms of the obligation and the promise Standard & Poor’s imputes; nature of and provisions of the obligation; protection afforded by, and relative position of, the obligation in the event of bankruptcy, reorganization, or other arrangement under the laws of bankruptcy and other laws affecting creditors' rights. Issue ratings are an assessment of default risk, but may incorporate an assessment of relative seniority or ultimate recovery in the event of default. Junior obligations are typically rated lower than senior obligations, to reflect the lower priority in bankruptcy, as noted above. (Such differentiation may apply when an entity has both senior and subordinated obligations, secured and unsecured obligations, or operating company and holding company obligations.)

AAA	An obligation rated 'AAA' has the highest rating assigned by Standard & Poor's. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is extremely strong.
AA	An obligation rated 'AA' differs from the highest-rated obligations only to a small degree. The obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is very strong.
A	An obligation rated 'A' is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher-rated categories. However, the obligor's capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation is still strong.
BBB	An obligation rated 'BBB' exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.

BB, B, CCC, CC, and C. Obligations rated 'BB', 'B', 'CCC', 'CC', and 'C' are regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. 'BB' indicates the least degree of speculation and 'C' the highest. While such obligations will likely have some quality and protective characteristics, these may be outweighed by large uncertainties or major exposures to adverse conditions.

BB	An obligation rated 'BB' is less vulnerable to nonpayment than other speculative issues. However, it faces major ongoing uncertainties or exposure to adverse business, financial, or economic conditions which could lead to the obligor's inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
B	An obligation rated 'B' is more vulnerable to nonpayment than obligations rated 'BB', but the obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation. Adverse business, financial, or economic conditions will likely impair the obligor's capacity or willingness to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
CCC	An obligation rated 'CCC' is currently vulnerable to nonpayment, and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation. In the event of adverse business, financial, or economic conditions, the obligor is not likely to have the capacity to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.
CC	An obligation rated 'CC' is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment. The 'CC' rating is used when a default has not yet occurred, but Standard & Poor's expects default to be a virtual certainty, regardless of the anticipated time to default.
C	An obligation rated 'C' is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment, and the obligation is expected to have lower relative seniority or lower ultimate recovery compared to obligations that are rated higher.
D	An obligation rated 'D' is in default or in breach of an imputed promise. For non-hybrid capital instruments, the 'D' rating category is used when payments on an obligation are not made on the date due, unless Standard & Poor's believes that such payments will be made within five business days in the absence of a stated grace period or within the earlier of the stated grace period or 30 calendar days. The 'D' rating also will be used upon the filing of a bankruptcy petition or the taking of similar action and where default on an obligation is a virtual certainty, for example due to automatic stay provisions. An obligation's rating is lowered to 'D' if it is subject to a distressed exchange offer.
NR	This indicates that no rating has been requested, or that there is insufficient information on which to base a rating, or that Standard & Poor's does not rate a particular obligation as a matter of policy.

Note: The ratings from 'AA' to 'CCC' may be modified by the addition of a plus (+) or minus (-) sign to show relative standing within the major rating categories.

106

SCM Trust

Shelton Tactical Credit Fund

FORM N-1A

PART C

OTHER INFORMATION

Item 28. Exhibits

(a) Amended and Restated Agreement and Declaration of Trust dated September 21, 2011 is incorporated by reference Pre-Effective Amendment No. 1 to the Registration Statement as filed on September 22, 2011.

(b) Amended and Restated By-Laws of the Registrant dated June 12th, 2011 is incorporated by reference to the Trust's registration statement filed on Form N-1A on August 4, 2011.

(c) Inapplicable.

(d) Investment Advisory Agreement between SCM Trust and CCM Partners, LP d/b/a Shelton Capital Management, dated October 11, 2016, incorporated by reference to Registration Statement on Form N-14 as filed on March 13, 2018, Accession No. 0001398344-18-004150.

(e) Amended and Restated Distribution Agreement between SCM Trust and RFS Partners, LP, dated February 8, 2018, incorporated by reference to Registration Statement on Form N-14 as filed on March 13, 2018, Accession No. 0001398344-18-004150.

(f) Inapplicable.

(g)(1) Custodian Agreement between Shelton Greater China Fund and U.S Bank National Association is incorporated by reference to the Fund’s registration statement filed in Form N-1A on April 29, 2014.

(2) First Amendment to Custody Agreement dated August 19, 2016, incorporated by reference to Registration Statement on Form N-14 as filed on March 13, 2018, Accession No. 0001398344-18-004150.

(3) Second Amendment to Custody Agreement dated December 12, 2017, incorporated by reference to Registration Statement on Form N-14 as filed on March 13, 2018, Accession No. 0001398344-18-004150.

(h) Other Material Contracts

(1) Form of Administration Agreement is incorporated by reference Pre-Effective Amendment No. 1 to the Registration Statement as filed on September 22, 2011.

(2) Form of Expense Cap Agreement is incorporated by reference Post-Effective Amendment No. 11 to the Trust's registration statement filed on July 27, 2016.

(3) Fund Services Agreement between Shelton Funds Trust and Shelton Greater China Fund Trust and Gemini Fund Services, LLC, incorporated by reference to Registration Statement on Form N-14 as filed on March 13, 2018, Accession No. 0001398344-18-004150.

(4) Form of Expense Limitation Letter, filed herewith.

(i) (1) Opinion and Consent of Counsel to the Registrant is incorporated by reference Pre-Effective Amendment No. 1 to the Registration Statement as filed on September 22, 2011.

(2) Opinion and Consent of Local Counsel to the Registrant is incorporated by reference Pre-Effective Amendment No. 1 to the Registration Statement as filed on September 22, 2011.

(3) Opinion and consent of counsel as to legality of shares is incorporated by reference Post-Effective Amendment No. 11 to the Registration Statement as filed on July 27, 2016.

(j) (1) Powers of Attorney is incorporated by reference to Post-Effective Amendment No. 19 to the Registration Statement as filed on August 4, 2017.

(k) Inapplicable.

(l) Inapplicable.

(m) Rule 12b-1 Share Marketing Plan, incorporated by reference to Registration Statement on Form N-14 as filed on July 27, 2016, Accession No. 0001398344-16-015634.

(n) Rule 18f-3 Plan dated July 28, 2017, filed herewith.

(o) Reserved.

(p) Code of Ethics, filed herewith.

Item 29. Persons Controlled by or under Common Control with Registrant.

As of the date of this Post-Effective Amendment, to the knowledge of the Registrant, the Registrant did not control any other person, nor was it under common control with another person.

Item 30. Indemnification.

The Fund is permitted by Massachusetts law and required by its Amended and Restated Declaration of Trust to indemnify any Trustee or officer of the Fund against all liability and against all expenses reasonably incurred or paid in connection with any claim, action, suit or proceeding in which the Trustee or officer becomes involved as a party or otherwise by virtue of his being or having been a Trustee or officer and against amounts paid or incurred by him in the settlement thereof unless, (i) by reason of a final adjudication, the Trustee or officer was found to have engaged in willful misfeasance, bad faith gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his office, (ii) with respect to any matter as to which he shall have been finally adjudicated not to have acted in good faith in the reasonable belief that his action was in the best interest of the Fund; or (iii) in the event of a settlement involving payment by the Trustee or officer or other disposition not involving a final adjudication as described in (i) and (ii) above resulting in a payment by the Trustee or officer, unless there has been either a determination that such Trustee or officer did not engage in willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his office by the court or other body approving the settlement or other disposition or a reasonable determination, based upon a review of readily available facts (as opposed to a full trial-type inquiry) that he did not engage in such conduct (a) by a vote of a majority of the disinterested Trustees acting on the matter (provided that a majority of the disinterested Trustees then in officer act on the matter), or (b) by written opinion of independent legal counsel. The Fund may pay the expenses described above in advance of the final disposition of any such legal action provided that the person receiving the payment undertakes to repay such amount if it is ultimately determined that he is not entitled to indemnification provided that either such undertaking is secured by a surety bond or some other appropriate security or the Fund shall be insured against losses arising out of any such advances; or a majority of the disinterested Trustees acting on the matter (provided that a majority of the disinterested Trustees then in officer act on the matter) or an independent legal counsel in written opinion, shall determine, based upon review of readily available facts (as opposed to a full trial-type inquiry), that there is reason to believe that the recipient ultimately will be found entitled to indemnification.

The Management Agreement provides that, absent willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of its duties and obligations, Shelton Capital Management (the “Manager”) is entitled to indemnification from the Fund for any act or omission in the course of, or connected with, its rendering of services under the Management Agreement or for any losses that may be sustained in the purchase, holding or sale of any security by the Fund.

Insofar as indemnification for liability arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, may be permitted to trustees, officers and controlling persons, if any, of the Fund pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the Fund has been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act"), and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the Fund of expenses incurred or paid by a trustee, officer or controlling person, if any, of the Fund in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such trustee, officer or controlling person, if any, in connection with the securities being registered, the Fund will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

Item 31. Business and Other Connections of Investment Advisor.

Shelton Capital Management a California limited partnership, is the Registrant's investment advisor. Shelton Capital Management has been engaged during the past two fiscal years as the investment advisor of the Shelton Funds (and its predecessors), a diversified, open-end management investment company, which comprises the following series: California Tax-Free Income Fund, Shelton Green Alpha Fund, U.S. Government Securities Fund, The United States Treasury Trust, S&P 500 Index Fund, S&P MidCap Index Fund, S&P SmallCap Index Fund, Shelton Core Value Fund, European Growth & Income Fund, Nasdaq-100 Index Fund, and Short-Term U.S. Government Bond Fund. The principal business address of Shelton Funds is 1050 17th Street, Suite 1710, Denver, Colorado, 80265.

The officer of Shelton Capital Management is Stephen C. Rogers. Mr. Rogers has also served as an officer of the Registrant since June 2011. Mr. Rogers was elected to the Board of Shelton Capital Management as Secretary and Trustee in August 1998, and was elected as Chairman of the Board in October 1999. For additional information, please see Part A of this Registration Statement.

Item 32. Principal Underwriters

RFS Partners is the principal underwriter, and in that capacity distributes the shares of the Fund. Certain limited partners of RFS Partners also serve as officers and/or trustees of the Registrant.

Item 33. Locations of Accounts and Records.

The accounts, books or other documents required to be maintained by Section 31(a) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, and the rules thereunder are kept by Registrant's Shareholder Servicing and Transfer Agent, Gemini Fund Services, LLC, 17605 Wright Street, Omaha, NE 68130.

Item 34. Management Services

All management-related service contracts are discussed in Part A or Part B of this Registration Statement.

Item 35. Undertakings.

Inapplicable.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, the Registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Denver, the State of Colorado, on April 30, 2018.

SCM Trust

(Registrant)

By /s/ Stephen C. Rogers*

Stephen C. Rogers, Chairman of the Board and Trustee

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement has been signed below by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

/s/ Stephen C. Rogers* Stephen C. Rogers	Chairman of the Board and Trustee	April 30, 2018
/s/ Kevin T. Kogler* Kevin T. Kogler	Trustee	April 30, 2018
/s/ Marco Quazzo.* Marco Quazzo	Trustee	April 30, 2018
/s/ Stephen H. Sutro* Stephen H. Sutro	Trustee	April 30, 2018

* Signed by Gregory T. Pusch pursuant to Powers of Attorney filed by Post-Effective Amendment to the Registration Statement as filed on August 4, 2017.